Alekhine alert!

a repertoire for Black against 1 e4
Alekhine alert!
a repertoire for Black against 1 e4
Contents

Bibliography 5
Introduction 7

1 World Champions Play Alekhine's Defence 12
   Our Hero: Alekhine

2 Modern Variation I: The White Pawn Wedge 35
   Our Hero: Bagirov

3 Modern Variation II: A Danish/Latvian Co-Production 52
   Our Hero: Kengis

4 Modern Variation III: Vikings Board the Alekhine Longboat 84
   Our Hero: Carlsen

5 Exchange Variation: The Ox is not a Scary Animal 118
   Our Hero: Larsen
6  The Four Pawns Attack – Fracture Him!
   Our Hero: Sergeev  152

7  The Chase Variation – Back to the Centre
   Our Hero: Korchnoi  182

8  Fourth or Fifth Move Sidelines
   Our Hero: Vaganian  208

9  Third Move Sidelines
   Our Hero: Varga  224

10 Alekhine Declined
    Our Hero: Taylor  238

    Repertoire and Final Note  274
    Index of Variations  275
    Index of Complete Games  281
Bibliography

Books
Alekhine's Defence, Nigel Davies (Everyman Chess 2001)
Alekhine's Defence, R.G. Eales and A.H. Williams (Batsford 1973)
The Complete Alekhine, Graham Burgess (Batsford 1992)
An Opening Repertoire for the Attacking Player, Raymond Keene and David Levy (Batsford 1976)
Chess from Morphy to Botvinnik, Imre König (Dover 1977)
Dreispringerspiel bis Königsgambit, Paul Keres (Sportverlag Berlin 1971)
Gambits, Yakov Estrin (Chess Enterprises 1982)
My 60 Memorable Games, Bobby Fischer (Simon and Schuster 1969)
My Best Games of Chess 1924-1937, Alexander Alekhine (G. Bell and Sons 1969)
My Best Games of Chess, 1908-1923, Alexander Alekhine (Harcourt, Brace and Co. 1946)
Pawn Sacrifice!, Timothy Taylor (Everyman Chess 2008)
Secrets of Practical Chess, John Nunn (Gambit 2007)
Skandinavisch bis Sizilianisch, Isaak Boleslawski (Sportverlag Berlin 1971)
The Art of Sacrifice in Chess, Rudolf Spielmann (Dover 1995)
Alekhine Alert!

The Book of the Nottingham International Chess Tournament, Alexander Alekhine (Dover 1962)
The Four Knights, Jan Pinski (Everyman Chess 2003)
The Philidor Files, Christian Bauer (Everyman Chess 2006)
Understanding the Open Games, Andy Soltis, Edmar Mednis, Jack Peters and William Hartston (RHM 1980)
Vienna Opening, T.D.Harding (The Chess Player 1976)

Computer Programs and Databases

Fritz 11
MegaBase 2008 (note that this was continuously updated through September 2009, and all references in the text of Alekhine Alert to “the database” or “the Mega” refer to this database)
MegaCorr4 (Chess Mail)
Chessbase.com
Chessgames.com
Correspondence Database
Internet Chess Club

Dedication and Acknowledgments

To my beautiful wife Liz
Extra special thanks for continued inspiration to Dario Argento
and the late Pauline Réage
Do you want to counter-attack on move one? If your answer is "Yes", then *Alekhine Alert* is for you – but the book you hold in your hands is quite different from previous works on this opening.

Over the years I have accumulated no less than five books on Alekhine's Defence – in publication order, these are *Alekhine's Defence* by R.G.Eales and A.H.Williams (1973); *Alekhine Defense* by Norman Weinstein (no apostrophe this time, but 's' instead of 'c' – 1977); *The Complete Alekhine* by Graham Burgess (1992); *Alekhine's Defence* by Nigel Davies (2001); and finally, *Starting Out: Alekhine's Defence* by John Cox (2004).

All of these are worthy books, but I have no interest in repeating or, at best, slightly updating their labours. My approach will be entirely different. The above quintet try to cover all lines of Alekhine's Defence, and all of them give quite a bit of space to "well-known theoretical lines" that I consider outmoded and simply not worth the time it would take to study them. For example, after 1 e4 d5 2 e5 d6 4 0-0-0 4...g4 – but I won't.
Here's what I think of 4...\he_3e_4: Black must learn a great deal of theory in order to survive to a rather poor position. Why then should one study it? The book you hold in your hands is the first repertoire book on the Alekhine. If you want a general book, you can pick any of the fine books listed above – but this one is personal and specific.

I am going to recommend only lines that I personally like and play myself. I am not going to recommend any lines where you have to know theory to move 20 just to survive. For example, in the Modern Line mentioned above, I advocate the Larsen/Miles/Carlsen continuation 4...\he_4\he_5e_5, and then after 5 \he_5e_5 I will cover in depth what I think are Black's two best continuations: 5...\he_5g_6 (Kengis) and 5...\he_5c_6 (Carlsen). I will not give more than a nod to 5...\he_5d_7, because one could spend the whole book analyzing the sacrifice 6 \he_5d_7f_7 – and then what? You could probably play 5...\he_5d_7t en times without ever facing the sacrifice, as most of your cautious opponents will simply answer 6 \he_5f_3, when the game will likely transpose to Kengis lines, which you could have reached directly – but then, your eleventh opponent will come wired to the gills and play 6 \he_5d_7f_7 – you will have forgotten all the variations that you studied a year ago – and he will crush you with the latest Fritz continuation on move 23!

This is not the fate I want for any of my readers!

Therefore I have steered clear of recommending any particularly computeresque variations, such as 1 \he_4e_4f_6 2 \he_5e_5d_5 3 \he_5d_4d_4 4 \he_5f_3 \he_5c_6f_3? 5 \he_5c_4 \he_5b_6 6 \he_5e_6f_6! fxe6 or 1 \he_4e_4f_6 2 \he_5e_5d_5 3 \he_5d_4d_6 4 \he_5c_4 \he_5b_6 5 f4 dxe5 6 fxe5 c5 7 d5 e6. Both of these variations include queen sacrifices as theory! You think I'm joking? In Davies' book he gives the following game:

L.Wydrowski-A.Marcinkiewicz correspondence 1997

1 \he_4e_4f_6 2 \he_5e_5d_5 3 \he_5d_4d_4 4 \he_5f_3 \he_5c_6 5 \
\he_5c_4 \he_5b_6 6 \he_5e_5f_6 7 \he_5g_5 e5 8 \he_5d_3 \he_5d_4d_4 9 \
\he_5h_5+ g6 10 \he_5xg_6+ hxg_6 11 \he_5wxg_6+ \
\he_5d_7 12 \he_5f_7 \he_5x_4c_4?

(yes, Black is giving up a queen for two pieces!) 13 \he_5x_4d_8 \he_5x_4d_8 14 \he_5b_3 \he_5f_5 
15 \he_5f_7 \he_5b_6 16 \he_5e_3 \he_5h_7 17 \he_5g_8 \he_5c_2+ 
18 \he_5e_2 \he_5d_7 19 \he_5x_4b_6 axb_6 20 \he_5c_3 \he_5g_7 
21 \he_5c_4 \he_5g_4 22 \he_5f_7 \he_5g_6 23 \he_5d_5 \he_5d_4+ 
24 \he_5d_1 c6 25 \he_5c_4 b5 26 \he_5x_4b_5 \he_5c_2+ 27 \
\he_5e_1 cxb_5 0-1
Or this one, from *Starting Out: Alekhine’s Defence* – I like a queen sacrifice with breakfast myself!

D.Bryson-T.Luther
Bled Olympiad 2002

1 e4 d5 2 e5 dxe5 3 d4 f6 4 c4 c5 5 f4 dxe5 6 fxe5 c4 7 d5 e6 8 c3 exd5 9 cxd5 c4 10 d6 c6 11 d7 f3 g4 12 f4 g5 13 e4 gxf4 14 d6+ xf6? (another queen sacrificed for two pieces!) 15 exf6 0-0-0 16 wc1 e8+ 17 d2 xd6 18 jc4 c5+ 19 d1 e3 20 c3 xc4 21 xc4 d8 22 e1 xf3 23 gxf3 d2 24 e2 d1+ 25 e1 d2 26 e2 d1+ 27 e1 d2 28 e2 1/2–1/2

Just this: I will give the prospective Alekhine player a sound but not too theoretical repertoire against everything White can throw at this defence – but I warn you in advance, White will throw a lot of junk!

And one has to take this junk seriously, for one will face it much more often than the critical lines. Almost a hundred years of experience have made it clear that the strongest test of Alekhine’s bold counter-attack is this aforementioned Modern Line – here are the moves again: 1 e4 d5 2 e5 f6 3 d4 d6 4 c3. World Champion Anand plays this exclusively, with great results (out of eleven games in the database he has scored nine wins, two draws, and not a single loss!). One would think you would face this line all the time – but not so at all.

Anand clearly takes the Alekhine seriously, and always seems well prepared when he faces it – but most people tend to view the cheeky knight counter as some kind of nonsense that can be met with any junk lying about – as though champions of the defence like Alekhine himself, Vassily Smyslov and Bobby Fischer were just crazed amateurs having a fling!

Consider the Sousse Interzonal of 1967, for example: the best players in the world are vying for the world title, and some of these “weak” players (Larsen! Korchnoi! Mecking! Hort!) play Alekhine’s Defence. Among them they play 1 e4 c5 five times (Larsen played
it twice). Did any of their esteemed opponents play the strong and critical Modern Line? Not a chance! Two of the five white players tried the largely inoffensive Exchange Variation (2 e5 d5 3 d4 d6 4 c4 b6 5 exd6) where White hopes for a slight edge at best, but hardly challenges the Alekhine. Two more white players tried the completely inoffensive 2 e5 d5 3 c3 which has never given White more than equality since Alekhine cleanly equalized against Sämisch (see Game 65) in 1921! Finally, one World Championship contender wouldn’t even push the centre pawn past the meridian and defended with 2 c3.

What were the results? Black won all five games.

Nothing much has changed today. Unless you face Anand, your opponents will probably throw everything at you except the Modern Line! My experience is quite typical. In recent years I have played the Alekhine eleven times and have faced the following variations: The most common line was the Exchange Variation (three games) but this is no way for White to get an advantage – if in fact he wants one. Many players play this way out of trendy pacifism: that is, they aim for a draw with White. Two opponents played what is probably the worst playable answer to 1...f6, namely the pitifully passive 2 d3. This was played just as often as the two opponents who actually went for the strong Modern Line.

That accounts for seven games: in the other four I faced Sämisch’s inoffensive 3 c3, the even more inoffensive 2 c3, the no-name 2 e5 d5 3 d4 d6 4 c4 b6 5 f3!? and finally the optically impressive Four Pawns Attack just once.

To sum up, I faced the dangerous Modern Line just 18% of the time, and the absurdly retrograde 2 d3 just as often! I learned how to fight against White’s drawish Exchange Variation 27% of the time, more than any other line; and another 27% of the time I faced an assortment of harmless variations.

I faced the sharp Four Pawns Attack (2 e5 d5 3 d4 d6 4 c4 b6 5 f4) only once, or just 9%.

And I scored, with Black, four wins, three losses and four draws, for a healthy plus score of almost 55% (one recalls that normally White scores this kind of percentage) and it’s worth noting that I was playing substantially higher rated opponents in three of these games.

These statistics do give a very good reason to play the Alekhine’s Defence: most of the time you will face not very good lines that you should be able to equalize cleanly against, or even get the advantage right out of the opening! You must, of course, be prepared for the dangerous Modern Line, but I will give two good, related variations here, so even if you face it you can react with confidence.
As for the “inoffensive” moves, I am going (for the first time in an Alekhine book) to give what I think is best rather than what is strictly Alekhine’s Defence. In other words, if the best line is to transpose to the French, then transpose to the French! (Game 61). If the best move is to transpose to the Four Knight’s Game (Game 70) then bring on more horsepower! If the best calls for moving your king on move three, then call your king Steinitz and move him on out! (Game 74).

In every case my repertoire lines are based not on long memorized variations but rather on solid positional concepts.

In Chapter One I will show how World Champions have upheld the honour of Alekhine’s Defence; and after that, I will take on all of White’s tries, starting with the dangerous Modern Line (Chapters Two, Three and Four) and then work my way down to the “savage” 2 d3 and 2 f3 of Chapter Ten. Most of the chapters will start with a game featuring “Lines I Don’t Like” – usually theory-heavy, overrated variations – and then will proceed to my recommendations. Also, each chapter will feature a hero such as Larsen or Korchnoi who has championed my proposed repertoire – all GMs except for one lowly IM (you can guess who that is!) spotlighted in Chapter Ten.

If you work all the way through this book, I promise you that you will come away with a sound and playable repertoire to battle 1 e4 with 1...\textit{f}6!.

Timothy Taylor
Los Angeles
January 2010
Chapter One

World Champions Play
Alekhine's Defence

Our Hero: Alexander Alekhine

The great World Champion Alexander Alekhine introduced 1 e4 \( \mathcal{Q}f6 \) into high-level tournament play at Budapest 1921, though he was not the first to try out the opening. Emperor Napoleon Bonaparte was known to play this defence – actually much more a counter-attack than a defence – in his bedroom! (see the notes to Game 73). Despite Napoleon's conquests, the opening became known as Alekhine's Defence and was quickly given a try by the reigning world champion Capablanca. This is one "offbeat" opening that has been generally approved by the best players in modern chess history, so in this chapter we will see Alekhine's Defence wins by Capablanca, Alekhine (naturally), Dr. Euwe, Bronstein (the scientific Botvinnik would not send a knight scurrying across the board in some non-engineered protocol, but his rival Bronstein, who tied his world championship match with Botvinnik, played the Alekhine often, and with flair), Smyslov, Tal, Petrosian, Spassky, and of course Fischer, who uncorked 1...\( \mathcal{Q}f6 \) twice in his world championship match with Spassky, and scored probably the decisive win of the match with it!

But before we get to these chess kings of the past, let's salute the young man who has put the Alekhine back on the contemporary chess map – the future world champion Magnus Carlsen! I only wish that when I played Magnus, I had answered his 1 e4 with 1...\( \mathcal{Q}f6 \)! – for the record I played 1...c5 and he crushed me!
Game 1

V. Topalov-M. Carlsen
Morelia-Linares 2008

1 e4 f6 2 e5 d5 3 d4 d6 4 f3 dxe5 5 dxe5

The dangerous and less well-known pawn recapture, 5 dxe5, is covered in Chapter Two.

5...c6

Just like Fischer’s win in Game 13 of his match vs. Spassky, this extremely high-level success in a “Super Tournament” provoked great interest in Alekhine’s counter-attack.

This move order, favoured by Carlsen, will be covered in Chapter Four, while the Kengis Variation with 5...g6 will be examined in Chapter Three.

6 d3

This move and other alternatives such as 6 c4 and e2 will be covered extensively in Chapter Four.

6...d7 7 xd7

Develops Black, and the strong white knight vanishes. 7 0-0 is better, for which see Game 30. The text move shows tentative and unsure play – but I’m sure that World Champion contender Topalov has studied the opening since this debacle.

7...xd7 8 0-0 g6

For the purposes of my recommended repertoire, it’s vital that the student study and understand both Chapters Three and Four, as the Carlsen lines featuring 5...c6 and the Kengis lines featuring 5...g6 often transpose into each other (as here) and are linked by similar positional ideas.

9 d2 g7 10 f3 0-0 11 e1 g4 12 c3 c5!

Black takes the initiative with this beautiful combination based on the insecure bishop on d3, and utilizing the pinned knight as well: in some variations where the e1-rook is captured, White does not have dxe1.

Another way of looking at the position is that a 2700 player with White is fighting for survival after only 12 moves! Would this happen in any other opening?
13 \( e_4 \)

The best try; 13 \( dxc5 \) is obviously critical, but after 13...\( \texttt{xc3!} \) 14 \( \texttt{bxc3} \) \( \texttt{xc3} \) 15 \( \texttt{h6} \) (15 \( \texttt{e3} \) \( \texttt{xe1} \) is much better for Black, as White has no good way to recapture the bishop) 15...\( \texttt{xe1} \) 16 \( \texttt{xf8} \) \( \texttt{xf8} \) 17 \( \texttt{e4} \) \( \texttt{c3} \) 18 \( \texttt{xb7} \) \( \texttt{xb8} \) 19 \( \texttt{xd8+} \) \( \texttt{xd8} \) 20 \( \texttt{c1} \) \( \texttt{a5} \) Black's two bishops and centre pawn give him some edge in the endgame, e.g. 21 \( g3 \) \( f6 \) 22 \( \texttt{g2} \) \( e5 \) etc.

13...\( \texttt{cxd4} \) 14 \( \texttt{cxd4} \)

White has a somewhat weak isolani, but the single weakness should be manageable.

14...\( \texttt{e6} \)

15 \( \texttt{b3?} \)

White tries to generate some play by giving up the d-pawn, but Carlsen grabs said pawn and hangs on to it like a bulldog, finally scoring the full point solely due to that extra pawn. If Topalov had not been so shaken by the opening surprise, he would probably have defended solidly with 15 \( h3! \) \( \texttt{xf3} \) 16 \( \texttt{xf3} \) \( \texttt{c8} \) 17 \( \texttt{e3} \) when I don't really see anything for Black: White is now planning \( \texttt{b3} \) without a sacrifice, and if 17...\( \texttt{exe3} \) 18 \( \texttt{fxe3} \) \( e5 \) 19 \( \texttt{d5} \) White's passed pawn gives him adequate counterplay.

15...\( \texttt{xf3} \) 16 \( \texttt{xf3} \) \( \texttt{xd4} \)

Black chops a pawn and lengthens the fianchettoed bishop's diagonal, a key idea in all Kengis positions.

17 \( \texttt{xd5} \)

White doesn't improve with 17 \( \texttt{xb7} \) as Black tempos off the rook with 17...\( \texttt{wa5} \), and then after 18 \( \texttt{d1} \) \( \texttt{ab8} \) 19 \( \texttt{wd7} \) \( \texttt{fd8} \) 20 \( \texttt{c6} \) \( \texttt{xb2} \) 21 \( \texttt{xb2} \) \( \texttt{xb2} \) Black keeps the pawn.

17...\( \texttt{xd5} \) 18 \( \texttt{xd5} \) \( \texttt{exd5} \) 19 \( \texttt{d1} \) \( \texttt{g7} \) 20 \( \texttt{ef1} \)

White still can't get his pawn back, due to little tactics: 20 \( \texttt{xd5} \) \( \texttt{fd8} \) 21 \( \texttt{xd8+} \) (if 21 \( \texttt{d2} \) \( \texttt{ac8} \) with the idea of \( \texttt{xc1} \) forces \( \texttt{d8+} \) anyway) 21...\( \texttt{xd8} \) 22 \( \texttt{e3} \) (22 \( \texttt{f1} \) \( \texttt{d1+} \) 23 \( \texttt{e2} \) \( \texttt{h1} \) 24 \( h3 \) \( \texttt{h6} \) is even worse) 22...\( \texttt{xb2} \) 23 \( \texttt{b1} \) \( b6 \) and Black is a clean pawn up.

Note again the strength of Black's dark-squared bishop, which now rules the entire long diagonal.

20...\( \texttt{fd8} \)
The decisive break.

43 fxg4

White must take, for if 43 \( f2 \) \( e5 \)
44 \( e1 \) g3 45 a5 \( d6 \) 46 \( c3 \) c5 47 \( e1 \) (47 b4 \( c4 \) 48 bxc5 dxc3 wins immediately) 47...\( e5 \) he falls into zugzwang and must lose material.

43...\( e4 \) 0-1

The king is a strong piece! White resigns, for if 44 \( h4 \) (likewise 44 \( f2 \) \( b2+ \) 45 \( d2 \) d3+ 46 \( e1 \) \( b1+ \) 47 \( d1 \) \( b4+ \) ) 44...\( b2+ \) 45 \( d2 \) d3+ 46 \( e1 \) (46 \( d1 \) \( b1 \) mate is a mercy death) 46...\( b4 \) wins a rook and mates soon.

A tremendous win by Carlsen, but one sees he was helped by the opening surprise.

Now let’s take a look at past World Champions (including one “co-champion!”) who have scored with Alekhine’s Defence. We begin with Alekhine’s constant rival, Capablanca, and proceed in order of their title holding years.

Game 2
F. Yates-J. R. Capablanca
Moscow 1925

1 e4 \( f6 \)

Quite a compliment, as the then World Champion takes up his competitor’s move (one recalls that Alekhine had introduced his defence to international play in 1921, the same year that Capablanca wrested the world title
from Dr. Lasker).

2 e5 d5 3 c3

For some reason this completely harmless move (instead of the natural and stronger 3 d4) has been played repeatedly against World Champions – to no effect! Instead of trying to take advantage of Black’s adventurous knight, White abandons any hope of opening advantage and simply offers to exchange Black’s daring knight, with an even game.

3...dxc3

I prefer Alekhine’s 3...e6 (see Game 65), but Capablanca no doubt preferred the clarity of the direct capture, as well as White’s doubled pawns.

4 dxc3 d5

For the good alternative 4...d6 see Basman-Smyslov (Game 6) and Nezhmetdinov-Spassky (Game 9).

5 f3 c5 6 f4 c6 7 w d2 g4 8 0-0-0 e6 9 h3 x f3 10 gxf3 c7

Black has equalized and the advanced white e-pawn is a target.

11 g3 c4 12 f4 g6 13 b1 h5 14 h4 e7 15 g5?

Correct is 15 x e7 x e7 16 h4 c5 (if 16...f5 17 h3 x h4 18 x e6 and White equalizes right away – which would be a success for Yates here) 17 x h3 0-0-0. Now if White plays circumspectly and takes off the black knight if it should ever come to f5, he might make a draw – hurrah!

15...x g5 16 f x g5 x e5

A pawn up, it’s time for Capa to give a lesson.

17 x e3 0-0 18 e2 c6 19 f4 x e7 20 x hg1 f5

The knight reaches this key square, undisturbed by the white bishop.

21 w f2 f e8 22 g e1 b 5 23 f 1 a 5 24 x e 5 b 4!

The doubled pawns provide a convenient lever for a line opening attack – while White has no such counterplay on the opposite wing.

25 w e1 x e 8 26 a 1 b 6 27 w d 2 x b 8 28 x b 1 d 6 29 w g 2 b 5 30 c x b 4 c 3!

31 b x c 3 x c 3 32 b 3 a x b 4 33 a 3 x a 6 34 x e 3 b a 8 35 x c 3 b c 3 36 w c 1

w c 5 37 w a 2 w c 4 38 w a 1 w x b 3 ! 0-1

Capablanca finishes with his usual
elegance. White has to take the queen, but then Black’s rooks lay waste to the remains of White’s king position:

39 cxb3 axb3+ 40 axb3 (or 40 b1 a1+ 41 c2 h8 a2+ and Black wins) 40...axb3+ 41 b1 c2+ 42 xc2 a2+ and Black emerges with an extra rook. Again we see an unprepared opponent who is first baffled by Alekhine’s Defence, and then basically lost (with White) by move 15.

4...c5

Simplest is 4...d5, as I recommend in Game 68, note to White’s third move.

5 d3 c6 6 f3 e6 7 c3 d5 8 exd6

Otherwise it’s hard to see what the bishop is doing on b3, but now White has exchanged his advanced centre pawn and received nothing in return.

8...xd6 9 e4 e7 10 c3 0-0 11 e3 d5!

No retreat! Black sees that he recovers his pawn.

12 c5 f4 13 0-0 c5 14 c5 b6 15 e4 x3 16 c2 f4

Black has reached a good Sicilian pawn structure (imagine Black has succeeded in engineering a ...d6-d5 break in an open Sicilian position). In other
words, Black has the only centre pawn and potential play down the c-file. For the moment, White has more active pieces, but unless that activity is translated into something more tangible, Black will be at least equal.

17 \texttt{hfd1} \texttt{wc7} 18 \texttt{d6} \texttt{g6}

White's next releases the tension too early.

19 \texttt{xc8}

Better is 19 \texttt{d2} \texttt{b7} 20 \texttt{ad1} \texttt{ad8} 21 \texttt{g5} \texttt{e7} 22 \texttt{ge4} \texttt{ce5} 23 \texttt{xb7} \texttt{xd2} 24 \texttt{xd2} \texttt{xb7} when White retains activity, while Black will plan something like ...h7-h6, ...\texttt{c8} and ...\texttt{c4}, or challenge the d-file if possible – the chances would then be approximately balanced.

19...\texttt{axc8} 20 \texttt{we4} \texttt{a5}

A modern player recognizes the Sicilian themes here – one could say Alekhine was ahead of his time, while Sergeant was out of his depth!

21 \texttt{a4} \texttt{b8} 22 \texttt{b5} \texttt{b7} 23 \texttt{d2} \texttt{d6} 24 \texttt{b4} \texttt{xb5} 25 \texttt{xb5} \texttt{e5}

The only centre pawn makes a dramatic entrance!

26 \texttt{ad1} \texttt{e4} 27 \texttt{g5}??

In unfamiliar territory, it's easy to make a mistake. 27 \texttt{d4} holds on to his material, but after 27...\texttt{c5} Black has good play in the centre and on the kingside, where a pawn majority attack may ensue with ...f5-f4.

27...\texttt{c5} 0-1

But now it's all over, as a piece goes.

\begin{center}
\textbf{Game 4}
\end{center}
\begin{center}
G.A.Thomas-M.Euwe
Nottingham 1936
\end{center}

1 e4 \texttt{f6} 2 e5 \texttt{d5} 3 d4 \texttt{d6} 4 \texttt{f3}

White plays the best line!

4...\texttt{g4}

This used to be Black's main reply, but has now been superseded by the modern 4...dxe5, which is also my recommendation.

5 \texttt{e2} c6 6 0-0 dxe5

6...\texttt{xf3} 7 \texttt{xf3} dxe5 8 dxe5 e6 is supposedly correct (this was also played at Nottingham in the game Botvinnik-Flohr), but I don't like Black's
game – see Game 11, note to Black’s 4th move.
7 Ʌxe5 Ʌxe2 8 Ʌxe2 e6

20...f6 pays too much to “win” the piece: 21 dxc6 Ʌc5+ 22 Ʌh1 fxe5 23 cxb7 Ʌab8 24 Ʌxe5 Ʌf7 (White wins the piece back after both 24...Ʌxb7 25 Ʌc4+ Ʌf7 26 Ʌxc5 and 24...Ʌxb7 25 Ʌc4+) 25 Ʌd5 Ʌb6 26 Ʌxf7+ Ʌxf7 27 Ʌxb8 Ʌxb8 28 g4 and White’s rook and two pawns are much better than Black’s minor pieces.
21 Ʌxd5 Ʌad8 22 Ʌd3 Ʌe6??

A very modern structure, often seen today in the Caro-Kann and Scandinavian, but here Black is rather behind in development.
9 b3 Ʌd7 10 c4 Ʌf5 f6 11 Ʌc3 Ʌb4 12 Ʌb2 0-0 13 Ʌfd1?!

The wrong rook! Correct is 13 Ʌad1 Ʌa5 14 Ʌd3 Ʌad8 15 f4! – White needs the rook behind this advance. As Alekhine correctly notes in the tournament book, White would then have the advantage and good attacking chances.
13...Ʌc7 14 Ʌd3 Ʌfd8 15 Ʌad1 Ʌf8 16 Ʌe4 Ʌxe4 17 Ʌxe4 Ʌd6 18 d5

18 f4 Ʌd7 19 Ʌe2 is still somewhat better for White.

18...exd5

As Alekhine points out, Black could fall into a trap here: 18...exd5 19 cxd5 Ʌc2?! 20 Ʌxf7! and White wins due to 20...Ʌxf7 21 Ʌf3+ with a fatal discovered attack on the queen.

19 cxd5 Ʌe8 20 f4 cxd5

The reigning world champion leaves a piece en prise!

Alekhine gives 22...Ʌc5+ 23 Ʌh1 Ʌe6 as better for Black, but after 24 f5 Ʌxd5 25 Ʌxd5 Ʌf4 26 Ʌd2 Ʌh5 (26...Ʌxe5 27 Ʌd8+ is just as bad) 27 Ʌg5 wins for White.

Instead, Black should play 23...Ʌxd5!

24 Ʌxd5 Ʌg6 25 g3 when White is only slightly better.

23 g3??

There is no reason not to take: 23 Ʌxd6 Ʌxd6 24 Ʌxd6 Ʌd8 25 Ʌd7 and now Black could resign or try any of these losing variations:

a) 25...Ʌc8 26 f5 with Ʌf6+ coming.
b) 25...Ʌa5 26 Ʌe7 h6 27 f5 Ʌxf5 28
Af6+ gxf6 29 ∆xd8+ ∆xd8 30 ♪xd8+ ♦g7 31 ♪d4 with a nice extra piece.

  c) 25...∥xd6 26 ∆xd6 ♦f8 (26...∥h8 27 ♦e5 is a pretty win) 27 ♦f6+ and White comes out a rook ahead.

But possibly Sir Thomas was hypnотized!

23...∥c5+ 24 ♦g2 ♦b6 25 ♪c3 ∆xd5 26 ∆xd5 f6 27 ♦c4 ♦c6 28 ∆xb6 ♪xb6

29 ∆d2

“The first of a series of indifferent moves, which can only be explained by extreme shortness of time,” writes Alekhine.

Better is 29 ♪c4.

29...∥c5 30 ♪c4+ ♦h8 31 ∆d5 h6 32 ♦h3

Since Black is not threatening anything, as Alekhine remarks, 32 ∆a3 ♦e6 33 ♪c4 ∆d8 34 ♦b4 ∆xd2+ 35 ♦xd2 f5 36 ∆c3 ♪e3 37 ∆e5 ♦h7 38 ♪xe6 ♪e2+ with a draw is more logical.

32...∆e4 33 ∆c2

Fritz weighs in here with the silicon centralization 33 ∆d4! and claims that White is still slightly better!

33...∥e3! 34 ♪d4

The greedy 34 ♪xb7 allows a Black attack after 34...∥f3, but the simple 34 ♪h5, holding f3, probably draws.

34...∥f3!

Black sets up the well-known queen + knight attacking machine; neither man nor machine can see a defence for White any longer.

35 ♪g1

A typical attack might run like this:

35 b4 g5 36 b5 ♪f1+ 37 ♦g4 h5+ 38 ♦f5 (or 38 ♦xh5 ♪h3+ 39 ♦g6 ♪h7 mate) 38...∥h3+ 39 ♦g6 ♪g8+ 40 ♦f7 (40 ♦h6 ♪f5 41 ♪xe4 ♪g6+! also wins) 40...∥g7+ 41 ♦f8 ♪e6 and mates next.

35...h5

35...∥g5+ 36 fxg5 ♪f5+ is quicker.

36 ∆d4 ∆d8 37 ♪e3 0-1

White resigns in view of the coming 37...∥g5+ 38 fxg5 (or 38 ♦h4 ♪g4 mate) 38...∥f5+ 39 ♦g2 ♪xc2+, when Black has a material advantage and a raging attack.

Certainly a lucky win by the World Champion, but one sees modern ideas developing in the Alekhine, notably the exchange on e5 which is now standard.
Game 5
N.Bakulin-D.Bronstein
Moscow 1961

1 e4 d6f 2 e5 d5 3 d4 d6 4 f3 g6

The problem with this move – which became known as the Alburt variation – is Short's attack with 5 c4 that I will discuss in the notes to Game 11.

5 c4 b6 6 b3

This looks like some wacky over the board concoction: White has no kingside development and now weakens the long diagonal – it's evident that he has been surprised by the opening.

6...g7 7 b2 0-0 8 e2 dxe5 9 xxe5 c5!

Breaks and shmakes! We now have a Kengis structure and this thrust, accentuating the power of the g7-bishop, is thematic and strong.

10 f4

White can't keep his centre together: 10 d5! e6 11 d6 d6d7 12 f4 xex5 13 fxe5 d6 and Black wins a pawn by means of this classic undermining manoeuvre; or 11 dxe6 e7 12 0-0 (not 12 exf7+ xxf7 and Black wins due to the pin on the long diagonal) 12...xe6 with a big lead in development..

Somewhat better is 10 dxc5 xxd1+ 11 xxd1 d6d7 12 f4 c6 13 f3 dxe5 14 fxe5 dxe5 15 e2 d8 when White maintains material equality, but still stands worse in view of his vanished centre (now occupied by a big black knight!) and doubled pawns.

10...c6 11 dxc5

Pushing the d-pawn still fails: after 11 d5 dxe5 12 xex5 dxe5 13 fxe5 d7 14 e6 fxe6 15 dxe6 e5 16 d5 a5+ 17 d2 a6 18 a1 d8 19 g5 xe6 the position begins to look like a Chinua Achebe novel ("Things Fall Apart")!

11...xd1+ 12 xd1 d7 13 c3 dxe5 14 fxe5 e5

White's centre is only a memory and Black is already better.

15 e1 b4 16 f2 d4+ 17 g3 f5!

Black attacks ferociously sans
queen!

18 e4 f4+ 19 f3 e3 20 h1 h5 21 h3 e5 22 c3 c2 23 e4

White has to give up material as Black is ready to mate! If 23 ab1, 23...d4+ 24 e4 f5+ 25 xe5 a8+ 26 d5 d8+ 27 e5 c6 mate would have been a perfect finish.

Now the game is prolonged, but Bronstein still succeeds in winning in his inimitably imaginative style.

23...xa1 24 a1 a5 25 d6

25 xe5 xe4+ 26 xe4 xc5 would be more of a technical exercise.

25 a8 e8 26 c3 g5 27 d3

Not 27 xg5? e4+ 28 xe4 xe4 mate.

27 g4+ 28 e2 xc5! 29 xc5 e4

Looks like Empire of the Ants!

30 c2

Another way to lose is 30 xe4

gxh3 31 gxh3 xe4 32 xe4 xe4+ 33 f1 xe3.

30 f3+ 31 f1

Black wins after 31 xf3 exf3+ 32 d1 (or 32 d2 e2+) 32...f2 and the soldier ant becomes a queen.

31 gxh3 32 h6

Neither pawn capture works: 32 gxh3 xh3+ 33 f2 e3+ 34 g3 f5 and the ants sweep everything before them while White has no counterplay, or 32 xf3 h2 33 g2 exf3+ 34 xh2 e2+ 35 g3 xc2 and Black wins material while still retaining a mighty passed pawn.

32 fxg2+

Now that’s a pawn majority!

33 g1 h7 34 f6 b6!

A simple but powerful move that ends the game: Black breaks the cohesion of White’s pieces, and ultimately White cannot stop the invasion of a black rook.

35 d7

35 xe4 xe4 36 h8+ f7 ends White’s play, or 35 a4 xe6 and the black rooks rule.

35...f7 36 c5

If 36 e5 xe5l and the remaining rook gets to f1.

36 xd7 37 b4 xe6 38 b3 f8!

With single-minded intensity, Bronstein aims to get a rook to the eighth to support his passed pawn – nothing else matters.

39 h2

Or 39 xe6 d1+ 40 h2 g1# 41 xh3 e3+ 42 g2 f3+ 43 h2 h1 mate.

39 xf6 40 xf6+ g7 41 f4 0-1

White resigns in view of 41...e3 42 f3 e2 43 e3 d1!, when the black rook reaches the eighth and one or two black pawns promote.
A spectacular win by Bronstein, but once again we see a high ranked White opponent struggling in the opening.

**Game 6**

**M.Basman-V.Smyslov**

**Lugano Olympiad 1968**

1 e4 d5

1...e5 2 c4 dxe4 3 c3 d4 4 c3

5 dxc3 f6 is the always entertaining Boden-Kieseritzky Gambit. Basman may have been hoping for something like this, but as we'll see, Smyslov dashes his hopes and heads for the ending – the World Champion's forte.

2 e5 c5 3 e3

This didn't work against Capablanca (or Taylor, for that matter, see Game 67!), but let's see how Smyslov handles it.

3...hx5

Alekhine's move is 3...e6 and...

4 dxc3 d6

![Chess board](image)

...Capablanca's move is 4...d5, but Smyslov doesn't need to imitate any-one.

5 c4 c6

Not 5...dxe5?? 6 c7.

6 f3 dxe5 7 wxe2

Or 7 wxe3 8 dxe5 f5! as in Game 9, Nezhmetdinov-Spassky, where we get to see this variation crash and burn one more time!

7...e6

Presumably White was expecting 7...f6 8 e4 e6 9 h4 with colourful Boden-Kieseritzky play, but Smyslov adroitly sidesteps: Black gives back the pawn and equalizes easily.

8 xe5 xe5 9 wxe5 d7 10 g3

An interesting variation is 10 d5 c6 11 e4 w8b 12 xb8+ x8b 13 e4 d8 14 0-0-0 f6 15 c7 c8 16 g3

17 h1 (17 c7 with a draw is probably White's best) 17...e8 18 xexd8+ wxd8 19 d1+ d7 20 b4 e7

21 b2 c8 22 a3 g6 23 f4 d8 24 h4 e8 25 xexd8+ xd8 26 c4 f5 27 xex7+ exe7 28 d5 e5 and Black's better pawn structure gives him the edge.

10...w6 11 e4 w6 12 w3

Captures give nothing: 12 xc7 w4+ 13 e2 xc2 and Black has good counterplay, or 12 xg6 hXg6 13 0-0-0 (13 xxc7? c8 wins a piece) 13...0-0-0 is equal.

12...0-0-0 13 a6 c6 14 d3 f5 15 0-0 c5 16 e2 f4!

If Basman hoped to surprise Smyslov, he has failed in that aim and now has to play a complex ending, which is something like chasing Brer Rabbit into the briar patch!
17 \textit{W}xg4 \textit{fxg4} 18 \textit{Md2} \textit{df8} 19 g3 \textit{ff7}

The ending starts out approximately even: Black has the f-file and White doubled queenside pawns, but Black also has a weakness at e6. In short, equal, but by no means drawish.

20 \textit{Cc4}

White can play more actively, though after 20 b4 \textit{b6} 21 \textit{Bb2} \textit{Hf8} 22 \textit{Med1} g6 23 \textit{Cc4} \textit{He8} 24 \textit{Be2} \textit{ff5} 25 \textit{Hde1} \textit{Hh5} Black has good counterplay.

20...\textit{He8} 21 \textit{Med1} b5 22 \textit{Hf1} e5 23 \textit{Cc3} \textit{xe3} 24 fxe3 \textit{Cc7} 25 \textit{eg2} \textit{He7} 26 b3 \textit{Hf6} 27 \textit{Hf1} \textit{Heff7} 28 \textit{Hfd1} h5 29 \textit{b2} g5

Black is gradually obtaining the better game. Looking back, little steps like 26...\textit{ff6} and 27...\textit{ef7} appear as endgame pointillism, each dot improving Black’s game, yet only visible from a distance.

30 c4?

White feels it too – and lashes out to no avail.

30...\textit{bxc4} 31 b4 h4 32 \textit{Cc3} h3!

The white h-pawn is now a target.

33 \textit{Ee4} \textit{Ee6} 34 \textit{Ed8} \textit{Ed7} 35 \textit{H1xd7+} \textit{Hxd7} 36 \textit{Ha8} \textit{ff2}!

Black’s potentially passed h-pawn is more advanced and much more dangerous than White’s similar a-pawn.

37 \textit{Hxa7+} \textit{Hd6} 38 a4 \textit{Hxh2} 39 \textit{Hxc4} \textit{He2} 40 \textit{Hd3} \textit{Hc1} 41 b5 \textit{cxh5} 42 a5 \textit{b4} 43 \textit{Hb7} h2 44 \textit{Hb6+} \textit{Cc5} 45 \textit{Hh6} \textit{Hb5+} 46 \textit{Hd2} \textit{He2+} 47 \textit{Hd1} \textit{He3} 48 \textit{Hb7} \textit{Ha3} 49 \textit{Hxh2} \textit{Hxa5}

It’s hard to see a mistake on White’s part, and yet it is equally clear that

White managed to get rid of the dangerous passed pawn, but at too high a price: Black emerges with two extra pawns and a winning position.

50 \textit{Hh8}

If White goes pawn collecting, Black
wins as follows: 50 \( \text{Kh5} \) \( \text{d4} \) 51 \( \text{Bxg5} \) \( \text{c3} \) 52 \( \text{Ke1} \) (not 52 \( \text{exf5?} \) \( \text{a1} \) mate) 52...\( \text{a4} \) 53 \( \text{Bxg4} \) \( \text{xc2} \) 54 \( \text{g7} \) b3 and the b-pawn is too strong.

50...\( \text{a3} \) 51 \( \text{d2} \) \( \text{Bxg3} \) 52 \( \text{c8+} \) \( \text{b6} \) 53 \( \text{e4} \) \( \text{h3} \) 54 \( \text{g8} \) \( \text{h2+} \) 55 \( \text{c1} \) \( \text{h5} \) 56 \( \text{d2} \) \( \text{c5} \) 57 \( \text{f5} \) \( \text{g3} \) 58 \( \text{c8+} \) \( \text{d6} \) 59 \( \text{e3} \) g2 60 \( \text{f2} \) \( \text{c6} \) 61 \( \text{g8} \) \( \text{h1} \) 0-1

White resigns, for if 62 \( \text{g6+} \) \( \text{e7!} \) (62...\( \text{c5} \) 63 \( \text{xc6+} \) allows White to prolong the game) 63 \( \text{Bxg5} \) \( \text{f1+} \) 64 \( \text{e2} \) \( \text{g1} \) and Black comes out a rook up.

A magical ending by Smyslov, and yet another non-threatening opening for White.

---

**Game 7**

**A.Zapata-M.Tal**

**Subotica Interzonal 1987**

1 e4 \( \text{f6} \) 2 e5 \( \text{d5} \) 3 d4 d6 4 f4

If White wants the Four Pawns Attack, then he should go for the gusto and play 4 c4 \( \text{b6} \) 5 f4, and at least a double-edged game will ensue (see Chapter Six). This half-hearted – or three-quarter-hearted – semi-variation is just more debris lying about the Alekhine. Tal gives the line the respect it deserves: not much!

4...\( \text{dxe5} \) 5 fxe5

White has done terribly after 5 dxe5 \( \text{xf5} \); e.g. 6 c4 \( \text{b4} \) 7 \( \text{gxd8+} \) \( \text{xd8} \) and Black was already better in J.Morrison-E.Colle, Scarborough 1926.

5...c5

Black has the only developed piece (and a well-centralized knight at that) and an attack in the centre.

6 c4?

White’s centre is crumbling and this move doesn’t help. 6 \( \text{c3} \) is considered best, for which see Game 63. If 6 dxc5 then simply 6...\( \text{a5+} \) and ...\( \text{xc5} \), when White will struggle with his sole central survivor, the now weak and isolated e-pawn.

6...\( \text{b4} \)

If I were a GM playing a World Champion in an Interzonal tournament, I would try really hard to still be in the game with White (!) after six moves ...but in fact, here Tal is already clearly better. What is this witchcraft?

I can only surmise that the Colombian GM was surprised by the Alekhine, had nothing ready, and improvised into disaster. However, one must give Zapata some credit; he did dare to push his e-pawn forward on move two! In a later game in this book (Todocevic-Tal, Game 72) Tal’s opponent was so terrified of the mighty Alekhine that he answered with the pitiful 2 d3, and was
dispatched rather more quickly than in the present game.

7 d5

Evidently this was White’s idea, but the pawns will be quickly undermined and destroyed. If 7 a3!? 4c6 8 d5 5xe5 wins a pawn, so necessary is 8 dxc5 6xd1+ 9 6xd1 5xe5 with advantage to Black due to his healthy kingside pawn majority, as in Bronstein’s great win (Game 5).

7...f5

A common Alekhine theme: the b1-knight is forced to a3, where it occupies a poor square, solely defensive in nature – and simply by being there, self-blocks the a-pawn which is unable to drive the attacking black knight out of White’s territory.

8 a3 e6

Black’s huge lead in development tells us White is not long for this world.

On the other hand, the text just loses a pawn for nothing.

11...xd5 12 cxd5 7xd5

A 2500+ GM has just lost a clear pawn, with White, in twelve moves. One has to ask again: would this happen in any other opening?

From this point to the end, Tal offers a fine example of endgame technique, which is quite instructive – but he certainly didn’t have to work very hard in the opening!

13 c4 7b6 14 b5+ 4d7 15 0-0 5xb5 16 5xb5 a6 17 4c3 h6 18 4e4 7e7 19 b3 0-0 20 4a3 4b4 21 5xb4 cxb4 22 4ad1 4ad8 23 4d6 4d7 24 4d4 7c8!!

It’s clear now that White’s centre pawns have been lured forward to their doom.

9 4a4+

9 d6 and 9 dx6 both lose to 9...4h4.+

9...4d7 10 4xd7 5xd7 11 4f3

If 11 dx6 5xe5 12 exf7+ 5xf7 and

Fabulous technique! The knight on d6 (White’s only good piece) must be removed, and Tal gets right to it – even though at first sight his move looks impossible as his rook is hanging on d7.

25 4e4

An amazing Tal trick appears if White takes on c8: 25 5xc8 4c5! 26

26
\( \text{d6 f6! (Alekhine undermining works even in the ending) 27} \text{c1 d4+ 28} \text{xd4 fxe5 29} \text{f5 h7! and White has no defence to \ldots g7-g6, winning material.} \\
\text{Also bad is 25} \text{f1 d6 26} \text{exd6} \text{fd8 27} \text{xb4 xd6 28} \text{xd6 xd6 and Black has a clean extra pawn.} \\
25...\text{fd8 26} \text{xd7 xd7 27} \text{c1 a7 28} \text{f2 c6} \\
\text{By virtue of his great 24th, Tal has eliminated any White counterplay and now proceeds gradually to realize the extra pawn – in patient Petrosian style!} \\
29 \text{c5 xc5+ 30} \text{xc5 f8 31 e3 e7 32 e4 e6 33 h4 g6 34 c2 d5 35 f2 a5 36 g4 xe5} \\
\text{Another pawn falls.} \\
37 \text{d4+ e7 38 g5 hgx5 39 hgx5 d7 40} \text{f3 c5+ 41 e3 e6 42 g2 c5 43 e4 f5 44 g4 a5 45 e3 b5 46} \\
\text{g2 c5 47 e4 f5 48 g4 d6 49} \text{g2 a4 50 d2+ e7 51 g2 c5 52} \text{e5 c3 53 g4 axb6 54 axb6 cxb6} \\
\text{And another...} \\
55 \text{d5 b1 56 c6+ f8 57 cxb4} \\
\text{xg51 0-1} \\
\text{Three!} \\
\text{Most of the game consisted of the technical exploitation of a material advantage and was quite instructive in that regard. About the opening, one can only marvel at the appalling junk that is thrown at Alekhine’s Defence!} \\
\text{Game 8} \\
\text{J.Fernandez-T.V.Petrosian} \\
\text{Las Palmas 1980} \\
1 \text{e4 f6 2 e5 d5 3 d4 d6 4} \text{f3} \\
\text{White plays strongly in the opening (for a changel).} \\
4...g4 \\
\text{Petrosian follows Euwe, but I recommend Carlsen’s} 4...\text{dx}5. \\
5 \text{e2} \text{e6 0-0 e7 7 c4 b6 8 h3 h5 9 c3 0-0 10} \text{e3 d5} \\
\text{11 cxd5} \\
\text{This gives White some advantage,} \\
\text{but the space-grabbing 11 c5 is the critical move: after 11...x} \text{f3 12 gxf3} \\
\text{Black has scored terribly in recent years. Here’s a real debacle (and I’ll show a similar one later in Game 11):}
12...c6 13 f4 c6 14 b4 a6 15 b1 b8 16 d3 f6 17 h2 e8 18 g1 f5 19 a4 b6 20 b3 h8 21 b5 bxc5 22 dxc5 d7 23 xd5 exd5 24 xd5 a7 25 b6 xc5 26 bxa7 xd3 27 xd3 xa4 28 d4 ac8 29 b7 b4 30 c4 1-0 K. Van der Weide-J. Ritscher, Hamburg 2007.

11...exd5 12 e1

It might be a mistake to exchange the light-squared bishops, as it's hard to mobilize the kingside pawns later without the bishop's support. I would prefer the very sharp 12 g4!? g6 13 e1 f5 14 d3 c6 15 f4 d7 16 h2 a6 17 xg6 hgx6 18 gxf5 gxf5 19 xa6 bxa6 20 g1 f4 when White broke through with the spectacular 21 xg7+!! xg7 22 wh5 f5 23 g1+ g5 24 xg5+ xg5 25 xg5+ h7 26 xf4 and finally won this still complicated ending in A. Ornstein-L. Alburt, Reykjavik 1984. I really don't recommend 4...g4 for Black at all!

12...xe2 13 xe2 c6 14 f4 f5

About all you can say for Black's game is it's not quite as bad as it looks, and Fritz's initial "decisive advantage for White" evaluation appears over-optimistic. Despite the space and big protected passed pawn, Black has the better bishop, and exchanging it would ease Black's cramp.

15 d3 d7 16 ad1

White can put Black under serious pressure with 16 b3 d8 17 c5, though I imagine Petrosian would just dig in with 17...c8 and wait.

16...d8 17 h2 c6 18 g4 e6

Petrosian may have been happy here, as his knight has reached this ideal blockading square; the rest of us might still feel a little worried!

19 g2 g6 20 e2 g7 21 b3 ad8 22 d2 a8 23 b4 xb4 24 xb4 c7 25 d3 c6

26 g5?!

Strangely enough, the h5-square turns out to be important ...for Black! White has rid himself of the bad bishop but eased Black's cramp, and there may be no advantage to White any more.

Instead, he can keep things under control with 26 g3 b6 27 c1 c8 28
b4 a8 29 e1, but I don’t see any way forward for White.

26...f7

Over the next several moves, White seems completely to forget that Black’s blockading knight also attacks (Nimzowitsch’s active blockader!) the white pawns at d4 and f4. Fernandez keeps trying to attack himself (not realizing that White no longer has an attack) – then suddenly realizes he is losing a pawn for nothing!

27 f2 h8 28 h4

28 e3 h6 29 gxh6 xhx6 30 f3 would be equal, but instead White sends his queen off on an adventure with no good end.

28...e7 29 h6 dg8 30 g1

If the queen tries to get back in the game with 30 h4, Black takes over the advantage with the break 30...h6!.

30...e8 31 f3 h5 32 h4 f8!

36 xex6+ e6 37 e3 c8 38 d4 d8 39 c1 b8

Petrosian walks to the queenside with his king...

40 cd1 d7 41 f1 b6!

...and then attacks on that side! White has no defence.

42 g3 xg3 43 xg3 c5 44 bxc5 bxc5 45 d2 c4 0-1

I would never want to defend that opening position in my life, but that never bothered the Iron Tiger! I do appreciate the lesson in the art of defence and the well-timed counter-attack!

One notices that, objectively, both Euwe and Petrosian, who followed old main lines with 4...g4, soon found themselves in worse positions. The Modern must be respected!

Only Petrosian could win a game in this way: Black has completely consolidated and now the white f- or d-pawn must drop.

33 b4 d8 34 g2 xd4 35 c5 e6

Game 9
R. Nezhmetdinov - B. Spassky
USSR Championship, Tbilisi 1959

1 e4 e6 2 e5 d5 3 c3

It’s pretty clear even from our small sample that 3 d4 d6 4 f3 gives White real chances for an advantage, and Black must play very well against this critical line. On the other hand, the move 3 c3 and other assorted second-rate lines give White absolutely nothing or less, as the present game proves once again.

3...xc3 4 dxc3 c6 5 f3 d6
Alekhine Alert!

6 \textit{d}c4

6 \textit{b}5 is better, though Korchnoi handles it smoothly enough: 6...\textit{d}7 7 \textit{e}2 \textit{xe}5 8 \textit{xe}5 \textit{dx}e5 9 \textit{xe}5 f6 (the key set-up in this variation: Black establishes himself in the centre) 10 \textit{wh}5+ \textit{g}6 11 \textit{we}2 e5 12 \textit{e}3 \textit{d}6 13 0-0-0 \textit{b}6 14 f4 0-0 15 fxe5 \textit{xb}5 16 \textit{xb}5 fxe5 17 \textit{h}6 \textit{f}7 18 \textit{d}5 \textit{we}8 19 h4 \textit{d}8 20 h5 e4! (one should always remember that the Alekhine is a counter-attacking system, not really a defence – Korchnoi now strikes back with his centre pawn, and includes the trap 21 \textit{h}xg6? \textit{xf}4+ 22 \textit{xf}4 \textit{xd}5 23 gxf7+ \textit{xf}7 and wins) 21 \textit{e}3 c6 22 \textit{g}5 \textit{f}5 23 \textit{g}4 \textit{c}5 24 \textit{xc}5 \textit{xd}1+ 25 \textit{xd}1 \textit{bx}c5 26 \textit{hx}g6 \textit{h}xg6 27 \textit{wh}4 e3! (Black ignores the threat of \textit{d}8 as his own attack is now quicker – of course 28 \textit{d}8 now fails to 28...\textit{xf}1+) 28 \textit{wd}8 \textit{xd}8 29 \textit{xd}8+ \textit{f}7 30 \textit{d}1 \textit{f}2 31 \textit{g}4 \textit{f}6 32 \textit{d}3 \textit{d}2+!! (White’s doubled pawns – the legacy of the unfortunate 3 \textit{oc}3 – are fatal in the pawn ending, as White is too slow in making a passed pawn) 33 \textit{xd}2 exd2 34 \textit{c}4 \textit{g}5 35 c3 \textit{xg}4 36 b4 \textit{f}3 37 \textit{xd}2 \textit{e}4 38 a3 \textit{xb}4 39 \textit{ax}b4 (39 \textit{cxd}4 finally undoubles, but is too late in view of 39...\textit{d}4 winning) 39...\textit{g}5 40 \textit{e}2 g4 41 c5 \textit{d}5 42 \textit{d}3 g3 0-1 P.Markland-V.Korchnoi, Bath 1973. Black wins after 43 \textit{c}4+ \textit{e}5 44 \textit{e}3 g2 45 \textit{f}2 \textit{d}4 46 b5 \textit{xc}5 47 \textit{xg}2 (or 47 \textit{bx}c6 \textit{xc}6 48 \textit{xg}2 a5 and the white king is out of the square) 47...\textit{xb}5 48 \textit{cxb}5 \textit{xb}5 49 \textit{f}2 \textit{b}4 50 \textit{e}2 \textit{c}3 51 \textit{d}1 \textit{b}2 52 \textit{d}2 a5 and the white king is shut out.

6...\textit{dxe}5 7 \textit{wd}8+ \textit{xd}8 8 \textit{xe}5 f6! 9 \textit{d}3 e5

After only nine moves one can already evaluate the position in Black’s favour: White has no compensation for the doubled pawns, while Black has all the advantages of the Exchange Ruy without giving up the bishop pair.

Note that, in the previous game, Petrosian had to defend for about thirty moves before he could claim any advantage.

10 0-0 \textit{e}6 11 \textit{b}3 \textit{d}6 12 \textit{e}1

White gets nowhere with 12 \textit{f}4 e4 13 \textit{e}1 f5 14 \textit{e}5 \textit{xb}3 15 \textit{axb}3 \textit{xe}5

30
16 fxe5 \textit{c}6 17 f4 e7 18 g4 g6 19 gxf5 gxf5 20 f2 e6 21 g1 h8 22 b4 a6 as the e-pawn will drop.

12...g5 13 e3 f7 14 f3 c6 15 f2 hd8 16 e4 e7 17 c4

Rather than blocking this bishop, White should exchange it and hope to draw: 17 xxe6+ xxe6 18 ad1 when White may be somewhat worse but nothing terrible is apparent.

Nehmedinov probably thought that 18 c5 was a strong threat, but Spassky has a surprise for him!

17...f5!!

A startling pawn sacrifice: Spassky gives up a pawn to retain both his bishops and take over the initiative.

18 xg5 e7

No exchange! Boris isn’t even thinking of 18...fxg5?! 19 g5+ f6 20 e6 e6 21 c5+, when White recovers his pawn with advantage due to his (now) strong bishop and Black’s broken pawns.

19 d2 a5

Black is threatening on all fronts; e.g. 20 c5 xb3 21 cxb3 xc5+ 22 xc5 xd2 with a typical seventh rank advantage.

20 a4 d4 21 c3 c5

A monster knight...

22 xd4

...which White exchanges, but now Black has his (carefully preserved) two bishops.

22...cxd4 23 c5

Or 23 f4 f5 24 g5+ xg5 25 fxg5 e4 and Black has a clear advantage in the centre; in none of these variations is White’s extra doubled pawn felt.

23...ac8 24 f4 xb3 25 cxb3 xc5

White has finally exchanged the bad bishop on b3, but now Black recovers his pawn while retaining his positional advantage – White has a new set of doubled pawns on the b-file, and Black’s central passed pawns are too strong.

26 fxe5 fxe5 27 f1+ e6 28 f3 d3+ 29 f1 d4 30 g5+

Taking the bishop instead doesn’t make any difference: the passed pawns are overwhelming.

30...d5 31 d1 h6 32 h3 e4 33 f5+
Alekhine Alert!

$e6$ $34$ $g4$ $d6$ $35$ $f2$ $d5$ $36$ $f4+$ $xf4$ $37$ $xf4$ $c2+$ $38$ $g3$ $e5$ $39$ $h4$
$g2+$ $40$ $xg2$ $xf4$ $0-1$

Once again a weak line is played vs. the Alekhine’s Defence; once again Black is better before move 10.

Game 10
D.Sattles-R.J.Fischer
Palma de Mallorca
Interzonal 1970

1 $e4$ $f6$

While Fischer’s dramatic win and draw with Alekhine’s Defence against Spassky in their World Championship match are known to all, this less famous win against the Canadian GM Duncan Sattles is an extremely instructive and powerful game:

2 $e5$ $d5$ 3 $d4$ $d6$ 4 $c4$ $b6$ 5 $exd6$

The Exchange Variation (see Chapter Five) is often a sign of White’s pacifist intentions, but not here. Fischer had played Alekhine’s Defence before in the tournament, and so Sattles burned the midnight oil and had come up with a new (for the time) attacking idea.

5...$cxd6$

I would never play this move now, in view of the Voronezh Variation (see Game 38), but at the time there were not 33 moves of “theory” to wade through!

My recommendation is Larsen’s favourite 5...$exd6$, which I will show gives Black rather easy equality and good chances to play for a win.

6 $e3$ $g6$ 7 $d5$

This sets in motion Sattles’ not so subtle plan: he wants to play $d4$, exchange Black’s fianchettoed bishop, and then attack the black king, which will presumably be an easy target in view of weak dark squares and no defending minor piece. However, things don’t work out quite as planned... We all know that 7 $c3$ $g7$ 8 $c1$ 0-0 9 $b3$, the Voronezh Variation, is the dangerous line now – according to present day theory, all Black can hope for (with perfect memorization) is to grovel his way to a draw.

7...$g7$ 8 $d4$ $xd4$ 9 $wxd4$ 0-0 10 $c3$

White plans a straightforward caveman attack with $h4$-$h5$, and probably 0-0-0 at some point. This could give White an easy victory – but now Fischer strikes back hard in the centre, and “easy” flies out the window.

10...$e5$!
A Steinitzian counterblow!

11 \( \textcolor{red}{\text{Nd}} \text{d}2 \)

If 11 \( \textcolor{red}{\text{dxe}}6 \) Black can sacrifice a pawn with 11...\( \textcolor{red}{\text{Nc}}6! \); e.g. 12 \( \textcolor{red}{\text{exf}}7+ \textcolor{red}{\text{Kxf}}7 \) 13 \( \textcolor{red}{\text{We}}3 \textcolor{red}{\text{e}}7 14 \textcolor{red}{\text{e}}4 \textcolor{red}{\text{d}}5 15 \textcolor{red}{\text{cxd}}5 \textcolor{red}{\text{f}}5 16 \textcolor{red}{\text{f}}3 \textcolor{red}{\text{xd}}5 17 \textcolor{red}{\text{c}}4 \textcolor{red}{\text{cb}}4 \) and Black has a tremendous attack for the pawn, while the white king is still stuck in the centre.

11...\( \textcolor{red}{\text{f}}5 \) 12 \( \textcolor{red}{\text{f}}3 \)

White should consistently go for 12 \( \textcolor{red}{\text{h}}4 \) (recommended by Wade and Blackstock in their excellent tournament book – I wish this chess classic would be reprinted!) as White needs to get his share of play right away; e.g. 12...\( \textcolor{red}{\text{f}}4 \) 13 \( \textcolor{red}{\text{h}}5 \textcolor{red}{\text{f}}5 \) with a double-edged position.

12...\( \textcolor{red}{\text{b}}d7 \) 13 0-0-0 \( \textcolor{red}{\text{Wf}}6 \) 14 \( \textcolor{red}{\text{Wh}}6 \textcolor{red}{\text{We}}7 15 \textcolor{red}{\text{Ne}}1 \textcolor{red}{\text{e}}4 16 \textcolor{red}{\text{d}}2?! \)

16 \( \textcolor{red}{\text{h}}4 \), as given again by Wade and Blackstock, is still necessary. The white knight was not threatened; the text is slow and lets Black take over the play.

16...\( \textcolor{red}{\text{e}}5 \) 17 \( \textcolor{red}{\text{h}}3 \textcolor{red}{\text{bd}}7 18 \textcolor{red}{\text{We}}3 \)

If 18 \( \textcolor{red}{\text{g}}4 \) \( \textcolor{red}{\text{c}}5! \) (not 18...\( \textcolor{red}{\text{fxg}}4? \) 19 \( \textcolor{red}{\text{cxe}}4 \) 19 \( \textcolor{red}{\text{gxf}}5 \textcolor{red}{\text{xf}}5 \) is much better for Black, as White's \( \textcolor{red}{\text{d}}3 \)-square is collaps-

ing, while the black king is perfectly safe.

18...\( \textcolor{red}{\text{Wh}}4 19 \textcolor{red}{\text{g}}3 \)

19 \( \textcolor{red}{\text{f}}4 \textcolor{red}{\text{exf}}3 20 \textcolor{red}{\text{xf}}3 \textcolor{red}{\text{xf}}3 21 \textcolor{red}{\text{gxf}}3 \textcolor{red}{\text{f}}6 22 \textcolor{red}{\text{d}}3 \textcolor{red}{\text{e}}8 23 \textcolor{red}{\text{wd}}2 \textcolor{red}{\text{d}}7 \) is somewhat better for Black, who can play on the c-file against the king, and also has pressure against White's split pawns on the kingside.

19...\( \textcolor{red}{\text{Wf}}6 20 \textcolor{red}{\text{b}}1 \textcolor{red}{\text{c}}5 21 \textcolor{red}{\text{f}}4 \textcolor{red}{\text{exf}}3 22 \textcolor{red}{\text{xf}}3 \textcolor{red}{\text{f}}4! 23 \textcolor{red}{\text{gxf}}4 \textcolor{red}{\text{xf}}3 24 \textcolor{red}{\text{xf}}3 \textcolor{red}{\text{Wh}}4! \)

"Fischer disdains the recovery of the pawn before he is fully mobilized" is a great Wade and Blackstock line.

25 \( \textcolor{red}{\text{e}}2 \textcolor{red}{\text{f}}5+ 26 \textcolor{red}{\text{a}}1 \textcolor{red}{\text{ae}}8 27 \textcolor{red}{\text{c}}1 \textcolor{red}{\text{e}}4! \)

White is left with the worse minor piece (the bishop is limited by his own pawns), while the black rooks run all over his position.

28 \( \textcolor{red}{\text{xe}}4 \textcolor{red}{\text{xe}}4 29 \textcolor{red}{\text{h}}2 \textcolor{red}{\text{xf}}4 \)

Fully mobilized! Black gets the pawn back with a dominating position.

30 \( \textcolor{red}{\text{c}}3 \textcolor{red}{\text{e}}7 31 \textcolor{red}{\text{f}}1 \textcolor{red}{\text{e}}3 32 \textcolor{red}{\text{d}}2 \textcolor{red}{\text{ef}}3 \)

33 \( \textcolor{red}{\text{e}}2 \textcolor{red}{\text{f}}6 34 \textcolor{red}{\text{g}}2 \textcolor{red}{\text{f}}2 35 \textcolor{red}{\text{ce}}1 \textcolor{red}{\text{xe}}2 \)

36 \( \textcolor{red}{\text{xe}}2 \textcolor{red}{\text{xc}}4 \)

Black's positional superiority has led logically to the gain of a clear pawn.
37 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{W}}e3} \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{W}}e5} \\
Black forces a favourable exchange of queens, as 38 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{W}}xe5??} allows 38...\textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{R}}c1} mate. \\
38 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{R}}b1} \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{W}}xe3} 39 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{R}}xe3} \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{R}}f4} 40 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{R}}f3} h5 \\
41 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{R}}c2} \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{R}}f7} 42 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{R}}d2} \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{B}}b4} 43 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{R}}c3} \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{R}}h4} 44 \\
\textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{B}}d7} 45 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{R}}e2} \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{R}}f6} 46 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{B}}f3} \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{R}}g7} 47 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{D}}d3} \\
g5 48 a3 g4 \\

A no-nonsense winning method: Black just makes a passed pawn and finishes the game cleanly. \\
49 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{R}}f1} \\
Or 49 hxg4 hxg4 50 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{Q}}d4} \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{Q}}h3} 51 \\
\textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{B}}xh3} gxh3 52 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{Q}}f3} h2 53 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{Q}}e3} \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{Q}}g4+} 54 \\
\textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{Q}}e2} \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{Q}}f6} 55 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{Q}}f1} \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{Q}}e5} 56 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{Q}}g2} \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{Q}}e3+} 57 \\
\textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{B}}xh2} \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{R}}c2} and Black will come out with two extra pawns – note the help-lessness of the white bishop here. \\
49...\textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{B}}e4+} 50 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{Q}}c2} \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{R}}f2} 51 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{Q}}e3} gxh3 52 \\
\textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{Q}}e7+} \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{R}}f8} 0-1 \\
A classic Fischer win. \\

After Fischer, Karpov tried the Alekhine a couple of times, but it didn’t suit his style and he soon gave it up. Then the scientific Kasparov, Kramnik and Anand (like the scientific Botvinnik) have not tried a single Alekhine among them. \\
But I have high hopes for a World Championship match Alekhine’s Defence when we see Magnus challenge for the title! \\
From our Alekhine Repertoire point of view, we can see from these world champion games that the Modern Line (1 e4 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{Q}}f6} 2 e5 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{Q}}d5} 3 d4 d6 4 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{Q}}f3}) is really going to challenge us, while “everything else” will not be so difficult. We might even go all Tal on our opponents and win right in the opening! \\
But before that... \\
I have devoted the next three chapters of this book to the critical Modern Variation. Pay attention!
Chapter Two

Modern Variation I:
The White Pawn Wedge

Our Hero: Vladimir Bagirov

When White plays the Modern Variation (1 e4 e5 2 d4 exd4 3 d5 e7 d6 4 e5) one of his goals is to maintain a kingside space advantage due to his pawn wedge at e5. This strong pawn interferes with Black’s kingside defences (imagine if Black castles kingside, he would not be able to bring a defensive knight to f6) and may prove to be a pivotal factor as White prepares to attack Black’s king. Furthermore, said pawn may move forward at any moment, often as an obstructive sac on e6, and this can be extremely dangerous.

I recommend that Black eliminate this pawn wedge as soon as possible: after the above moves, Black can and should play the immediate 4...dxe5, when White usually replies 5 Oxe5 and the pawn wedge is gone. But what if White takes back with the pawn? Four of my five Alekhine books don’t mention this natural move at all; Cox alone at least mentions it – then dismisses it in one sentence.

But this line is extremely important. If White can capture successfully with the pawn, then the Kengis and Carlsen Variations are done for! So this chapter is devoted to that critical recapture – but before we get there, let’s take a look at something non-critical: yes, I now introduce a new feature that will surface occasionally throughout this book.

Lines I Don’t Like
In this case it’s everything except 4...dxe5 – let’s take a quick look without wasting too much time.
Game 11
N.Short-L.Alburt
Foxborough
(3rd matchgame) 1985

1 e4 d6 2 e5 d5 3 d4 d6 4 f3 g4

This used to be the main line here, but as Euwe and Petrosian found out (Games 4 and 8), Black’s game is by no means easy after this bishop development. White keeps his strong centre pawn and his pressure lasts well into the middlegame.

I don’t like any move that doesn’t address the central wedge immediately – here are a few other examples:

a) 4...c6 (after this White gets a development tempo, defends his queen and prepares to castle, all while maintaining that pawn wedge) 5 e2 g4 6 0-0 xf3 7 xf3 dxe5 8 dxe5 e6 (one can reach this position via the main game order, i.e. 4...g4 5 e2 c6 etc) 9 d2 (this knight manoeuvre to c4 was recommended by Alekhine himself in the Nottingham 1936 tournament book, where Flohr introduced this variation against Botvinnik) 9...d7 10 e1 and White has the strong point at e5 plus the two bishops. Fritz says plus over equals, but I’d give White an even bigger edge – just watch what Anand does to his luckless foe in the next note!

a1) 10...e7 11 g3 (the World Champion first sets up, then) 11...c7 12 e2 0-0 13 g2 f8 14 f3 a5 15 h4 (attacks, and) 15...a4 16 a3 b5 17 e4 b4 18 g5 f8 19 axb4 xb4 20 f1 d4 21 e2 h6 22 xf7! (demolishes!) 22... xf7 23 c3 d5 24 e4 a6 25 xa4 g6 26 xa6 xe5 27 e4 d3? 28 xd3 xa1 29 xe6+ 1-0 V.Anand-J.Fernandez Garcia, Santurtzi 2003 – yes, that was a GM who couldn’t make it to move 30!

a2) 10...c7 11 c4 d7b6 12 e2 xc4 13 xc4 0-0 14 a3 h6 15 b4 g5 16 g3 a7 17 b2 d7 18 e4 h5 19 a1 d1 20 a2 e7 21 d6 f5 22 xd7 xd7 23 a4 (the strong e-pawn shuts off Black’s counterplay, while White attacks on the queenside; Black
now hastens his demise by pawn hunting) 23...\texttt{W}d5 24 \texttt{W}e2 \texttt{W}a2 25 \texttt{N}c3 \texttt{W}a3 26 \texttt{W}c4 \texttt{W}xa4 27 \texttt{N}a1 \texttt{W}xc2 28 \texttt{N}xc6! (with bishops this strong, you only need one!) 28...\texttt{b}xc6 29 \texttt{W}xc6+ \texttt{B}b8 30 \texttt{W}b5+ \texttt{B}c8 (or 30...\texttt{B}a8 31 \texttt{W}d7 and mates) 31 \texttt{W}c5+ \texttt{B}d8 32 \texttt{b}5! – now it’s mate or the queen goes, so 1-0 A.Ivanov-C.Lakdawala, Los Angeles 2000. I can’t see any fun in playing a position like this, where the board is cut in two by the white wedge at e5, and Black can only manoeuvre weakly on the wings.

In the same match from which the main game is taken, Alburt also tried the variation named for him – but even though this worked for Fischer once, and Bronstein in Game 5, Alburt had a lot of trouble against the well-prepared Short! Again we see White use the wedge to aid in direct attack – in the first game below, that attack comes very quickly!

b) 4...g6 5 \texttt{N}c4 \texttt{B}b6 6 \texttt{N}b3 \texttt{G}g7 and now:

(b1) 7 \texttt{B}g5 e6 8 \texttt{Wh}f3 \texttt{W}e7 9 \texttt{B}e4 dxe5 10 \texttt{B}g5 \texttt{B}b4+ 11 c3 \texttt{W}a5 12 \texttt{B}f6+

(there are those who may want to defend this position, but I am not among them) 12...\texttt{B}f8 13 d5 e4 14 \texttt{W}g3 \texttt{B}d7 15 \texttt{B}xd7+ \texttt{B}xd7 16 dxe6 \texttt{B}c5 17 e7+ \texttt{B}e8 18 0-0 h6 19 \texttt{B}f4 \texttt{B}xb3 20 \texttt{B}xc7! (now if 20...\texttt{B}a6 21 axb3 \texttt{W}xa1 22 \texttt{B}a3 and White has a powerful attack for just one rook, so Alburt tries to make a draw in the ending, but...) 20...\texttt{W}g5 21 axb3 \texttt{W}xg3 22 hxg3 \texttt{B}xe7 23 \texttt{B}d2 f5 24 \texttt{B}b6 a6 25 \texttt{B}c4 \texttt{B}e6 26 \texttt{B}c5+ \texttt{B}f7 27 \texttt{B}d6+ \texttt{B}g8 28 b4 \texttt{B}b8 29 \texttt{B}a7 \texttt{B}a8 30 \texttt{B}b6 \texttt{B}e5 31 \texttt{B}fd1 \texttt{B}h7 32 \texttt{B}a5 \texttt{B}f6 33 \texttt{B}d4 \texttt{B}xd4 34 \texttt{B}xd4 \texttt{B}b8 35 \texttt{B}e5 \texttt{B}e7 36 g4! \texttt{B}f8 37 gxh5 \texttt{B}xf5 38 \texttt{B}xe7 \texttt{B}xe7 39 \texttt{B}xe4 (...does not succeed: a pawn drops and that myth about rook endings is disproved again!) 39...\texttt{B}xe4 40 \texttt{B}xe4+ \texttt{B}d6 41 f3 \texttt{B}f8 42 \texttt{B}f2 h5 43 \texttt{B}d4+ \texttt{B}e6 44 c4 \texttt{B}c8 45 \texttt{B}e3 \texttt{B}e5 46 \texttt{B}b3 \texttt{B}c6 47 \texttt{B}d5+ \texttt{B}f6 48 c5 g5 49 \texttt{B}d7 \texttt{B}e6+ 50 \texttt{B}d3 \texttt{B}e7 51 \texttt{B}xe7 \texttt{B}xe7 52 \texttt{B}c4 \texttt{B}e6 53 \texttt{B}b5 a5 54 \texttt{B}b6 1-0 N.Short-L.Alburt, Foxborough (1st matchgame) 1985.

Two more wins from the same match saw Short throwing in...

b2) 7 a4 d5 8 a5 \texttt{B}c4 9 \texttt{B}bd2 and:
b21) 9...b5 10 axb6 axb6 11 0-0 0-0
12 a1 c6 13 c3 b5 14 e6! (the second advantage of the strong e-pawn is seen here: the powerful advance to e6 – often good as a sacrifice, this time it doesn’t even lose a pawn, and Black is essentially finished right here, on move 14, though he succeeds in prolonging the game for some time) 14...fxe6 15
g5 h5 16 xex6 w6 17 x7 f6 18
gx7 xg7 19 1f3 c6 20 g5 g7 21
g4 g4 22 x3 x7 23 g5 g6 24
e5 xex5 25 dx5 f4 26 xh7 a4
27 e6 6d6 28 1g5 xxc2 29 xxc2 xg7
30 f7 wc5 31 g3 f5 32 e5 g6 33
1d2 1g8 34 f1 1f8 35 b4 1c6 36 w6
8xf7 37 exf7+ xf7 38 h5 w6 39
h4 e5 40 g4 g7 41 x1 d7 42
w5 x3 43 x2 x6+ 44 x2 1f7 45
wx6+ x7 46 x8+ x7 47 x7 xg7
48 wx7+ x6 49 x6 1-0 N.Short-
Langburt, Foxborough (7th matchgame) 1985.

b22) 9...xd2 (this was also ineffectivel) 10 axd2 0-0 11 0-0 c5 12 dx5
c6 13 c3 e6 14 a1 w7 15 a4
d8 16 c3 c7 17 c2 x25 (White has maintained the wedge while Black is driven to the wings – now White wins with a kingside attack reminiscent of Ivanov-Lakdawala above; note the powerful dark-squared bishop in both games) 18 h4! c6 19 b4 d7 20
a4 e7 21 h5 x4 22 x4 gxh5 23
1d1 x6 24 x2 w7 25 x3 a6 26 c6
bxc6 27 c5 w7 28 w5 x5 29
e5 f6 30 x5 fx5 31 x5 x5 32
w5 g7 33 x6+ f7 34 xc6

w6 35 c7 ac8 36 e5 h6 37 d4
e8 38 x5+ e6 39 w7 x6 40
1d5+ x8 41 b5! (the same winning move as Ivanov played – Black can no longer defend) 41...c7 42 1d6+ 1-0
N.Short-L.Alburt, Foxborough (7th matchgame) 1985.

As an attacking player, I love all the above positions ...for White that is! I can’t recommend any of them for Black.

Now back to our main game, but is it a main line? It was, but let’s keep it in the past tense!

5 e2 e6

5...c6 is the main alternative, as seen via 4...c6 5 e2 g4 above.

6 0-0 1d7 7 c4 x6 8 c3 0-0 9 e3 d5
10 c5!

We saw a similar position in Game 8 (with h2-h3 and ...h5 thrown in) where White played c4xd5 here. That was fine, but the cramping text is even stronger.

10...x3 11 x3 c8 12 f4

It appears that White is playing regular chess, while Black has waited.
until now to set up "Fischer random"! White scores 69% from this position; the highest rated champion of this line, our stubborn friend Lev Alberut, has scored five losses to one win (and that against someone rated two hundred points below him) and in general I think Black’s game is just plain bad! The sable forces have no space and no counterplay, while White has the big wedge in the centre and the g-file to attack down. Fritz is at plus 1.15 already (more than a pawn advantage in mechanical terms), and while I don’t always believe the machine, in this case the evidence is overwhelming: Black has a terrible game - avoid at all costs!

12...c6 13 b4 a6 14 b1 f6 15 d3 We8 16 wg4 f5 17 wh3 a5 18 b5 b4 19 e2 c2 20 rh1 g6 21 g1

White’s game is easy to play; Black’s is insanely difficult.

21...f7 22 f3 f8 23 b2 a3 24 c1 a7 25 e2 wd7 26 d1 d8 27 wf1 h6 28 b3 c4 29 xc4 dxc4 30 wxc4

Black was never able to find an out-

post for either of his wandering knights, and now just loses a pawn for nothing.

30...c6 31 b6 c8 32 a3 w7 33 w2

Allowing Black to prolong the game. White could deny any counterplay as follows: 33 g2! g7 (or 33...g5 34 e2 and Black’s kingside play is over) 34 e2 g5 35 fxg5 xg5 36 xg5 xg5+ 37 g3 and wins.

33 g7 34 xa5 wh4 35 f3 g5 36 a8 gx4 37 e2 g4 38 a4 f7 39 a5 d6 40 xd8 e4

Black has conjured up some amazing counterplay, but it’s still not enough against White’s cramping centre and extra queenside pawn.

41 f1 wxd8 42 c3 g5 43 d3 f3 44 xg5 xg5 45 xf3 xd4 46 a6 bxa6 47 h3 h4 48 b7 xe5 49 b1 b8 50 g3 f4 51 f3

White can also win with 51 wxg5 xh3+ 52 g1 xc3 53 b4 e5 54 f5+ g7 55 c8 etc.

51 d8 52 e4 c7 53 g1 h6 54 g5+ e7 55 xc6 e5 56 d1 g8 57 d7+ f6 58 f7+!

39
This fine blow ends Alburt’s heroic resistance, as 58...\textit{xg5} loses to 59 \textit{g}2+. 
\textit{58...xf7 59 xf7 xf7 60 g2 1-0}
One shouldn’t have to suffer so much!

Now on to my recommendation, 4...dxe5, which is critical, Carlsen approved, and the subject of this and the following two chapters.

\begin{center}
\textbf{Game 12}
\end{center}
\begin{center}
P.Chandler-V.Bagirov
\end{center}
\begin{center}
Giessen 1994
\end{center}

\textbf{1 e4 f6}
The late Latvian Grandmaster Vladimir Bagirov, the hero of this chapter, was a lifelong Alekhine devotee who played more than a hundred high-level tournament games with his favourite defence. Here he demonstrates precisely how Black should handle this position: losing the right to castle isn’t important; immediate counterplay is!

\textbf{2 e5 d5 3 d4 d6 4 f3 dxe5 5 dxe5}

Our friend Mr. Fritz considers this a perfectly plausible recapture; the machine even claims it gives White a slight edge. This natural move has been played by strong GMs like Dautov and Belikov, and you could lose to this line in eight moves (if you’re careless) or thirteen moves (if you’ve studied a little bit). You’ll see both games in the notes below.

And yet this pawn wedge line is the stealth variation, never before analyzed in any Alekhine book! It’s about time, too, as GMs with Black, unprepared, have had a lot of trouble in this line. Alekhine expert Kengis barely drew and Garcia Martinez went down in flames. Once again, I will show these disasters in the notes.

Move order must be precise here: Bagirov will set us on the right path.
\textbf{5...g4!}
The only good move, as the only way to show the dark side of White’s pawn capture is to counter-attack said pawn right away. Yes, White can make the
black king move after this, but that's unimportant: if Black can make the white e-pawn a target in the ending (instead of a tower of strength in the middlegame) then his strategy has succeeded.

Every other move that has been tried has serious drawbacks:

a) 5...g6 (Kengis tries his own system, but it doesn't work here: the idea of his line, as we'll see in the next chapter, is that the fianchettoed dark-squared bishop has an effective diagonal and a soft target in the white knight on e5; here the same bishop will be blocked instantly by a pawn, and worse can happen when Black castles kingside) 6 c4 c6 7 0-0 (White could try 7 c3 hoping for 7...xc3 8 xf7+ winning the queen, but this is unlikely to work against a grandmaster; Black should just defend with 7...e6) 7...g7 8 b3 0-0 9 e1 e6

b) 5...f5 (this time the GM playing Black is not so lucky: he makes this natural move, very common in the Alekhine's -- only to discover two things: one, the move is very bad in this specific position where White has the strong e-pawn and the square d4 for his knight, and two, the White player is...
not about to show mercy!) 6 \( \text{d}4 \text{g}6 \) 7 e6!

(Black’s position is already unpleasant) 7...c6 8 \( \text{d}3 \text{d}6 \) 9 exf7+ (the black pawn structure is shattered) 9...\( \text{xf}7 \) 10 0-0 \( \text{d}7 \) 11 \( \text{e}1 \text{c}5 \) 12 \( \text{a}3 \text{f}6 \) 13 \( \text{c}4! \text{xd}3 \) (if 13...\( \text{xd}4 \) 14 \( \text{d}6+ \) is brutal) 14 \( \text{xd}3 \text{b}4 \) 15 \( \text{c}3 \text{xc}2 \) 16 \( \text{g}5! \) (still trying to divert Black from the d6-square) 16...\( \text{xd}4 \) 17 \( \text{xd}4 \text{xd}4 \) 18 \( \text{d}6+ \text{d}7 \) 19 \( \text{xf}7 \text{g}8 \) 20 \( \text{ad}1 \text{c}5 \) 21 b4 b6 22 bxc5 bxc5 23 \( \text{e}3 \text{e}8 \) 24 \( \text{xd}4 \text{xf}7 \) 25 \( \text{xc}5 \text{e}5 \) 26 \( \text{ad}5! \) and White won the ending in R.Martín del Campo-S.García Martinez, Havana 1990.

c) 5...e6 6 \( \text{d}4! \) (this knight attack can really be a problem for Black – you could even lose in thirteen moves!) 6...\( \text{c}5 \) 7 \( \text{xe}6 \text{d}7? \) (possibly not the best move, but Black’s position is already wrecked) 8 \( \text{b}5! \text{c}6 \) 9 \( \text{xd}5! \text{xd}5 \) 10 \( \text{c}7+ \text{d}8 \) 11 \( \text{xd}5 \text{xe}5 \) 12 \( \text{f}4 \) f6 13 \( \text{bc}3 \) 1-0 E.Cordova-L.Moreno, Lima 2007.

Don’t let that knight get to d4 with attack – pin it! This is one of those lines where the Alekhine player simply has to know that Bagirov’s 5...\( \text{g}4 \) is the only good move.

But even after that, you could still lose in eight moves – see the next note!

6 c4

White decides to “punish” his high-rated opponent by depriving him of the castling privilege – but as it turns out, only White feels the pain.

We’ll see another way to attack the black knight, 6 \( \text{c}4 \), in the next game; and the final three games of the chapter deal with the best and critical 6 h3.

Black should have no problems against the mild 6 \( \text{e}2 \); e.g. 6...e6 (it’s good to block the advanced white e-pawn, though 6...\( \text{c}6 \) is also fine and transposes to Game 62 in Chapter Eight) 7 0-0 (7 c3 is a trick: 7...\( \text{e}7?? \) 8 \( \text{a}4+ \) 1-0 E.Belle-E.Zuiderweg, Groningen 2004, is that embarrassing eight move loss; of course if Black blocks the potential check with 7...\( \text{c}6 \) he’s fine) 7...\( \text{e}7 \) 8 c4 \( \text{b}6 \) 9 \( \text{c}3 \text{xd}1 \) 10 \( \text{xd}1 \text{c}6 \) and Black has already reached an equal ending and eventually drew in

If 6 c3 Black should equalize with the solid 6...e6. Worse is 6...c3 7 wxc3 8 bxc3 when, despite the shattered pawns, White has open lines for attacking purposes.

6...b4 7 wxc8+ dxc8

One sees already that Black’s counter-attack is successful. Far from exploiting the black king, White must attend to the threat on c2, and he has no good way to meet it.

8 c3

Probably best, but this typical situation – attacking black knight on b4 vs. passive defending white knight on a3 – occurs repeatedly in the Alekhine, always to Black’s advantage (recall this same knight relationship in Game 7, where White didn’t make it out of the opening alive). The problem here is that the alternatives are even worse: 8 d4 c5 9 a3 cxd4 10 axb4 c6 and Black forks two pawns, or 8 d1 d7 (exploiting the new pin) 9 e2 c6 10 f4 xf3 11 xf3 dxe5 12 xe5

Black is much better: neither white knight has a forward move and the a1-rook is tied down to defence of a pawn! White tries to regroup, but Bagirov does not let him.

8...e6

The direct 8...xf3 9 gxf3 bxc6 is also good, when White had weak pawns across the board and Black eventually won in K. Forman-P. McKeown, British League 2002.

9 g5 e8

Black is much better: neither white knight has a forward move and the a1-rook is tied down to defence of a pawn! White tries to regroup, but Bagirov does not let him.

18 b1 c3 19 c1 e2 20 e1 d4 21 a3 d3

Both white knights have retreated to the first rank; both black knights have advanced!
\( \text{\textit{Alekhine Alert!}} \)

\[ \text{\textit{Alekhine Alert!}} \]

\[ \text{dxe5 } \text{g4 } 6 \text{c4} \]

White develops and attacks, but Black has a simple answer.

\[ 6...e6 \]

\[ \text{\textit{Game 13}} \]

A. Everett - F. Patuzzo

Switzerland vs. Italy

match 1994

\[ 1 \text{e4 f6 } 2 \text{e5 d5 } 3 \text{f3 d6 } 4 \text{d4 dxe5 } 5 \]

Since 31 bxa5 c4 obviously favours Black, White has to accept a weak pawn at b4.

31 d1 axb4 32 axb4 g6 33 a1

Black also wins a pawn after 33 xd4 xd4 34 b5 c4.

33...xb4 34 a7 d7 35 e1 c6 36 a4 d2 0-1

White wisely resigns, a pawn down without a shred of counterplay.

One sees that “making the black king move” does not work for White. By the end of the game, Black’s king had become a strong attacking piece; meanwhile White’s castled monarch accomplished exactly nothing!

In general, Black should always be equal in this position, with the white e-pawn stopped in its tracks and the light-squared bishop already developed beyond the blocking pawn.

7 c3 b4 8 xd5

A typical “modern” strategy: White takes the pieces off in the opening and plays to draw, even if this means a slight inferiority for him. In this game White succeeds. After the alternative 8 d2 c6 9 xd5 xf3 10 gxf3 (both 10 xf3 xd2+ and 10 xc7+ xc7 11 gxf3 xe5+ are better for Black) 10...exd5 11 b5 Wh4 Black’s energetic play has given him good counterplay.

8...xd5 9 xd5 exd5 10 d2 xf3 11 gxf3 c6 12 0-0-0 d7 13 hg1 g6 14 de1 0-0-0 15 g4 a5 16 b1 c7 17 f4 f5 18 g3 c5 19 f3 e6

Black has consolidated with a slight edge (the eternally fixed doubled pawns), but White has drawing
chances due to reduced material and the passed e-pawn.

20 h4 b6 21 h1 g7 22 c3 d7 23 g2 e6 24 e2 h8 25 g3 h5 26 f1 f7 27 e2 e6 28 c3 c5 29 g3 c8 30 f1 d8 31 h2 e7 32 b1 gd8 33 e2 c6 34 d1 b5 35 e3 a6 36 hh1 a5 37 d2

37...c7

37...b4 was probably the best winning try: Black needs to create a second weakness.

38 a3 cd7 39 f2 d4 40 cxd4 cxd4 41 g3 c5 42 c1 b6 43 d3 c8 44 c1 c4 45 f2 edc7 ½-½

Black has been and still is slightly better, but was unable to convert. It's clear that straightforward attacks against the black knight on d5 are ineffective. The dangerous plan is to attack the Bagirov bishop with 6 h3, and that's the subject of the concluding three games of the chapter.

Game 14
W.Bialas-N.Dietrich
Detmold 1964

1 e4 f6 2 e5 d5 3 d4 d6 4 f3 dxe5 5 dxex5 g4 6 h3

Critical and best.

6...h5

A natural ...mistake! Black loses piece control of e6. For the correct 6...xf3 see the next two games.

7 e6!

A classic obstructive sac that makes Black's game very difficult. One must remember that the e5-e6 advance is a typical attack against the Alekhine.

It is also possible to delay the blow one move: 7 g4 g6 8 e6 f6 and now,
instead of 9 ♗h4 when Black made a draw in T.Sakelsek-S.Collins, Budapest 2005, I think 9 ♗c4 gives White a clear plus as Black is seriously cramped by the wedge at e6.
7...fxe6 8 ♗b5+
8 g4 ♗g6 9 ♗e5 is another annoying possibility for White.
8...c6
If 8...♗c6 one can easily imagine Black ending up with doubled pawns on the c-, e- and g-files (after ♗xc6+ and g2-g4/♗e5/♗xg6).
9 ♗e2 ♗d6 10 0-0 ♗d7 11 ♗g5

White’s attacking position is worth more than a pawn – and what is Black’s buried alive king’s bishop doing?
11...♗g6 12 ♗a3 ♗b6 13 ♗g4 e5 14 ♗e3 e6?

Giving back the pawn is fatal – the material advantage, devalued as it is, is the only compensation Black has for his uncoordinated position. He can try to defend with 14...♗xe3 15 fxe3 ♗xd1 16 ♗axd1 and White still has a bind in the ending, but at least Black should make it past move 20!

15 ♗xe6 ♗xe3 16 fxe3 ♗xd1 17 ♗xd1 ♗d5 18 c4 1-0

Move 20 is unreachable: Black resigns in view of 18...♗xe3 19 ♗c7+ ♗e7 20 ♗d7 mate, or 18...♗xa3 19 cxd5 ♗d6 20 dxc6 ♗e7 21 ♗c7 ♗xc7 22 ♗d7+ ♗e8 23 cxb7 ♗b8 24 ♗xc7 with an easy win.

Don’t allow this sacrifice!

Game 15
T.Yilmaz-C.Horvath
Budapest 1992

1 e4 ♗f6 2 e5 ♗d5 3 d4 d6 4 ♗f3 dxe5 5 dxe5 ♗g4 6 h3 ♗xf3
Correct.
7 ♘xf3 e6
Black prevents any disruptive sacrifices.

After examining the last three games, I think it’s safe to say that this position represents best play by both sides in this pawn wedge variation. White has the two bishops, but the queen is either developed and strong –
or exposed prematurely. White’s e-pawn is either advanced and strong, or overextended and weak! In other words, a double-edged position has arisen. Since this position can arise more or less by force if Black plays our repertoire 4...dxe5, then Black should understand this position well.

8 \( \text{We4} \)

White has tried many moves here, but nothing Black can’t handle:

a) The direct 8 c4 should not be feared, as White can hardly take on b7, and otherwise Black’s knights are activated and d4 is weakened: 8...\( \text{Db4} \) 9 \( \text{We4} \) (if 9 \( \text{Wxb7 Dc6} \) and White has no real defence to the twin threats of ...\( \text{Db8} \) and ...\( \text{Dc2+} \), e.g. 10 \( \text{Db5 Dc2+} \) 11 \( \text{De2 Dd4+} \) forks) 9...\( \text{Dd4} \) (this spotlights the weakness at d4 in spectacular fashion, but the simple 9...\( \text{D8a6} \) with the idea of ...\( \text{Dc5} \) is possibly even stronger) 10 \( \text{Wxd4 Dc2+} \) 11 \( \text{De1 Dxd4} \) 12 \( \text{Cd2} \) (12 \( \text{Df4} \) might keep things in the equals over plus range) 12...\( \text{Cbc6} \) 13 f4 0-0-0 14 \( \text{Dc3 Df5} \) 15 g4 \( \text{Dg3} \) 16 \( \text{Hg1 Dxg1} \) 17 \( \text{Dxf1 Dd3} \) 18 \( \text{De2 Hxh3} \) and Black soon won with his extra pawn in J.Kowallik-A.Barthe, Ruhrgebiet 1997.

b) 8 a3 is played most often, but seems too slow: after 8...\( \text{Dd7} \) Black has active play. We see Mr. Art of Attack himself, Vladimir Vulovic, trade pawn structure successfully for activity, while Petrosian is unable to defend White’s position:

b1) 9 \( \text{Gg3 f6} \) 10 exf6 \( \text{Wxf6} \) 11 \( \text{Gg5} \) \( \text{Wf7} \) 12 \( \text{De2 De7} \) 13 \( \text{Wh5} \) g6 14 \( \text{Wf3} \) \( \text{Df6} \) 15 c4 \( \text{Dc5} \) 16 \( \text{We4 Db6} \) 17 \( \text{Cc3} \) 0-0-0 18 \( \text{De3 Dc6} \) 19 \( \text{Ff3} \) \( \text{Dxc3+} \) 20 bxc3 \( \text{Wf5} \) (White’s two bishops don’t compensate for his shattered pawns)

21 c5 \( \text{Wxe4} \) 22 \( \text{Dxe4 Dd5} \) 23 \( \text{Hh6 Da5} \)

24 \( \text{Cc2 Hhg8} \) 25 0-0 \( \text{Dxc3} \) 26 \( \text{Fe1 Db5} \) 27 \( \text{Aa4} \) 28 \( \text{Cc2 Db5} \) 29 \( \text{Aa4 Dd4} \)

30 \( \text{Dad1 Dab3} \) 31 \( \text{Cd5} \) 32 cxb7+ \( \text{Db8} \) 33 \( \text{Db3} \) e5 34 \( \text{Dxb5 Dxb5} \) 35 \( \text{Dxc5 Dd4} \)

36 \( \text{Dd1 Dd5} \) 37 \( \text{Dxe7 Dee8} \) 38 \( \text{Df6 Dee6} \) 39 \( \text{Dg7} \) \( \text{De7} \) 40 \( \text{Df6 Dee6} \) 41 \( \text{Dg7} \) \( \text{Cc2} \) 42 \( \text{De4} \) \( \text{Dxa3} \) 43 \( \text{Cf3} \) \( \text{Dc5} \) 44 f4 \( \text{Dxb7} \) 45 \( \text{Dxe5} \) a6 46 \( \text{Cc4 Dc6} \) 47 \( \text{Dxc6 Dxc6} \) 48 \( \text{Df2} \) a5 49 g4 a4 50 \( \text{Db4} \) a3 51 \( \text{Da4} \) \( \text{Dd2+} \) 52 \( \text{Dg3 Dd5} \) 53 g5 a2 54 \( \text{Da8} \)
\[ \text{Alekhine Alert!} \]

\[ \text{Eg3+ 55 \text{fg4} \text{a3 56 \text{d8+} \text{d6 0-1 L.Asztalos-V.Vukovic, Debrecen 1925.}} } \]

b2) 9 \text{c4} \text{e7} 10 \text{f4} \text{c6} 11 \text{g3}
\[ \text{d4 12 \text{wc3 c5l (it's not like Petrosian to have a hole in his position like this; Black is already somewhat better) 13 \text{d2} \text{c7 14 \text{f3} \text{xf3+ 15 gxf3 0-0-0 16 \text{d3 e7 17 0-0-0 f5 18 h4 \text{b8 19 c2 c6 20 \text{xd8+ \text{xd8 21 h5 g5 22 hgx6 hxg6 23 \text{hxh8 \text{wxh8 (Black wins a pawn in view of the threat ...g6-g5, and Mikenas makes no mistake in the ending) 24 \text{e3 \text{xe5 25 \text{xe5 \text{xe5 26 f4 \text{xc4 27 \text{b3 b5 28 \text{xc4 bxc4 29 c2 a6 30 c3 f6+ 31 xxc4 xb2 32 xxc5 c7 33 a4 c6 34 f3 c1 35 e7 xf4 36 c5 g5 37 g1 g4 38 fxg4 fxg4 39 d4 c7 40 e4 b6 41 xxb6 xxb6 0-1 T.Petrosian-V.Mikenas, Tbilisi 1944.}} } \text{c7 33 a4 c6 34 f3 c1 35 e7 xf4 36 c5 g5 37 g1 g4 38 fxg4 fxg4 39 d4 c7 40 e4 b6 41 xxb6 xxb6 0-1 T.Petrosian-V.Mikenas, Tbilisi 1944.}} } \]}

\[ \text{c) 8 \text{g3} \text{is best: White defends e5 and attacks g7, trying to pin down Black's bishop - see the next game. 8...\text{d7 9 c4 c5 10 wxe2 b6}} \]

\[ \text{Black's active knights show that White can't keep the two bishops. 11 0-0 \text{xc4 12 \text{xc4 d5}} } \]

And if the queens come off, then the advanced e-pawn has no positive virtue and may become weak.

\[ 13 \text{e2 \text{e4 14 wxe1 0-0-0 15 c3 wxe2 16 \text{xe2 \text{e7}} } \]

\[ \text{Black has no problems at all. 17 \text{f4 d4 18 e3 c4 19 xc5 19 d1 a4 is slightly better for Black. 19...xc5 20 d1 d8 21 xd8+ xd8 22 e4 a5 23 f1 b5 24 e2 a4 25 b1 The natural 25 a3 loses spectacularly to 25...xc3! 26 bxc3 xa3 when the bishop plus passed a-pawn is decisive. 25 h5 26 c3 g5 27 g3 h4 28 a3 hxg3 29 fxg3 d7 30 c2 c1 31 a3} \]
31...c6

31...g6! with the idea of ...h6-g7, targeting the weak e-pawn (it hasn’t been a strong wedge for a long time!), keeps Black’s advantage. Unfortunately, now both players begin to misplay, probably due to time trouble.

32 h4 4d5 33 4f2 4d1+ 34 4g2 4e8 35 4c2 4e3 36 4e2 4c5 37 4c2 4b1 38 4b4 4d7 39 4d2+ 4c7 40 a3 4b6 41 4d3 4e3 42 4e2 4h6 43 4g4 4g6

43...4d1 44 4f2 4d2 45 4f3 4xe2 46 4xe2 4f4 47 4d3 4g3 48 h5 4h4 is equal, but now Black overreaches and should lose.

44 g5 4f8 45 4f2 c5 46 4xf7 c4 47 4f2 4c5 48 h5 4xb2 49 h6

White wins with 49 hxg6! 4d2 50 g7 4d8 51 4e4 4xa3 52 4f6 4c5 (52...4b2 53 4f8 loses more quickly) 53 4d7+ 4c6 54 4f8 a3 55 g8 4a2 56 4f1 and the extra queen is good enough.

49...4d2 50 h7 4d8 51 4e4 4xa3 52 4f6

White can still draw with 52 4f6 4h8 53 4xe6+ 4b7 54 4f6 b4 55 4e7+ 4c6 56 4e8 4xh7 57 4xh7 bxc3 58 4c8+ 4b5 59 4b8+ etc.

52...4h8 53 4g7 b4 54 4xg6 bxc3 55 4d5+ 4a5 56 4xc3 4xh7 57 4xe6 4b2 58 g6 4h5 59 4a2 4xe5

The drama is over and Black is just better again, with his far superior minor piece that defends against White’s passed pawns and aids his own.

60 4d6 a3 61 4f3 4b5 62 4c6 4a4 0-1

The rook and pawn ending after 63 4xc4+ 4b3 64 4g4 4xa2 65 g7 4xg7 66 4xg7 4b3 is an easy win.

Now e5 is defended and g7 is attacked. What should Black do?

8...4d7

The answer is to attack the e-pawn as quickly as possible, using moves like the text, ...c7-c6 and ...4wc7; and the knight manoeuvre ...4e7-f5 comes into consideration, tickling the queen, which is not such a good defender.

Black must get his play going quickly, before White consolidates and sets up an attacking position.

I can’t recommend 8...4c6 which
blocks the ...c7-c6/\wedge c7 idea, and allows White to develop strongly without loss of time: 9 \wedge b5 \wedge db4 10 0-0! (a bold sacrifice; instead the defensive 10 \wedge a4 led to a draw after 10...b5 11 \wedge b3 \wedge d4 12 \wedge a3 \wedge d7 \wedge d5 \wedge e7 J.Helbich-S.Koutsin, Olomouc 1998) 10...\wedge xc2 11 \wedge g5 \wedge e7 12 \wedge xc6+ bxc6 13 \wedge xe7 \wedge xe7 14 \wedge c3 \wedge xa1 15 \wedge xg7 \wedge g8 16 \wedge f6+ \wedge e8 17 \wedge f3 \wedge c2 18 \wedge xc6+ \wedge f8 19 \wedge d1 (White has a dangerous attack – unapproved by my computer, but obviously very difficult for a human to counter) 19...\wedge b8 20 \wedge d7 \wedge g7 21 a3 \wedge e1 22 g3 \wedge g6 23 \wedge b5 \wedge g7 24 \wedge xc7 \wedge xb2 25 \wedge xa8 \wedge e2 26 \wedge e8+ \wedge h6 27 \wedge xf7 \wedge d1 28 \wedge h2 1-0 J.Jackova-R.Pallisier, Millfield 2004.

9 \wedge e2 c6 10 \wedge a3

\textbf{10...\wedge e7}

Black could seize the opportunity for the disorganizing check 10...\wedge a5+!? and now:

a) 11 c3 \wedge xa3 12 bxa3 (not 12 \wedge xg7? \wedge f8 and Black wins) 12...\wedge xc3 13 \wedge d2 \wedge xe2 14 \wedge xg7 \wedge xe5 15 \wedge xe5 \wedge xe5 16 \wedge xe2 \wedge g8 and Black is up a good pawn.

b) 11 \wedge d2 \wedge b4 12 c3 \wedge xa3 13 bxa3 \wedge xa3 14 0-0 0-0-0 with double-edged play. White can only get his pawn back by opening the g-file on his own king, but the board is opening up and the white bishops may become dangerous, regardless of the material balance – all one can say is the position is unclear and double-edged.

\textbf{11 0-0 \wedge f5 12 \wedge f4}

An interesting combination is possible after 12 \wedge c3 \wedge c5 13 \wedge c4 \wedge b6 14 \wedge d1 \wedge d4 15 \wedge f3 \wedge xc4 16 \wedge xc4 \wedge xf2+! 17 \wedge xf2 \wedge h4+ and Black wins a pawn, but White can play 14 \wedge g4 with equality.

\textbf{12...\wedge xa3 13 bxa3 0-0 14 \wedge d3 \wedge a5 15 \wedge b2}

White prepares to meet 10...\wedge c7 with 11 \wedge c4, holding e5 and eyeing d6. 10 0-0 is no problem for Black, as White lacks this option and must expose his king: 10...\wedge c7 11 f4 (weakening but necessary) 11...\wedge e7 12 \wedge d3 (or 12 \wedge d1 \wedge f5 13 \wedge f3 \wedge c5+ 14 \wedge h1 \wedge d4 15 \wedge d3 0-0-0 with sharp counterplay) 12...\wedge c5 and the black knights are very active.
A position typical for this variation (one recalls Vukovic’s fine win, given in the notes to the previous game): White has two bishops for two knights, but shattered pawns – roughly even is a fair assessment.

15...\( \text{Ng7?} \)=!

Undecked! Correct is 15...\( \text{b6!} \) 16 \( \text{ab1} \) (if 16 \( \text{xf5 exf5 17 wxf5 c4} \) 18 \( \text{d4 ad8} \) and Black will recover his pawn with the better game) 16...\( \text{ad8} \) with a sharp game and mutual chances.

16 \( \text{ad1 c5} \) 17 \( \text{hxh7+!} \)

Exploiting the undecked knight to win a pawn, though Black still has drawing chances in view of White’s bad pawns.

17...\( \text{hxh7} \) 18 \( \text{wh4+ g6} \) 19 \( \text{xe7 a4} \)
20 \( \text{a1 c3} \) 21 \( \text{d3} \)

Better is 21 \( \text{xc3 xc3} \) 22 \( \text{xb7} \) which would make it hard for Black to draw.

21...\( \text{e2+} \) 22 \( \text{h2 a4} \) 23 \( \text{b4 xb4} \)
24 \( \text{axb4 a5} \) 25 \( \text{a3} \)

I prefer 25 bxa5 \( \text{xa5} \) 26 a3 \( \text{fa8} \) 27 \( \text{b2} \), when Black doesn’t have enough for the pawn.

25...\( \text{xb4} \) 26 \( \text{xb4 a2} \)

Now Black gets a little counterplay and successfully struggles to the draw.

27 \( \text{d2 f4} \) 28 \( \text{fd1 d5} \) 29 \( \text{d4 fa8} \)
30 \( \text{c3 a3} \) 31 \( \text{d3} \) 32 \( \text{c4 xd3} \) 33 \( \text{xd3 xb4} \) 34 \( \text{b3 a4} \) 35 \( \text{c5 a6} \) 36 \( \text{d6 xc4} \) 37 \( \text{xb7 c5} \) 38 \( \text{xc5 xc5} \)
39 \( \text{f4 g5} \) 40 \( \text{g3 g7} \) 41 \( \text{c7 gxf4+} \) 42 \( \text{xf4 g6} \) 43 \( \text{h4 c4+} \) 44 \( \text{g3 c5} \) 45 \( \text{h3 c1} \) 46 \( \text{g4 cc4+} \) 47 \( \text{h3 cc2} \) 48 \( \text{g3 c4} \) 49 \( \text{h5+ ½²-½} \)

Black had a difficult defence in this game, and Palliser’s debacle shows that being an opening book author does not save you from opening surprises. Of course, this pawn wedge line hasn’t even been in any opening book – until now!

**Summary**

In general, Black should be fine with precise play: 5...\( \text{g4} \) is necessary, then take the knight if asked, play ...\( \text{e7-e6} \) as soon as possible (watch out for White’s \( \text{e5-e6} \) sac), and counter quickly against \( \text{e5} \).
Chapter Three

Modern Variation II: A Danish/Latvian Co-Production

Our Hero: Edvins Kengis

After our repertoire moves of the previous chapter (1 e4 e5 2 d4 2...e4 3 d5 3...d5 4 d6 4...f3 dxe5) White usually recaptures with the knight. I'm not sure people play this because they think it's better than 5 dxe5; more likely they do it because "everybody does it" (as we saw in the last chapter, they don't!), or because 5...xe5 is "supposed to be best", or perhaps because the pawn capture was never mentioned in books, so it had to be bad!

In any case, while you must be prepared for 5 dxe5 (and we saw in the last chapter that accurate Bagirov-style play should equalize), you will much more likely get 5...xe5 – which is, I admit, objectively best – and if you play Anand, you will definitely get 5...xe5.

What should we do with this horse on our side of the board? One of the clearest strategical ideas for Black is to take advantage of the fact that the pawn wedge is gone: now a fianchettoed king's bishop has a serious diagonal, unblocked by a pawn from g7-d4, and hitting said horse on the way. This idea, invented by the great Dane Bent Larsen and refined by the Latvian GM Edvins Kengis (the variation now bears the latter's name) is the subject of this chapter.

From a repertoire standpoint, I am recommending both 5...g6 and 5...c6. This is not because I can't make up my mind, but rather that the two lines often transpose to one another (see Game 1) and other lines (see, for example, Game 64, note to move 6) can transpose back into them! So it's essen-
tially pointless to know Kengis but not Carlsen, or vice versa.

There are certain differences between the lines and I will address these in the notes to the specific games. One could specialize in playing either 5...g6 or 5...c6, based on these small differences – or switch back and forth to confuse your opponents!

Game 17
E.Jimenez Zerquera-B.Larsen
Palma de Mallorca 1967

1 e4 d6f6 2 e5 d5 3 f3 d6 4 d4 dxe5

Larsen comments: “Theoreticians have called this move a mistake, because it brings the white knight to a good square. But it may be playable: the idea should be to win back the ‘lost’ tempo by exchange threats against the white knight.” A very modest statement – and yet there are now around 2000 games in the database with this line!

5 dxe5

If 5 dxe5 then 5...g4!. Remember? Right, just checking!

5...g6

I like this and 5...c6, but a line I definitely don’t like is the third most popular move, 5...d7.

This was another Larsen novelty that he flung out vs. Tal, allowing the extremely dangerous 6 xf7 x f7 7 h5+ when, as Tal said, the black king must go for a walk! Fearing prepared analysis, Tal avoided the sac and al-

Disappointment: Your opponent doesn’t want to play, and forces a draw: 6 xf7 xf7 7 h5+ e6 8 g4+ f7 9 h5+ e6 1/2-1/2 M.Golubev-M.Grunberg, Bucharest 2002.

Regret: You avoid said draw, and are crushed mercilessly: 6 xf7 xf7 7 h5+ e6 8 g4+ f7 9 h5+ e6 10 g4+ d6?
11 c4 Qf6 12 Qg3+ Qe6 13 cxd5 Qxd5 14 Qc3 Qxd4 15 Qe3 Qb4 16 a3 
Qxb2 17 Qc4+ Qd7 18 Qd1+ Qe8 19 Qb5 1-0. R.J.Fischer-B.Larsen, Santa 
Monica (free game) 1966.

**Software Remorse:** Your opponent’s computer is better than your computer, and his prepared line wins your queen before your prepared line starts:

6 Qxf7 Qxf7 7 Wh5+ Wh6 8 g3 b5 9 a4 
c6 10 Kh3+ Qd6 11 Qc3 b4 12 Qf4+ 
Qxf4 13 Qe4+ Qc7 14 Wh5+ Qb6 15 
We5+ Qd6 16 Qxd6 exd6 17 Qxf4 
Qxh3 18 Qf7+ Qd7 19 0-0 h5 20 h4 d5 
21 Qfe1 Qc4 22 b3 Qd6 23 Qf4 Qh6 24 
Qe5 Qf6 25 Wh5 Qg4 26 Qae1 Qf7 27 
Qe7+ Qxe7 28 Qxe7+ Qd6 29 Qe3 Qe6 
30 Qxe6+ Qxe6 31 Wh2 Qg4 32 f3 Qf5 
33 Qd2 Qe8 34 Qxb4+ Qc7 35 Qc4 Qe6 
36 Qc5 Qb7 37 Qf2 dxc4 38 bxc4 Qd7 
39 Qxh5 Qd6 40 Whc5 Qe6 41 Qh4 Wh6 42 
Qg2 g6 43 Qg3 Qe6 44 Qf2 Qe8 45 
Qg2 Qd6 46 d5 1-0. I.Balinov-W.Posch, 

**Ecstasy:** Your new computer is better than your opponent’s computer, he allows your prepared line, and you win!!

7 Wh5+ Qe6 8 c4 Qf5 9 d5+ Qd6 10 
Wh7 Qe5 11 Qf4 c5 12 Qc3 a6 13 
0-0-0 g6 14 Qxe5+ Qxe5 15 d6 Qh6+ 
16 Qc2 Qe8 17 Qd5+ Qxd5 18 Qxd5+ 
Qf6 19 Qd3 exd6 20 Qxd6+ Qf7 21 
Qe4 Qc6 22 Wh5 Qd8 0-1. E.Rozentalis-
A.Sokolov, Bern 1992.

**Agony:** Your opponent doesn’t have a computer and avoids all your preparation by playing Qf3! and grinds you 
down in the endgame: 6 Qf3 g6 7 Qc4 
Qf6 8 Qc3 Qg7 9 g3 0-0 10 Qg2 Qb6 
11 b3 e5 12 dxe5 Qxd1+ 13 Qxd1 Qg4 
14 Qb2 Qd7 15 e6 Qe8 16 0-0 Qxe6 17 
Qxg7 Qxg7 18 Qd4 Qe8 19 Qb5 Qd8 
20 Qxc7 Qb8 21 Qc3 Qdf6 22 Qad1 
Qd7 23 h3 Qe5 24 Qfe1 Qc6 25 Qd6 
Qbc8 26 Qb5 a6 27 Qd4 Qxd4 28 
Qxd4 b5 29 Qed1 Qe8 30 Qb7 Qc7 31 
Qxa6 Qxc4 32 Qxc4 Qh3 33 Qa4 Qg4 
34 Qd5 Qb7 35 Qf4 Qe5 36 Qxh3 Qf3+ 
37 Qg2 1-0. R.Byrne-M.Rohde, New York 
1989.

I get worn out just thinking about it! Now back to 5...g6, where we can at least play chess for a while!

\[ \text{Diagram} \]

6 Qc4

Still the most popular move today, which I will examine further in the following three games. Also possible are: two “caveman” variations, 6 Wh3 and 6 
h4 (Games 21-22); the direct 6 c4 (Game 23); the positional 6 Qd2 (Game 
24); and White’s best alternatives, the quiet but strong 6 Qe2 and 6 g3 
(Games 25-26).

6...Qe6

Nowadays 6...c6 is preferred, as it’s
not clear where the c8-bishop belongs. But don’t get careless with 6...g7? 7 Qxf7! Qxf7 8 Wf3+ We6 9 We4+ and White wins!

7 Ab3 Ag7

A key strategic objective of the Ken- gis Variation is to lengthen the diag- onal of the g7-bishop. Black has already removed the white pawn wedge at e5; next on the list is the d-pawn. If Black can soften that point or even remove the pawn altogether, his position will normally improve (one recalls that in Game 1 Carlsen cleared the bishop's diagonal all the way to b2!). Therefore Black often aims to get in either ...e5 or ...c5. Sometimes Black can attack further down the diagonal with minority attack moves like ...a5-a4-a3 or ...b5-b4.

8 0-0 0-0 9 We2 a5

A typical Larsen rook pawn attack, with many positional ideas. If White plays a2-a4 to stop the pawn, and if White later employs c2-c4 to drive off the centralized black knight, said knight finds a brilliant square at b4. If the pawn is not stopped, it might ad- vance all the way to a3, perhaps cooper- erating with the fianchettoed bishop.

10 Ac3 c6 11 Qxd5?!

Giving Black a central pawn major- ity and the good c6-square for the queen's knight – but even after the more logical 11 Qe4 a4 12 Ac4 Qd7 White’s good knight is exchanged or driven back, as 13 f4 would be too weakening in view of 13...Wb6.

11...Qxd5 12 a4 Qc6 13 c3 Wb6 14 Aa2

14...Qxe5!!

An absolutely stunning conception, that only an original thinker like Larsen could come up with: Black gives up the normally essential fianchettoed bishop and gives himself doubled isolated e-pawns which are normally always bad in Alekhine’s Defence!

But a great player like Larsen sees that this position is exceptional. First of all, after the coming exchanges, White will be left with but one minor piece, a dark-squared bishop, that is unable to attack the usually very weak e6-pawn! In fact White is the one with weak pawns on the queenside and his “wedge” pawn
at e5 is weak as well! Black is left with the superior minor piece and open files for his rooks – bravo, Bent!

15 dxe5 d4!

“Advantage for Black,” says Larsen, and I second the motion.

16 h6 Qd8 17 xe6 fxe6 18 Qe1 Qd5 19 f4 Qf8 20 g3 Qf5

Larsen is unstoppable!

27 wb1

If 27 xe5 Qxf2+ 28 Qh1 Qxe5 29 Qxe5 Qxe5 30 Qb8+ Qg7 31 Qxe5 Qxg3 32 Qb5 Qxh4+ 33 Qg2 a4 and five extra pawns should be enough.

27...Qxe1+ 28 Qxe1 Qd5 29 Qc1 Qd4 30 Qb8+ Qf8 31 Qxf8+ Qxf8 32 Qh6+ Qe8 33 Qc8+ Qd8 34 Qc4 Qf5 35 Qf4 Qf7

Beautiful! The black rooks take up light square outposts (where the only white minor piece can’t attack them) and pressure White’s position from every side.

21 Qd1 Qb3 22 h4 Qxa4 23 Qe4 Qb3 24 cxd4 Qxb2 25 Qb1 Qxd4 26 Qxb7 Qxe5!

Now the black king is safe, as Larsen notes, and he can win by combining the advance of his passed pawn with queen + knight attacks against the white king.

36 Qe5 Qd1+ 37 Qh2 Qd2 38 Qc5 a4 39 Qc3 Qc2 40 Qg1 Qd1+ 41 Qh2 Qd5 42 Qb4 Qf3 43 Qg1 a3 0-1

White resigns as the passed pawn is too strong, but can’t be taken either; i.e. 44 Qxa3 Qd4 and now:

a) 45 Qf1 Qh1 mate.

b) 45 Qb4 Qe2+ 46 Qh2 (or 46 Qf1 Qxg3+) 46...Qxf2+ 47 Qh3 Qg1+ and mates.

c) 45 Qb2 Qxc3! wins a piece.
Game 18
P. Ostojic-E. Kengis
German League 1992

1 e4 ∆f6 2 e5 ∆d5 3 d4 d6 4 f3 dxe5 5 ∆xe5 g6

The young Kengis saw Larsen's idea, liked it, and set out to make the variation his own. Still far from GM strength, he lost with 5...g6 his first time out. Was he discouraged? No! He played it three more times — three more losses. Now most people who lose four games in a row with the same variation might give up on it, but not our persevering Latvian: with his fifth game in the variation that would bear his name, he finally made a draw! Then he draws five more games! Finally he wins one! Now he has his line down, and from that big win in 1989 until he gave up the variation in 1996, Kengis made such a plus score with Black that he wiped out the 0-4 deficit with which he started. He defeated strong GMs like Christiansen and Gallagher with his variation, and ended up (this includes those young losses) with a highly respectable overall plus score of eight wins, seven losses and twenty draws.

He also developed many interesting positional ideas that are specific to this particular structure, which I will discuss in the following notes.
6 ∆c4

Played, as we saw, in the first game with this line and still the most popular move today. But it seems to me that this primitive attack on f7 gets nowhere, and we will see that Kengis has no problem dealing with it.
6...c6 7 0-0 ∆g7 8 ∆e1

Even quieter was 8 ∆b3 0-0 9 c3 ∆f5 10 ∆a3 ∆d7 11 ∆ac4 ∆5b6 12 ∆xd7 ∆xd7 13 ∆e1 ∆xc4 14 ∆xc4 e5 when Black equalized cleanly with this diagonal opening move, and after 15 dxe5 ∆xd1 16 ∆xd1 ∆xe5 17 ∆h6 ∆fd8 18 ∆g5 ∆xd1+ 19 ∆xd1 ∆g7 20 f3 h5 21 ∆e3 a6 22 ∆b6 ∆e8 23 g3 ∆f6 it was completely equal, J. Coret Frasquet-Abreu Suarez, Spanish Team Ch. 1994.

8...0-0 9 ∆b3 ∆e6
Accurate! Black challenges the bishop on b3. Kengis has done very well from this position, but look what happens to Adams in the next game when he plays the less precise 9...c7d. For the Larsen-style 9...a5, which is also good, see Game 20.

**10 h3**

White has some alternatives:

a) 10 c4 b6 puts unpleasant pressure on c4 and d4. (Kasparov was able to get c2-c4 in “for free” vs. Adams, but only against inaccurate play.)

b) 10 c3 c7d 11 f3 c7 introduces another Kengis strategical idea: exchange the light-squared bishops.

This leaves White with the worse bishop (blocked by the d-pawn) while Black’s cleric tends to become stronger as the game goes on and the long diagonal opens. One can see that Black is already equal. J.Howell-E.Kengis, London 1991, continued 12 bxc6 fxe6 13 b3 b6 14 c4 (14 bd2 is better – White probably overlooked the temporary sac of the e-pawn) 14...c5! 15 d5 c7 (a second well-refined Kengis idea: a pawn is sacrificed to liven up Black’s play, here Black gets it right back with the better game; meanwhile note that – fundamental Kengis – the long dark diagonal has been cleared of one more pawn!) 16 b7d6 17 f1 e1 wxd5 18 a3 b6 19 wxd5 cxd5 (Black has strong pressure against White’s undeveloped queenside) 20 g5 h6 21 d2 a4 22 ab1 f8 23 f1 a6 24 c4 b5 25 e3 ed8 26 ec1 f6 27 c4 e4 28 e2 d3 29 e1 e8 30 d2 d6 31 h2 xe3+! (Black breaks up White’s position with this stylish exchange sac) 32 fxe3 f5 33 f2 d4+ 34 d1 xc2 35 xc2 f5 36 a3 f7 37 b3 c3 38 f1 h5 39 h3 e4 40 xe4 xe4 41 axb5 axb5 42 d1 h6 43 d3 e6 44 e2 g5 45 f3 h4 46 d2 f6 47 a2 d5 48 a4 b4 49 a5 c4! (a well-calculated win) 50 bxc4+ (if 50 a6 cxb3 51 a7 e8 52 a8x+ xa8 53 xa8 b2 and queens) 50...xc4 51 a6 b3 52 a4+ b5 0-1. White resigns in view of 53 a3 b2 54 b3+ (or Black comes first in a big way: 54 a7 b1w 55 a8w wd1 mate!) 54...xa6 and the passed b-pawn will cost White a rook.

**10...c7d 11 f3 c7**

Kengis’ typical manoeuvre equalizes for Black.

**12 c3 d5 13 f4**

13 g5 gave White nothing in S.Polgar-E.Kengis, Vienna 1991, after 13...e6 14 e3 b5 15 xd5 cxd5 16 b3 c7 17 f4 ed1, as Kengis offered one of his now standard positional pawn sacs (but he must have lost a few...
early games trying to figure out when these worked and when they didn’t!). This one is clearly sound as Black gets open lines on the queenside and Benko-style pressure: 18  𝑥c7  𝑥c7  19  𝑥b5  𝑥b8  20  𝑒2  𝑏6  21  𝑓c8  22  𝑑3  𝑎5  23  𝑑2  e5! (Black breaks in the centre while White is still undeveloped; note the recurring theme of lengthening the diagonal of the g7-bishop) 24  𝑑xe5  𝑥e5  25  𝑔3  𝑐6  26  𝑎4  𝑑4  27  𝑏4  𝑑8  28  𝑒4  𝑑xc3  29  𝑏xc3  𝑥b4 (Black recovers his pawn with the better game, and outplays White in the subsequent tactics) 30  𝑎d1  𝑑4  31  𝑕1  𝑏3  32  𝑒3  𝑎5  33  𝑑6  𝑓5  34  𝑑7  𝑓8  35  𝑑5  𝑏4  36  𝑥f5  𝑔xf5  37  𝑥f5  𝑥c3  38  𝑥c3 (or 38  𝑔5  𝑥c1+  39  𝑥h2  𝑑6+  40  𝑔3  𝑔6  41  𝑑5  𝑏1 when Black has an extra rook and a mating attack) 38... 𝑥c3  39  𝑔5  𝑤h4  0-1.

13... 𝑒6  14  𝑕2  𝑏6  15  𝑑2  𝑐5!

All the Kengis themes in one!

a) Black lengthens the diagonal of his fianchettoed bishop and breaks up the white centre;

b) the light-squared bishops are exchanged;

c) the black e-pawn is sacrificed for queenside pressure.

16  𝑑xc5  𝑒5  17  𝑥d5  𝑥d5!

Fritz’s number one, 17... 𝑥d5, is of course possible, but Kengis is playing for a win!

18  𝑥e7  𝑏a4

One sees the power of Black’s fianchettoed dark-squared bishop now: both b2 and c3 are under severe pressure, and obviously 19 b3 is terrible due to 19... 𝑥c3.

19  𝑤c2  𝑎e8  20  𝑎e1

Also after 20  𝑐4  𝑤c6  21  𝑚c7  𝑏6  22  𝑏3  𝑎6  23  𝑑7  𝑥b2 Black recovers the pawn with some advantage.

20... 𝑒7  21  𝑒7  𝑤xa2

Black recovers his pawn with a good game.

22  𝑑6  𝑑5  23  𝑥c5

Now Black’s advantage is permanent (the better minor piece); it’s not clear that Black can increase the pressure after the simple retreat 23 𝑔3.

23... 𝑥c5  24  𝑓1  𝑓6  25  𝑒2  𝑑3  26
The last hope is 48 b4, for if Black takes en passant, White should draw— but after 48...a3! 49 b3 d4 50 axa3 d3 Black wins, as his bishop both corral White’s knight and neutralizes the b-pawn.

48...d4 49 axa4 d3 50 f4 e4 0-1

Black cleverly liquidates into an ending that is going to be a nightmare for White to draw.

33 c1 xd2+ 34 xd2 b3+ 35 c2 xc1 36 xc1

With the long-range bishop and slightly more outside pawns on the queenside, Black has a serious advantage.

36...c5 37 d5 f7 38 f3 d6 39 g4 b5 40 c2 e6 41 e3 c5 42 g2 g5 43 e1 a5 44 d3 e5 45 c4 f2 46 g2 bxc4+ 47 xc4 a4 48 b4

White resigns, as his paralyzed knight will be lost after 51 fxg5 fxg5 52 b4 (giving Black the wrong colour rook’s pawn doesn’t work either as the white king is too far away, and the superlative black bishop cuts off said king when it tries to approach: 52 h4 gxh4 53 xh4 xh4 54 b3 f3 55 c2 xg4 56 d1 f3 57 b4 g3 58 b5 h5 etc) 52...f3 53 b5 xg2 and the bishop will deal with White’s b-pawn, after which Black finishes easily in the king and pawn ending. A triumph for the Kengis bishop!

The main game and the two Kengis wins given in the notes show his mastery of the position. It’s clear that White gets nothing when the light-squared bishops are exchanged, but Black has a more difficult task in lines
where White’s bishop is kept back. This does not mean Black has a free ride after 6 \( \textit{c}4 \), however, as the following game shows – accuracy is still required!

\textbf{Game 19}  
\textbf{G.Kasparov-M.Adams}  
Linares 1997

\begin{align*}
1 \textit{e}4 & \textit{f}6 2 \textit{e}5 \textit{d}5 3 \textit{d}4 \textit{d}6 \\
& \text{One should note that Kasparov (whenever he had this position, only four times) continued with the strongest 4 \textit{f}3 on every occasion, a tradition that Anand has carried on. Kasparov’s score was similar as well: three wins and only one draw!} \\
4 & \textit{f}3 \textit{dxe5} 5 \textit{dxe5} \textit{g}6 6 \textit{c}4 \textit{c}6 7 0-0 \textit{g}7 8 \textit{e}1 0-0 9 \textit{b}3 \textit{d}7
\end{align*}

\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}[scale=0.8]
% Chessboard setup

12...\textit{e}6 13 \textit{xe6}! (shattering Black’s position: Black has to always watch out for pawn or exchange sacs on this square in the Alekhine, as the resulting doubled pawns are almost always weak – unless you’re Larsen, of course!) 13...\textit{fxe6} 14 \textit{c}3 \textit{d}7 15 \textit{w}e2 \textit{h}5 16 \textit{w}e4 \textit{f}6 17 \textit{w}h4 \textit{h}5 18 \textit{e}3 and White has excellent long-term compensation.

Other 12th moves don’t seem to work either: 12...\textit{f}5 13 \textit{c}3 \textit{w}c7 14 \textit{g}5 \textit{e}6 15 \textit{w}e2 (15 \textit{xe6} is also strong here, but now White’s position is so good due to Black’s further loss of time [...\textit{f}5-e6] that he doesn’t even need to sac) 15...\textit{fe8} 16 \textit{e}3 \textit{c}8 17 \textit{g}5 \textit{f}8?? (Black essentially resigns the game; clearly 17...\textit{d}7 is forced, though White has a big advantage) 18 \textit{xe6} \textit{fxe6} 19 \textit{g}5 \textit{h}8 20 \textit{wxe6} \textit{h}5 21

61
Alekhine Alert!

Black gets the key break in, but it's already too late as White controls the centre.

13...c3 cxd4 14 cxd4 e6 15 e3 cxd4 16 cxd4 e6

After 16...cxd4 17 cxd4 White has a dangerous queenside pawn majority and pressure down the e-file.

17 Wh4 Wa5 18 c5 cxb3 19 axb3

The bishop exchange usually helps Black, but here it just gives White the a-file.

19...c7 20 b4 a6 21 f4

21...c6

Black must give up a pawn, as 21...c7 22 da1 we8 23 c5 wins for White.

22 xe7 d5 23 cxd5 xd5 24 g4 c8

24...xb2 25 cd1 wc6 26 c5, with the ideas of c7 and e2, gives White an overwhelming position.

25 xd7 xd7 26 xd7 xb2 27 da1 e4 28 d6 c8 29 xb7

White keeps his pawn and the ending is hopeless.

29...c3 30 h1 c4 31 c1 xb4 32 c6

62
€d4 33 c7 1-0

This shows that even a small error
(developing the wrong piece, knight
instead of bishop) can lead almost im-
mediately to a worse game. White
must not be allowed to set up a d4/c4
centre without any compensating
pressure for Black.

Kengis himself, as we have seen,
liked the bishop on e6 so as to chal-
lege directly with ...€c7. Agdestein's
idea is to play ...a5-a4 and so force an
exchange on c2. Right now White can
sidestep with ...c4, so first Black has to
take that square under control.

11 h3 d7 12 f3 d7b6

Now threatening ...a5-a4 forcing a
favourable exchange.

13 a3 c7 14 bd2 a4 15 a2

Even though White avoids the ex-
change, the weakness at b3 will be a
consistent negative feature through-
out the game. If 15 c2 xc2 16 xc2
c5 and the Kengis Variation is firing on
all cylinders, with minority attack, ever
longer long diagonal, etc.

15...c5

This is the positional move and
probably best, though Black could also
fish in murky tactical waters with
15...f4!? 16 e4 bds.

16 dxc5 xc5 17 e4 xe4 18 xe4

fd8

This is typical for the variation:
Black has succeeded in his aims

Agdestein, who has a great feel for
this variation, continues in Larsen style:
he prepares to push the b3-bishop to c2
where it might be exchanged for his
own bishop and, furthermore, starts
what might be a minority attack on the
queenside, with the constant Kengis
aim of lengthening or softening the
long diagonal for the bishop on g7.

10 c3 f5
Alekhine Alert!

(lengthened long diagonal, broken-up White’s centre), but has had to pay “the two bishops”. All in all, an opening success for Black, in that Agdestein has equalized – but it’s way premature to say that Black is better.

19 \text{\textit{w}}c2 \text{\textit{e}}6 20 \text{\textit{g}}g5 \text{\textit{d}}c8 21 \text{\textit{a}}ae1 \text{\textit{a}}a5 22 \text{\textit{w}}e2 \text{\textit{e}}e8 23 \text{\textit{d}}d2 \text{\textit{w}}c5 24 \text{\textit{e}}e5 \text{\textit{w}}c7 25 \text{\textit{g}}g4 \text{\textit{f}}f6 26 \text{\textit{x}}xf6+ \text{\textit{x}}xf6 27 \text{\textit{b}}b1 \text{\textit{a}}a5 28 h4

Kengis’ personal statistics of 20 draws to 8 wins with his variation. It is a fact that if White plays soundly it’s hard for Black to generate winning chances. We’ve seen Agdestein play an excellent game, but we can’t ignore that White can essentially force a draw here: 48 \text{\textit{w}}xc6 \text{\textit{b}}xc6 49 \text{\textit{f}}xe3 \text{\textit{x}}xe3 50 \text{\textit{f}}f2 \text{\textit{e}}7 51 \text{\textit{f}}f3 \text{\textit{e}}e4+ 52 \text{\textit{x}}xe4 \text{\textit{x}}xe4 53 \text{\textit{d}}d7+ \text{\textit{f}}f6 54 \text{\textit{d}}d6+ \text{\textit{e}}e6 55 \text{\textit{d}}d4 \text{\textit{e}}e4 56 \text{\textit{d}}d6+ (not 56 \text{\textit{x}}xe4?? \text{\textit{f}}xe4 57 \text{\textit{g}}g3 \text{\textit{f}}f5 and Black wins the pawn ending, since White’s queenside is lamed by the long lasting weakness at b3) 56...\text{\textit{e}}e6 with a draw.

Short is trying to make something happen on the kingside, but there’s not really much chance of success, as Black has the only centre pawn and the strong rook on the fifth rank.

28...\text{\textit{w}}c6 29 \text{\textit{g}}g3 \text{\textit{e}}e7 30 \text{\textit{f}}f4 \text{\textit{d}}d7 31 \text{\textit{c}}c2 \text{\textit{c}}c5 32 \text{\textit{g}}g5 \text{\textit{g}}g7 33 \text{\textit{d}}d2 \text{\textit{f}}f6 34 \text{\textit{h}}h6+ \text{\textit{f}}f7 35 \text{\textit{h}}h5 \text{\textit{f}}f5 36 \text{\textit{h}}h4 \text{\textit{f}}f6 37 \text{\textit{x}}xg6+ \text{\textit{x}}xg6 38 \text{\textit{e}}e3 \text{\textit{e}}e3 39 \text{\textit{w}}xe3 \text{\textit{a}}a8

Time pressure on both sides: Black should play 39...\text{\textit{e}}e5 with a good position as in the game, and White should now prevent it with 40 \text{\textit{w}}e5.

40 \text{\textit{d}}d1 \text{\textit{e}}e5 41 \text{\textit{f}}f3 \text{\textit{e}}e4 42 \text{\textit{e}}e2 \text{\textit{a}}ad8 43 \text{\textit{h}}h6 \text{\textit{h}}h8 44 \text{\textit{x}}xh8 \text{\textit{x}}xh8 45 \text{\textit{d}}d1 \text{\textit{g}}g7 46 \text{\textit{f}}f4 \text{\textit{e}}e8 47 \text{\textit{d}}d6 \text{\textit{e}}e3

This might be a good point to recall

48 \text{\textit{f}}f3?

But Short plays for a win – and loses! Sorry, Nigel, but I’ve done the same thing.

48...\text{\textit{w}}xd6 49 \text{\textit{x}}xd6 \text{\textit{h}}h5 50 \text{\textit{d}}d7+ \text{\textit{h}}h6 51 \text{\textit{g}}g2 \text{\textit{f}}f4

Now the black e-pawn is too strong.

52 \text{\textit{g}}xf4 \text{\textit{xf}}4+ 53 \text{\textit{f}}f1 \text{\textit{g}}g5 54 \text{\textit{x}}xb7

54 \text{\textit{h}}h7 fails to prevent the infiltration: 54...\text{\textit{f}}f6 55 \text{\textit{h}}h4 g5 56 \text{\textit{h}}h6+ \text{\textit{g}}g7 57 \text{\textit{h}}h2 \text{\textit{d}}d8 and Black finds a new route and wins.

54...\text{\textit{h}}h8 0-1
White has no perpetual and can’t escape the fatal rook penetration; e.g. 55 \text{\textit{b}5}+ \text{\textit{f}6} 56 \text{\textit{b}6}+ \text{\textit{e}5} 57 \text{\textit{b}5}+ \text{\textit{d}6} 58 \text{\textit{g}5} \text{\textit{h}2} 59 \text{\textit{g}4}s2+. This was a great win by Magnus Carlsen’s fellow Norwegian and first teacher – but note that White could have forced a draw as late as move 48!

\begin{center}
\textit{Game 21}
\textbf{V.Nevednichy-M.Grunberg}
Paks 2007
\end{center}

1 \textit{e}4 \textit{f}6 2 \textit{e}5 \textit{d}5 3 \textit{d}4 \textit{d}6 4 \textit{f}3 \textit{dxe}5 5 \textit{x}e5 \textit{g}6 6 \textit{f}3

White brings out a big club and threatens mate in one!

\textbf{6...\textit{e}6}

White barely scores 51% after Grunberg’s natural response here, but grabs 83% if Black plays the craven 6...\textit{f}6, which impresses even less if one looks at the following game: 7 \textit{c}4 (White already has a big lead in development and activity) 7...\textit{c}6 8 \textit{d}3 \textit{g}7 9 \textit{b}3 0-0 10 0-0 \textit{h}8 11 \textit{c}3 \textit{xc}3 12 \textit{bxc}3 \textit{w}a5 13 a4 \textit{wc}3 14 \textit{b}2 \textit{wa}5 15 \textit{fe}1 and White won easily in A.Smirnov-A.Tretiakov, Ishevsk 2005.

\textbf{7 \textit{c}4}

Presumably the point of White’s last move: against anything else Black just plays 7...\textit{c}6 and it’s hard to see why the white queen is on \textit{f}3; e.g. 7 \textit{c}4 \textit{c}6 8 0-0 \textit{d}7 9 \textit{c}3 \textit{g}7 and Black was already equal and went on to win in A.Sherzer-A.Panchenko, Chicago 1992.

\textbf{7...\textit{b}4 8 \textit{wb}7}

Not 8 \textit{d}5? \textit{c}2+ 9 \textit{d}1 \textit{xa}1 and the d-pawn is pinned.

\textbf{8...\textit{xd}4 9 \textit{xa}8}

White is momentarily a rook up, but
his king will be stuck in the centre and his queen is not playing.

9...\text{c}2+

I can’t recommend 9...\text{w}xe5+ 10 \text{e}e2, when White gets to develop. After the game check the white king must block his own bishop.

10 \text{e}2 \text{w}xe5+ 11 \text{d}1

11...\text{d}4+

Tempting but a bit too fanciful is 11...\text{w}e1+? 12 \text{xc}2 \text{f}5+ 13 \text{d}3 \text{w}e2+ 14 \text{b}3 \text{xd}3+ 15 \text{c}3 \text{c}2+ 16 \text{b}4 \\
\text{e}5+ 17 \text{a}5 \text{b}4+ 18 \text{xb}4 0-0 19 \text{a}3 \\
\text{d}7 20 \text{f}3 \text{b}6 21 \text{w}e2 \text{b}8, when White wins with the cold-blooded 22 \\
\text{xc}2 \text{xc}4+ 23 \text{a}4 c5 (there are no saves in 23...\text{xc}2+ 24 \text{b}3 or 23...\text{d}7+ 24 \text{b}5) 24 \text{b}3 \text{d}7+ 25 \text{b}5 1-0 \\
M.Keller-M.Etman, correspondence 1995, for if 25...a6 26 \text{xc}4 axb5+ 27 \\
\text{b}3 bxc4+ 28 \text{xc}4 and White comes out a rook ahead.

12 \text{d}2

With the black queen centralized on d4, White can’t take the knight: 12 \\
\text{xc}2? \text{f}5+ 13 \text{b}3 \text{b}6+ 14 \text{c}3 \text{g}7+ 15 \text{d}2 0-0 with a winning attack.

12...\text{xa}1 13 \text{xb}8+ \text{d}7

14 \text{b}5+

White ends the brief excitement. Not 14 c5 \text{xc}5 15 \text{b}5+ c6 16 \text{b}7+ \\
\text{d}8 17 \text{xc}6?? (17 \text{b}8+ still draws) \\
17...\text{c}2+ 18 \text{e}2 \text{c}4 and Black forces \\
mate.

14...\text{c}8

14...\text{d}6? 15 \text{d}3! allows White to \\
develop – in general it seems that nei-
ther side can safely avoid the draw.

15 \text{w}e8+ \text{b}7 16 \text{b}5+ \text{c}8 17 \text{w}e8+ \\
\text{b}7 18 \text{b}5+ 1/2-1/2

This high-level game seems to be 
the last word on this variation. Kengis 
fans must be willing to accept a draw, 
if that’s really what White wants.

There’s a philosophical question 
here: should Black always play for a win 
from the start? I’ve spent most of my 
career trying hard (or too hard) to win 
with either colour, but in view of the 
booked-up passivity of many White 
players now, I’ve been thinking of 
changing my style. I will always play 
hard to win with White, but perhaps
it’s best simply to take the draw with Black (with good grace and a firm handshake) if that’s all your opponent wants. He’s thrown away the theoretical advantage of the white pieces, and you’re rested for your next game – in which, playing White, you will go 100% for the win!

**Game 22**

S.Zakic-I.Marinkovic
Svetozarevo 1990

1 e4 c5 2 e5 d5 3 d4 d6 4 f3 dxe5 5 
\( \mathcal{Q} \)xe5 g6 6 h4

I don’t think White wants a draw here – and he doesn’t get it!

6...d7

Black follows Larsen by offering an immediate exchange of White’s best piece. Black also makes a step toward castling queenside – if he’s even worried about the attack!

The highest rated player who faced the seemingly fierce 6 h4, American IM Michael Valvo, was a little overly nonchalant, as he played a kind of “full ignore” plan – yes, he won the game, but I think his play was too risky (see note to move 11): 6...\( \mathcal{Q} \)g7 7 h5 \( \mathcal{Q} \)b4 8 c3 \( \mathcal{Q} \)c6 (even for an Alekhine, this is a lot of knight moves!) 9 f4 \( \mathcal{W} \)d5 10 \( \mathcal{Q} \)d2 \( \mathcal{Q} \)xe5 11 dxe5 (the natural 11 fxe5 is better, creating a solid block against the Kengis bishop, when Black is somewhat worse) 11...0-0 12 \( \mathcal{W} \)b3 \( \mathcal{Q} \)e6 13 \( \mathcal{W} \)xd5 \( \mathcal{Q} \)xd5 14 \( \mathcal{Q} \)c4 \( \mathcal{Q} \)d7 15 \( \mathcal{Q} \)e3 \( \mathcal{Q} \)b6 16 \( \mathcal{Q} \)a5 \( \mathcal{W} \)d8 17 hxg6 hxg6 18 \( \mathcal{Q} \)h2 f6! and Black broke up White’s centre and went on to win in J.Carleton-M.Valvo, London 1978 – but after 11 fxe5 such a break would not have been so easy.

7 \( \mathcal{Q} \)xd7

Direct attack gets nowhere: 7 \( \mathcal{W} \)f3
\( \mathcal{Q} \)xe5 8 dxe5 \( \mathcal{Q} \)e6 9 h5 \( \mathcal{Q} \)g7 and Black is better with three minor pieces out vs. White’s lone queen. Also, on the consistent 7 h5 Black just develops the Kengis bishop with tempo – and in the following game said bishop takes a terrible revenge for White’s effrontery in attacking so prematurely: 7...\( \mathcal{Q} \)g7 8 \( \mathcal{Q} \)g4
\( \mathcal{Q} \)xh5 9 \( \mathcal{Q} \)xh5 \( \mathcal{Q} \)f6 10 \( \mathcal{Q} \)xf6+ \( \mathcal{Q} \)xf6 11 \( \mathcal{Q} \)h4 h5 12 \( \mathcal{Q} \)g5 \( \mathcal{W} \)d5 13 \( \mathcal{Q} \)e3 \( \mathcal{Q} \)g4 14 \( \mathcal{Q} \)c3 \( \mathcal{W} \)d8 15 \( \mathcal{W} \)f3 \( \mathcal{Q} \)xe3 16 fxe3 \( \mathcal{Q} \)g4 17 \( \mathcal{W} \)xb7 0-0 18 \( \mathcal{W} \)d5 \( \mathcal{Q} \)b8 19 \( \mathcal{Q} \)e2 e5 (the typical diagonal opening blast) 20 \( \mathcal{W} \)xd8 \( \mathcal{Q} \)xd8 21 \( \mathcal{Q} \)xg4 exd4 22 \( \mathcal{Q} \)e2 \( \mathcal{W} \)xg4 23 \( \mathcal{Q} \)xd4 \( \mathcal{Q} \)xb2 24 \( \mathcal{Q} \)xg4 \( \mathcal{Q} \)d5 25 c3 \( \mathcal{Q} \)f8 26 e4 \( \mathcal{Q} \)a5 27 \( \mathcal{Q} \)f4 \( \mathcal{Q} \)e5 28 \( \mathcal{W} \)f2? \( \mathcal{Q} \)g3! 0-1 O.Moen-J.Tisdall, Gausdal 1996.

7...\( \mathcal{Q} \)xd7 8 h5 \( \mathcal{Q} \)g7 9 \( \mathcal{Q} \)d3

\( \mathcal{Q} \)xe5 g6 6 h4

I don’t think White wants a draw here – and he doesn’t get it!

6...d7

Black follows Larsen by offering an immediate exchange of White’s best piece. Black also makes a step toward castling queenside – if he’s even worried about the attack!

The highest rated player who faced the seemingly fierce 6 h4, American IM Michael Valvo, was a little overly non-
Better is the consistent 9 h\textsubscript{x}g6 h\textsubscript{x}g6 (if 9...f\textsubscript{x}g6 10 c\textsubscript{c}3 and White can at least hope to exploit the a2-g8 diagonal) 10 h\text{x}h8+ h\text{x}h8 11 d\text{d}2 c5 with a minimal advantage for Black.
9...c6 10 c3 c7

11 f3

If 11 a3, then 11...e5 with a typical Kengis break on the long diagonal, which is even stronger here because of White's lack of development.

After the text Black could aim to castle queenside, but clearly he finds White's "attack" so inoffensive that he "castles into it".

11...0-0 12 h6

White waited too long: with a black rook on f8 it's too dangerous to take on g6; e.g. 12 h\text{x}g6 fx\text{g}6 13 e\text{e}5 14 dxe5 (if 14 x\text{x}h7 x\text{x}h7 15 h\text{x}h5+ g\text{g}8 16 xg6 f6 stops the attack cold) 14...e\text{e}8 and the counter-attack shines.

12 h\text{h}8 13 0-0 e5

The h-pawn advance has come to nothing, while Black breaks in the centre, typical expanding the g7-bishop's range.

14 g5?

Losing a pawn. White can hope to equalize with the alternative 14 dxe5 x\text{e}5 15 d2.

14...exd4 15 cxd4 a4 16 c3 e5 17 d2 f6 18 cxd5 cxd5 19 xd5 c6 20 b3 x\text{b}2

The Kengis diagonal is completely open, and Black is materially and positionally better.

21 e1 e5 22 e4 f8 23 x\text{c}6 bxc6 24 e3 d4 25 f3 e6 26 a4 d5 27 c1 c5 28 a5 e7?!

Too passive: 28...e2!, taking the initiative, should win cleanly.

29 c3 g5 30 d2 d5 31 c3 e8 32 xd4 x\text{d}4 33 g3 d5 34 b3?

34 x\text{c}5! recovers the pawn due to a back rank trick (34...xf3? 35 xe7! with a winning attack for White) and if 34...e1+ 35 g2 equalizes.

34 g5 35 x\text{c}5?

Too late, as the back rank trick is no longer on – see the following note. 35 bb1 is necessary, when White can continue to struggle a pawn down.

35 e1+!
36 \( \text{g2} \)

A rook goes. No doubt White missed the diagonal move backwards in the variation \( 36 \text{xe1 xxe1+ 37 g2 xc5 38 b8+wf8!} \).

\[ 36...xc1 37 wd4 wc6+ 38 xf3 xe5 39 g4 we4 0-1 \]

White did get a decisive result, if not exactly the one he was aiming for! In general, it’s very dangerous to attack the Alekhine prematurely, as the counter-attacking nature of Black’s play then comes strongly to the fore.

**Game 23**

_D.Campora-I. Abreu Suarez_

Las Palmas 1993

\[ 1 e4 \text{f6 2 e5 d5 3 d4 d6 4 f3 dxe5 5 xxe5 g6 6 c4} \]

Very direct: White knocks the black knight out of the centre, but the dark side of the move is that the d-pawn (soon to be hit by the Kengis bishop) now lacks any pawn support. This variation should not be feared, though Black must play very accurately over the next five moves or so.

\[ 6...\text{b6} \]

This position highlights one of the key differences between the Kengis and Carlsen Variations: in the latter (Black has played 5...c6 instead of 5...g6) Black answers 6 c4 with the aggressive 6...\text{b4!} (see Game 32 – note that White has no check on a4), but here Black must be content with the typical Alekhine retreat to b6, since 6...\text{b4?? would lose a piece to 7 wa4+ \text{b4}c6 8 d5.}

During Kengis’ “trial and error” days (actually just the error part – this is one of his first four losses) he tried another knight retreat, 6...\text{f6}, but after 7 \text{e2 g7 8 c3 0-0 9 f4 c6 10 0-0 a6 11 d2 f5 12 ad1 wc8 13 h6 wc7 14 xg7 xg7, he had no dark-squared bishop and no counterplay; soon... 15 f4 ad8 16 g4 c8 ...Black was in full retreat and was horribly crushed in S.Dolmatov-E.Kengis, Rostov on Don 1980. Another learning experience! 7 \text{c3} \]
On 7 c5 Black should follow Larsen and gain time by offering to exchange with 7...d6d7, rather than going back to d5 which makes the knight a target:

a) 7...d6d7 8 c5c4 c6 9 c3 c7 and now, instead of 10 0-0 as in O.Koka-R.Dausch, Bad Zurzach 1995, where Black eventually won, White should seize the advantage with the energetic 10 wb3, which either wins a pawn or forces the weakening 10...e6.

b) 7...d6d7! 8 f3f3 g7 9 c4 0-0 10 0-0 b6 11 g5 b7 12 b3 e8 13 h3 h6 14 f3 h5 15 g3 a6 16 xa6 xa6 17 cb6 cb6 18 a3 f6 19 c3 c8 20 f4 d7 21 f1 e8 22 ad1 g4 and Black's careful play has fully equalized the game, G.Sax-S.Maus, German League 1994.

7...g7 8 e3

White's other 8th moves are ineffective:

a) 8 e2 c5 is clearly easier for Black than the game, as the white rook can't capture on d1, and the bishop on e2 (rather than e3) doesn't defend a white pawn on c5.

b) 8 f4 doesn't pay attention to the potentially weak d-pawn, and Ken-gis handled it easily, twice, against GM opposition. First he made a solid draw by simply exchanging White's active pieces: 8...0-0 9 e2 c6 10 d2 e6 11 b3 d8d7 12 e3 xe5 13 xe5 xe5 14 xe5 d7 15 c6 f6 16 0-0 ½-½ P.Motwani-E.Kengis, Vienna 1991.

Seeking more a year later, Ken-gis let fly with 9...a5!? and had an almost im-

mediate success: 10 h4 c6 11 xc6 bxc6 12 e5 xe5 13 dxe5 e6 14 b3 xd1+ 15 xxd1 a4 16 e4 axb3 17 axb3 f5 18 c5 a5 19 d3 xd3 20 xd3 xe5+, when Black had won a pawn for nothing and thirty moves later scored the full point in J.Gallagher-E.Kengis, Bern 1992.

Of course White did not have to lose material like that (for example, 10 0-0 instead of the ineffective 10 h4, would have been better), but one sees that Black has counterplay and no problems in this variation.

c) Finally, if 8 f4 c5 9 dxc5 (9 e3 transposes to the note to White's 9th move) 9...d6d7 10 e3 wa5 and Black wins his pawn back with a good game. 8...c5

I think this move (developed by Ken-gis after a few bad experiences) is the clearest path to equality, though the natural 8...0-0 is also playable. However, I can't recommend 8...c6 9 xc6 bxc6 as, unlike in Gallagher- Kengis above, Black doesn't get a tempo off the d4-pawn, which White
wisely defended with 8 \( \text{\texteucd9}\text{e}3\). After 10 \( \text{\textwtd2}\text{\texteucd9}\text{e}6\) 11 b3 0-0 12 \( \text{\texteucd9}\text{e}2\) \( \text{\textwtd7}\) 13 0-0 \( \text{\textad8}\) 14 \( \text{\textad1}\) Black runs out of play but the doubled pawns remain.

Returning to 8...0-0, one finds that the position is surprisingly little explored. It’s easy to see that 9 \( \text{\textwtf3}\) is over-aggressive, just inviting a typical Alekhine counter-attack: 9...f6 10 \( \text{\textd3}\) e5 11 dx5 fx5 and the queen had to run back – White barely made a draw after 12 \( \text{\textwtd1}\) c6 13 \( \text{\textdc5}\) \( \text{\textwe8}\) 14 \( \text{\textd5}\) \( \text{\textwfd7}\) 15 \( \text{\textde4}\) \( \text{\textaf5}\) 16 \( \text{\textg5}\) \( \text{\textwfd7}\) 17 \( \text{\textxb6}\) \( \text{\textxd1+}\) 18 \( \text{\textxd1}\) axb6 19 c5 h6 20 \( \text{\textac4+}\) \( \text{\textah8}\) 21 h4 b5 22 \( \text{\textdf7+}\) \( \text{\textah7}\) 23 \( \text{\textg5+}\) \( \text{\textah8}\) 24 \( \text{\textdf7+}\) \( \text{\textah7}\) 25 \( \text{\textg5+}\) ½-½ J.Polgar-S.Agdestein, Isle of Lewis 1995.

9 \( \text{\textac1}\) is another matter: Grischuk scored a high-level win against Alekhine expert Baburin with it, though I like the game Black got out of the opening: 9...c5 10 \( \text{\textae2}\) cxd4 11 \( \text{\textxd4}\) \( \text{\textah6}\) 12 \( \text{\textma1}\) f6 13 \( \text{\textg4}\) \( \text{\textxg4}\) 14 \( \text{\textxg4}\) \( \text{\textac6}\) 15 \( \text{\textac5}\) \( \text{\textae5}\) 16 \( \text{\textae6+}\) \( \text{\textg7}\) 17 \( \text{\textd5}\) \( \text{\textxd5}\) 18 cxd5 and now I think 18...\( \text{\textwc7}\) may be equal or better for Black. Instead, Baburin chose the unfortunate 18...\( \text{\textwa5+}\) which lost a tempo and then the game after 19 b4 \( \text{\textwa6}\) 20 \( \text{\textwe2}\) \( \text{\textd3+}\) 21 \( \text{\textaf1}\) \( \text{\textxc5}\) 22 bxc5 \( \text{\textxe2+}\) 23 \( \text{\textxe2}\) b6 24 c6 etc, A.Grischuk-A.Baburin, Torshavn 2000. Of course after my suggested 18...\( \text{\textwc7}\) 19 b4?! is met very strongly by 19...b6. But this variation remains untried at this writing.

9 dxc5

Again the premature attack 9 \( \text{\textwfd3}\) should not do anything for White (the positional pressure lines are more testing for Black): 9...0-0 10 0-0-0 \( \text{\textdd6}\) 11 \( \text{\textg4}\) (White tries for an attack that’s not there; better is 11 \( \text{\textae2}\) cxd4 12 \( \text{\textxd4}\) \( \text{\textxe5}\) 13 \( \text{\textxe5}\) \( \text{\textxe5}\) 14 \( \text{\textxd8}\) \( \text{\textxf3}\) 15 \( \text{\textxf8+}\) \( \text{\textxf8}\) 16 \( \text{\textxf8}\) \( \text{\textec6}\) and Black should gradually equalize; e.g. 17 \( \text{\textdd1}\) \( \text{\textae6}\) 18 b3 \( \text{\textdd8}\) 19 \( \text{\textxd8+}\) \( \text{\textxd8}\) 20 \( \text{\textdd2}\) \( \text{\textdd7}\) 21 \( \text{\textee3}\) e5 22 c5 f5 23 b4 \( \text{\textwe7}\) 24 \( \text{\textdd5}\) g5 25 b5 \( \text{\textwe6}\) 26 a4 h5 27 a5 a6 28 bxa6 bxa6 29 \( \text{\textac4}\) \( \text{\textec6}\) 30 \( \text{\textdd5+}\) \( \text{\textgg7}\) 31 \( \text{\textxa6}\) \( \text{\textxa5}\) 32 \( \text{\texteb4}\) \( \text{\textaf6}\) 33 \( \text{\textae2}\) \( \text{\textee8}\) with a likely draw) 11...cxd4 12 \( \text{\textxd4}\) e5! 13 \( \text{\textec3}\) (taking on e5 loses a piece: 13 \( \text{\textxe5}\) \( \text{\textgg5+}\) or 13 \( \text{\textxe5}\) \( \text{\textxe5}\) 14 \( \text{\textxe5}\) \( \text{\textgg5+}\) 13...f5 14 \( \text{\textwd5}\) \( \text{\textdh8}\) 15 \( \text{\textdh6}\) \( \text{\textwe7}\) (White’s premature attack has rebounded – another case where prematurely attacking the Ken-gis came to no good for White) 16 h4 f4 17 h5 \( \text{\textxh6}\) 18 hxg6 fxg6 19 \( \text{\textwd4}\) \( \text{\textf6}\) 20 \( \text{\textdd3}\) exf2 21 \( \text{\textxh7+}\) \( \text{\textxh7}\) 0-1 I.Popelyshev-Y.Prokopchuk, Moscow 2007.

Kengis himself faced 9 f4 cxd4

\[
\begin{align*}
10 & \text{\textwd4} \text{\textxd4} 11 \text{\textxd4} \text{\textdd6} 12
\end{align*}
\]
\[ \text{Alekhine Alert!} \]

\[ \text{1d5 \text{\textipa{\textit{x}}}e5 13 \text{\textipa{\textit{x}}}xe5 (13 \text{\textipa{\textit{c}}}7+ \text{\textipa{\textit{d}}}8 14 \text{\textipa{\textit{x}}}xa8 \text{\textipa{\textit{f}}}3+ 15 \text{\textipa{\textit{g}}}xf3 \text{\textipa{\textit{x}}}xd4 16 0-0-0 \text{\textipa{\textit{c}}}6 is very complicated but looks about even – Black is still tied up, but White’s knight has no way home) 13...\text{\textipa{\textit{x}}}e5 14 \text{\textipa{\textit{f}}}xe5 \text{\textipa{\textit{d}}}6 15 \text{\textipa{\textit{e}}}2 \text{\textipa{\textit{e}}}6 16 0-0 \text{\textipa{\textit{c}}}8 17 \text{\textipa{\textit{ad}}}1 \text{\textipa{\textit{g}}}5 18 \text{\textipa{\textit{b}}}4 \text{\textipa{\textit{h}}}5! (an interesting idea: Kengis plans to develop the king’s rook to the third rank) 19 \text{\textipa{\textit{c}}}5 \text{\textipa{\textit{x}}}xd5 20 \text{\textipa{\textit{x}}}xd5 \text{\textipa{\textit{x}}}xb4 21 \text{\textipa{\textit{b}}}5+ \text{\textipa{\textit{f}}}8 22 \text{\textipa{\textit{d}}}7 \text{\textipa{\textit{x}}}xc5 23 \text{\textipa{\textit{e}}}6 \text{\textipa{\textit{f}}}5 24 \text{\textipa{\textit{xb}}}7 \text{\textipa{\textit{xa}}}2 25 \text{\textipa{\textit{d}}}3 \text{\textipa{\textit{f}}}4 26 \text{\textipa{\textit{h}}}4 \text{\textipa{\textit{c}}}1 27 \text{\textipa{\textit{a}}}6 1/2-1/2 A.Vitolinsh-E.Kengis, Latvian Ch., Riga 1989. I would play 27...\text{\textipa{\textit{h}}}6 and refuse the draw with Black, though White should probably hold the material down ending with best play.}

In a recent game I reached this 9 \text{\textipa{\textit{f}}}4 \text{\textipa{\textit{c}}}xd4 line by transposition, and my opponent took with the bishop: 10 \text{\textipa{\textit{x}}}xd4 0-0 11 \text{\textipa{\textit{e}}}2 \text{\textipa{\textit{e}}}6 12 \text{\textipa{\textit{b}}}3 and now, instead of 12...\text{\textipa{\textit{f}}}6 when I was somewhat worse in G.Gonzales-T.Taylor, Philadelphia 2009 (because of the insecure bishop and weak square at e6), I should have remembered Larsen and played the non-stereotyped 12...\text{\textipa{\textit{x}}}xe5! 13 \text{\textipa{\textit{x}}}e5 (if 13 \text{\textipa{\textit{f}}}xe5 \text{\textipa{\textit{d}}}6 wins a pawn) 13...\text{\textipa{\textit{c}}}6, when Black catches the dark-squared bishop and has no further problems; e.g. 14 \text{\textipa{\textit{w}}}xd8 (or 14 0-0?! \text{\textipa{\textit{c}}}xe5 15 \text{\textipa{\textit{f}}}xe5 \text{\textipa{\textit{d}}}7 16 \text{\textipa{\textit{w}}}d4 \text{\textipa{\textit{w}}}c7 17 \text{\textipa{\textit{d}}}5 \text{\textipa{\textit{xd}}}5 18 \text{\textipa{\textit{w}}}xd5 \text{\textipa{\textit{x}}}xe5 and Black wins a pawn) 14...\text{\textipa{\textit{f}}}xd8 15 \text{\textipa{\textit{c}}}7 \text{\textipa{\textit{d}}}7 16 \text{\textipa{\textit{xb}}}6 \text{\textipa{\textit{axb}}}6, which is similar to the 9 \text{\textipa{\textit{d}}}xc5 main line where Black has a good game; e.g. 17 \text{\textipa{\textit{a}}}4 \text{\textipa{\textit{ad}}}8 18 \text{\textipa{\textit{xb}}}6 \text{\textipa{\textit{d}}}2 and the rook on the seventh provides excellent compensation for the pawn.

9...\text{\textipa{\textit{w}}}xd1+ 10 \text{\textipa{\textit{xd}}}1 \text{\textipa{\textit{x}}}xe5 11 \text{\textipa{\textit{c}}}xb6 \text{\textipa{\textit{axb}}}6

11...\text{\textipa{\textit{x}}}xc3+ 12 \text{\textipa{\textit{b}}}xc3 \text{\textipa{\textit{axb}}}6 is weaker: Black should not give up the two bishops without provocation; e.g. 13 \text{\textipa{\textit{d}}}2 \text{\textipa{\textit{d}}}7 14 \text{\textipa{\textit{e}}}2 \text{\textipa{\textit{c}}}5 15 0-0 \text{\textipa{\textit{f}}}5 16 \text{\textipa{\textit{f}}}3 \text{\textipa{\textit{e}}}4 (even without this tactical error Black is worse – after 16...0-0 17 \text{\textipa{\textit{e}}}1, say, as the unopposed dark-squared bishop is a constant threat) 17 \text{\textipa{\textit{xc}}}5 \text{\textipa{\textit{xf}}}3 18 \text{\textipa{\textit{d}}}4 \text{\textipa{\textit{e}}}5 19 \text{\textipa{\textit{x}}}e5 \text{\textipa{\textit{f}}}6 20 \text{\textipa{\textit{e}}}1 \text{\textipa{\textit{fxe}}}5 21 \text{\textipa{\textit{xe}}}5+ \text{\textipa{\textit{f}}}7 22 \text{\textipa{\textit{gx}}}f3 \text{\textipa{\textit{hc}}}8 23 \text{\textipa{\textit{d}}}7+ \text{\textipa{\textit{f}}}6 24 \text{\textipa{\textit{b}}}5 \text{\textipa{\textit{xc}}}4 25 \text{\textipa{\textit{xb}}}6+ \text{\textipa{\textit{g}}}5 26 \text{\textipa{\textit{hx}}}h7 \text{\textipa{\textit{xc}}}3 27 \text{\textipa{\textit{h}}}4+ \text{\textipa{\textit{f}}}5 28 \text{\textipa{\textit{f}}}7+ \text{\textipa{\textit{e}}}5 29 \text{\textipa{\textit{gx}}}g6 \text{\textipa{\textit{xa}}}2 30 \text{\textipa{\textit{e}}}7+ \text{\textipa{\textit{d}}}5 31 \text{\textipa{\textit{d}}}7+ \text{\textipa{\textit{d}}}5 32 \text{\textipa{\textit{xb}}}7 \text{\textipa{\textit{xf}}}3 33 \text{\textipa{\textit{b}}}5+ and White won the double rook ending despite the notorious f- and h-pawns in T.Ernst-V.Bagirov, Helsinki 1992.

12 \text{\textipa{\textit{d}}}4

But if White decentralizes his bishop, then the same capture works: 12 \text{\textipa{\textit{xb}}}6 \text{\textipa{\textit{xc}}}3+ 13 \text{\textipa{\textit{b}}}xc3 \text{\textipa{\textit{d}}}7 14 \text{\textipa{\textit{c}}}7 \text{\textipa{\textit{xa}}}2 with a good game for Black – a chess quirk, as Bobby used to say.

12...\text{\textipa{\textit{xd}}}4 13 \text{\textipa{\textit{xd}}}4

My two most recent Alekhine books
cover this position, but judge it incorrectly in my opinion. “White was much better,” says Davies; and Cox says this position “is just better for White” – but I completely disagree, and for once I have Mr. Fritz on my side!

To me it’s evident that after the coming ...\( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}c6 \) Black is at least equal: Black has the only centre pawn, play on the a-file, and can often post his knight powerfully on d4. Let’s look at some variations. 13...\( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}c6 \) is obvious and best – now White has two reasonable rook moves.

a) 14 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}d5 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}e6 \) 15 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}b5 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}a6 \) 16 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}a2 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}xa2 \) 17 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}xa2 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}xa2 \) 18 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}xb6 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}a7 \) 19 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}d2 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}d7 \) 20 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}c4 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}c7 \) 21 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}c3 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}d8 \) 22 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}e1 \) (if 22 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}xf7 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}a5 \) 23 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}b4 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}a3+ \) 24 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}b2 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}ad3 \) 25 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}f1 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}d2+ \) and Black will at least recover his pawn with some advantage) 22...e6 and the balance shifts to Black, since White can’t do anything with the queenside pawns. After 23 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}b4 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}e7 \) 24 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}b3 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}d5+ \) 25 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}xd5 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}xd5 \) 26 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}e2 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}a1 \) Black may start playing for a win, as the advanced white rook on b6 is out of the game.

b) 14 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}d2 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}e5 \) and I just can’t see any problems for Black, no matter how hard I look! Meanwhile White has to be careful in view of Black’s active play (a-file, d4-square, kingside pawns): 15 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}b3 \) (15 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}d5?! \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}xa2 \) is a little better for Black) 15...\( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}e6 \) 16 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}e2 \) (16 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}a4 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}b4 \) 17 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}a3 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}b5 \) 18 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}xb5 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}xb3 \) is a lot better for Black) 16...\( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}e7 \) 17 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}f3 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}hd8 \) 18 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}xd8 \) (if 18 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}d5+ \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}f8 \) 19 0-0 b5!) breaks successfully and Black takes over the ad-
vantage, as 20 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}xb5 \) is bad in view of 20...\( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}d4 \) 18...\( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}xd8 \) 19 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}xc6 \) (White tries to survive; 19 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}b5 \) f5 is a clear plus for Black with his mobile kingside pawn majority) 19...\( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}xc6 \) 20 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}e2 \) f5 21 \( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}d1 \) and White is close to equal but not there yet – Black can legitimately play for a win with the superior minor piece.

Finally, Mr. Fritz goes to “=” as soon as I put in 13...\( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}c6 \), with the subsequent play showing a clear lean in Black’s favour.

13...\( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}d7?? \)

Astonishing! Instead of the natural developing and tempo-gaining 13...\( \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}c6 \), Black takes two moves to deprive his knight of its natural square, and denies himself the tempo gain on the white rook! Such self-abnegation is not good for the soul!

\[ \begin{array}{c}
14 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}e2 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}c6 \ 15 \ 0-0 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}d7 \ 16 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}b4 \\
\end{array} \]

The badly-placed bishop is now a target. Black finds a tactical solution, but his loss of time still costs.

\[ \begin{array}{c}
16\text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}a3 \ 17 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}b5 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}e5 \ 18 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}d2 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}xc3 \ 19 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}xc6 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}xc6 \ 20 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}fd1 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}f8 \ 21 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}d8+ \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}e7 \ 22 \text{\textit{\textonesuperior}}}b8
\end{array} \]
...Ad2 23 ...Af1 Hf6
23...Ax a2!? may be the best chance, planning to sacrifice a piece: 24 Aed8 f5 25 c5 bxc5 26 Ae8+ A d6! (not 26...Af7? 27 Ac4+ forking) 27 Abd8+ Ac7 28 Axf8 Axf8 29 Axf8 Aa1, when Black has good practical drawing chances.
24 Ed6+ Ag7 25 Eb7

25...h5?
Black gives up – 25...c5 is still a game.
26 Ac6 Ah7?

27 A xg6+! 1-0
The fact that Black fell apart after a well-played opening should not affect our evaluation of the position: Black shouldn’t have any problems in the ending after the simple 13...Ac6.
This evaluation also supports Kenigs’ choice of 8...c5.
If you don’t want to go straight to the ending, one might explore Baburin’s 8...0-0, with more risky but perhaps rewarding play.

Game 24
N.Borge-B.Larsen
Danish Championship, Aarhus 1999
1 e4 Hf6 2 e5 Ad5 3 d4 d6 4 Af3 dxe5 5 A xe5 g6 6 Ac2

We have seen that 6 Ac4 doesn’t give much of anything, while the early attacks (6 Hf3, 6 h4, 6 c4) fizzle out quickly against accurate play. Here Bent Larsen, 32 years after inventing this system (which would be named after someone else!) finds White playing a new plan: trying to maintain the knight at e5 by immediately support-
ing it with the other horse.

6...\textit{g7} 7 \textit{d}d\textit{f}3 0-0 8 \textit{c}c\textit{c}4 \textit{c}6 9 0-0 \textit{d}d7
10 \textit{e}e1

If White tries to keep both knights with 10 \textit{d}d3, then Black exchanges one with his queen’s bishop and reaches a typical Kengis equilibrium, as Kengis himself shows: 10...\textit{a}5 11 \textit{a}4 \textit{f}f\textit{b}6 12 \textit{b}b3 \textit{f}f\textit{f}5 13 \textit{e}e1 \textit{x}d3 14 \textit{x}d3 \textit{e}6, when Black is very solid and eventually drew in J.Arnason-E.Kengis, Jurmala 1987.

10...\textit{x}e5 11 \textit{x}e5 \textit{a}5

Of course!

12 \textit{a}4 \textit{e}e6 13 \textit{f}f\textit{f}3 \textit{w}d\textit{d}6 14 \textit{c}3 \textit{c}5

Having played through some games with this system, one can appreciate the clear strategical line of Black’s play: Larsen has exchanged a minor piece and now gets in the key “diagonal softening” break and stands fully equal.

15 \textit{d}xc5 \textit{w}xc5 16 \textit{b}b5

Finkel claims that White can get the advantage here with 16 \textit{b}3, threatening \textit{a}a3, but this fails tactically to 16...\textit{b}b6 when White has too many pieces hanging: e.g. 17 \textit{xe}6 (if 17 \textit{e}e3

\textit{w}xe5 18 \textit{xb}b6 \textit{w}xc3, or 17 \textit{a}a3 \textit{w}c\textit{c}7 18 \textit{xe}6 \textit{xe}5 19 \textit{h}h3 \textit{ax}xh2+ wins a pawn) 17...\textit{xe}5 18 \textit{e}e3 \textit{wc}c3 19 \textit{h}h3 \textit{c}c8 20 \textit{ec}c1 \textit{wb}b3 21 \textit{ab}b1 \textit{xa}a4 22 \textit{xb}b7 \textit{d}d6 23 \textit{xe}7 \textit{ae}8 and Black stays a good pawn up.

16...\textit{ad}8

Black has a successful Kengis. The problem for the practical player is that, even when one succeeds positionally in this variation, it’s difficult to win if White plays cautiously.

17 \textit{d}d3 \textit{wc}8 18 \textit{f}f\textit{f}4 \textit{xf}f4 19 \textit{xf}f4 \textit{ad}5 20 \textit{we}3 \textit{d}d7 21 \textit{wb}6?

21 \textit{xe}7 \textit{xb}5 22 \textit{ax}b5 \textit{xb}5, with a draw most likely, looks best. This kind of line is the unavoidable consequence of the opening and is the only knock on the Kengis system that I can see. Basically, if White plays one of the solid lines, such as this one and the two following, Black must generally be willing to take a draw.

And even if White makes a mistake, as here, it won’t be that easy to win.

21...\textit{xb}5 22 \textit{ax}b5 \textit{w}f5!

Larsen picks off a pawn.
23 \text{\texttt{Wxb7}} \text{\texttt{Xxb5}} 24 \text{\texttt{Wf3}} \text{\texttt{Xxb2}} 25 \text{\texttt{Ae5}}

I thought it was a myth that all rook endings are drawn – but maybe not!

25...\text{\texttt{Wxf3}} 26 \text{\texttt{gx3 \texttt{Axe5}}}.

Now the dreaded 4 vs. 3 on the same side occurs, but it’s not clear that Black has anything better; e.g. 26...\text{\texttt{Aa8}} 27 \text{\texttt{Axg7 \texttt{Xxg7}}} 28 \text{\texttt{Axe7 a4}} 29 \text{\texttt{Aa3}} and White holds.

27 \text{\texttt{Axe5 \texttt{Ad8}}} 28 \text{\texttt{Aexa5 \texttt{Ad3}}} 29 \text{\texttt{Ag2 \texttt{Xc3}}}.

\text{\texttt{Ag5 \texttt{f3 \texttt{f5}}} 47 \text{\texttt{Aa5 \texttt{Af6}}} 48 \text{\texttt{Aa6+ \texttt{Ag7}}} 49 \text{\texttt{Aa7+ \texttt{Ah6}}} 50 \text{\texttt{exf5 \texttt{gx5}}} 51 \text{\texttt{Aa5 \texttt{e4}}} 52 \text{\texttt{fxe4 \texttt{fxe4}}} 53 \text{\texttt{Ae5 \texttt{Ag6}}} 54 \text{\texttt{Ae6+ \texttt{Af7}}} 55 \text{\texttt{Ae5 \texttt{Af6}}} 56 \text{\texttt{Ae8 \texttt{Af5}}} 57 \text{\texttt{Ae7 \texttt{Af6}}} 1/2-1/2.

White defended well and made his draw. But we see that the \texttt{d2-f3} manœuvre is too slow to give White anything – Borge could have drawn much sooner if he had recognized that, say on move 21.

\textbf{Game 25}

\textbf{P.Acs-C.Horvath}

Hungarian Championship,

Balatonllel 2002

1 e4 \text{\texttt{Af6}} 2 e5 \text{\texttt{Ad5}} 3 d4 d6 4 \text{\texttt{Af3 \texttt{dxe5}}} 5 \text{\texttt{Axe5 \texttt{g6}}} 6 \text{\texttt{Ae2}}.

We’ve seen the basic ideas of the Kengis, and we’ve seen how Black should play against the various rather primitive efforts at refutation. But what should \texttt{White} play? For the strongest players in the world, the over-2600 crowd, the answer is clear: first of all, the king’s bishop should not
go to c4, where it is either exchanged by ...\xadd4 (Kengis) or encircled by ...a7-a5 and possibly ...b7-b5 (Larsen, Agdestein). Yes, Kasparov played that way in Game 19 in 1997, but I'm sure if he came out of retirement now he would keep the bishop back. In general, White should avoid exchanges, and given that Black's standard breaks are ...c5 and ...e5, White should develop his bishop to the long diagonal (\xe2-f3 here, or g2-g3 and \xgf2 in the following game) so that when Black makes one of those freeing pawn moves, the bishop becomes stronger, as the d5-square is slightly weakened.

What does all this add up to? Plus equals at best, maybe even less than that – annoying pull might be the best description.

Very high-rated GMs don't need a lot to win: they are happy with such slight advantages and are willing to play all night with them. In this game, Peter Acs can't quite score the win, and Black defends well to make his draw; in the final game of this chapter, Mickey Adams comes very close to drawing with Vishy Anand, but in the end goes under.

If you play 2600 players on a regular basis, you can expect some suffering in the Kengis – not of the "my opening is unsound" variety but of the "I'm very slightly worse and I don't see any winning chances for me but I know I can make a draw with best play", which doesn't sound too bad unless you are sitting across from Anand at the time!

On the other hand, this "patient grind" for White is virtually never played at club level; in my eleven games with the Alekhine's I have faced no such thing, despite three opponents over 2500. But I haven't tried the Alekhine against any 2600s yet!

6...\xg7 7 0-0 0-0 8 \xf3

The patient approach: White puts his light-squared bishop on the long diagonal and waits. Horvath had no problems a few years before with a more impatient opponent: 8 c4 \xc4 9 a3 \xc6 10 \xc6 \xc6 11 d5 \xh4 (Black takes over the centre and stands well – the weakening side of the premature 8 c4 is seen!) 12 \xe3 c5 13 \xh4 cxd4 cxd4 14 \xd2 e6 15 dx6 \xe6 and Black was better in M.Kober-Horvath, Croatian Team Ch. 1995.

8...c6 9 \xe1 \xf5 10 c3

Note White's solid set-up, while Black is a long way from managing either ...e5 or ...c5.

10...\xd7 11 \xg7 \xd7 12 \xa3 b5

The following deceptively simple variation shows the poisonous nature of White's play: 12...\xe6 13 \xc2 \xfd8 14 \xe3 \xb6 15 \g4 c5 16 \h+ (16 dx5 \xb5 is fine for Black, but wait one move!) 16...\xh6 (unfortunately necessary, as 16...\xh8 17 dx5 \xb5 18 \xc2 \xc5 19 \xe6! is much better for White, with a knight fork at f7) 17 \xh6 cxd4 18 \xd4 \xd4 19 cxd4 \xd4 20 \xb7 (the freeing ...c6-c5 opened the long diagonal for White!) 20...\x8d8 21 \xg5 and White gets a
small but lasting pull without doing much of anything!

13 \( \text{c2} \) \( \text{xc2} \)

A typical Kengis idea: Black exchanges a second minor piece, and uses pawns on light squares to compensate for the missing bishop, while preparing \...c6-c5. This just about – but maybe not quite – equalizes.

Also possible is 13...a5 14 \( \text{e3} \) \( \text{xe3} \) 15 \( \text{xe3} \) a4 which looks very drawish, but one should note the Fritz evaluation here: the machine gives the “=” sign, but if you look at the numbers, White is up about 0.20. In other words, that very slight pull for White, undoubtedly because c6 is slightly weak. I'm sure this is drawable, but I'm equally sure that Acs would have been happy to grind away in this position!

14 \( \text{xc2} \) e6 15 \( \text{g5} \) \( \text{ac8} \) 16 \( \text{ad1} \) a5 17 h4 h6 18 \( \text{c1} \) c5

19 dxc5 \( \text{xc5} \) 20 \( \text{e2} \) \( \text{c7} \)

Black puts his faith in “all rook endings are drawn” since White practically has to exchange the bishops (see the next note). The alternative is 20...\( \text{fc8} \), which is one of those “almost equal” positions. The problem is that White can make various efforts with his two bishops for a long time, while Black does not have much active play.

Black should not lose this, but he certainly won't win unless White makes a serious blunder.

21 \( \text{xd5} \) exd5 22 \( \text{e3} \) \( \text{c4} \) 23 \( \text{xd5} \) b4 24 \( \text{d4} \)

Necessary, since 24 \( \text{xb4} \) \( \text{xh4} \) 25 g3 \( \text{xb4} \) gets his pawn back with a good game.

24...\( \text{xc3} \) 25 \( \text{bxc3} \) \( \text{c8} \) 26 \( \text{e3} \) h5 27 \( \text{g5} \) \( \text{xd4} \) 28 \( \text{xd4} \) \( \text{c1} \)

As always a key Kengis move, but now White's light-squared bishop is that slight bit more active, as the centralized black knight is not quite as well supported.

29 \( \text{de5} \) \( \text{c3} \) 30 \( \text{xc1} \) \( \text{xc1}+ \) 31 \( \text{xc1} \) \( \text{xc1}+ \) 32 \( \text{h2} \) a4

There you have it! Black was probably aiming for this position, or something like it. Black has the active rook which can get behind White's pawns – but he is a pawn down for good.
33 \( \text{Cc5} \) \( \text{Ha1} \) 34 \( \text{Cc2} \) \( \text{f8} \) 35 \( \text{g3} \) \( \text{e7} \) 36 \( \text{f3} \) \( \text{d6} \) 37 \( \text{e3} \) \( \text{b1} \) 38 \( \text{Cc4} \) a3 39 \( \text{Cc3} \) \( \text{e1+} \) 40 \( \text{f3} \) \( \text{d1} \) 41 \( \text{xa3} \) \( \text{xd4} \) 42 g3 \( \text{d2} \) 43 \( \text{e3} \) \( \text{b2} \) 44 \( \text{a7} \) \( \text{e6} \) 45 a4 f6 46 \( \text{Cc7} \) \( \text{b3+} \) 47 \( \text{d2} \) \( \text{f3} \) 48 \( \text{e2} \) \( \text{a3} \)

Perhaps White missed a chance somewhere, but now we see that Black has reached a theoretical draw, as given in all endgame books: the black rook is behind the passed pawn, and while it keeps close watch on the “dangerous criminal”, Black uses his king to get counterplay on the other side.

It’s not such an easy draw – but GM Horvath makes it look that way! 49 \( \text{Cc4} \) g5 50 \( \text{f1} \) \( \text{f5} \) 51 \( \text{g2} \) \( \text{a2} \) 52 \( \text{Cc5+} \) \( \text{g4} \) 53 hxg5 fxg5 54 a5 h4 55 \( \text{Cc4+} \) \( \text{f5} \) 56 g4 \( \text{e5} \) 57 \( \text{Cc5+} \) \( \text{f4} \) 58 \( \text{Cc4+} \) \( \text{e5} \) 59 \( \text{Cc5+} \) \( \text{f4} \) 60 \( \text{Cc4+} \) \( \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \)

A great defensive effort by Horvath, which shows the difficulty not so much of the Kengis itself, but in general of playing Black at the highest level, against well-prepared GMs.

There is a problem with the Kengis Variation that should not be ignored: the solidity and quietness of the opening give almost no winning chances, if White plays the best lines.

This might not be to everyone’s taste, but I’d like to make two points: one, you probably won’t face Acs/Anand-style play unless you actually play one of those top guys, in which case your chances of drawing with the Kengis are as good as in any other opening; and two, if you play an opening with sharp counter-chances – let’s say the currently hot Dragadorf Sicilian – you will have to know reams of ever-changing theory just to stay alive – while the Kengis positional ideas are easy to learn and will stand you in good stead for years (as opposed to a new super-sharp Sicilian variation that might crash and burn in days, if not weeks).

\[ \text{Game 26} \]
\[ \text{V.Anand-M.Adams} \]
\[ \text{Linares} \]
\[ (1\text{st matchgame}) 1994 \]

The World Champion and greatest foe of our defence gets the last word in this chapter: let’s just say in advance that this is not one of Anand’s two draws vs. the Alekhine.

1 e4 \( \text{f6} \) 2 e5 \( \text{d5} \) 3 d4 d6 4 \( \text{f3} \) dxe5 5 \( \text{dxe5} \) g6 6 g3! \( \text{g7} \) 7 \( \text{g2} \) 0-0

7...\( \text{b4} \) has never been tried but is worth a look: White should play 8 \( \text{f3} \) (8 \( \text{a3} \) \( \text{xe5} \) 9 dxe5 \( \text{xd1+} \) 10 \( \text{xd1} \)

79
8 0-0 c6 9 e1 f5 10 c3

Again, the patient approach. 10 c4?! would be premature: 10...b4 11 a3 (11 e2 xa2! is even worse) 11...a5! and Black has a good game with the white knight on a3 cut off from play – as we have seen before in a few games, notably Zapata-Tal, and will see again in Game 32.

10...d7 11 f3 e8

Black could continue similarly to Horvath with 11...xb1 12 xb1 e6, but that was a hard draw.

12 bd2 7f6!?

Black has two chances to bring the game in range of a draw, and this is the first – the other is on move 29.

By playing the text, Adams adopts a waiting strategy to match White’s, but must be tactically accurate in defence when Anand finally makes his move. From a pure chess point of view it’s not a bad strategy, though prolonged defence is difficult psychologically.

I recommend the natural Kenkis blow 12...e5 here, when Black gets his share of play. Even if the move doesn’t 100% equalize, it’s close enough, and gives Black a chance to act, rather than just react.

Let’s look at a few lines with 12...e5!? and then:

a) 13 dxe5 dxe5 14 dxe5 dxe5 15 c4 f6 16 xe8+ xe8 17 d6 we6 18 xf5 xf5 19 h6 d8 20 we2 g7 21 xg7 (if 21 d2 wc2 with counterplay) 21...xg7 22 d1 d7 and it’s worth taking a good look at this position. White has the better minor piece, but the centralized knight almost matches the strong fianchettoed white bishop. Other things are about equal, and the pawn structure is symmetrical. So White has the tiniest of pulls – but he does have it. While Fritz is convinced
the position is equal, I think most players with White would try their luck for a while, as White has no losing chances, while if Black makes a mistake (let’s say somehow weakens that b7-c6 pawn block) then White could quickly gain the upper hand.

Sure, it’s objectively a draw, but I see a couple of hours of hard play in Black’s future, and then a draw in the end. Fun? No. Dramatic? No. But very solid and theoretically sound, even against Anand! Now one more line:

b) 13  \(\text{Qc4} \) (weaker is 13...\(\text{Wc7} \)
14 dxe5 \(\text{dx}e5 \) 15 \(\text{Qxe5} \) 16 \(\text{Qxe5} \)
\(\text{dx}e5 \) 17 c4 \(\text{b}4 \) 18 \(\text{Qf}4 \) f6 as White damages Black’s pawn structure) 14 dxe5 \(\text{dx}e5 \) 15 \(\text{Qxe5} \) 16 \(\text{Qb3} \)
\(\text{xf}3 \) (not 16...\(\text{Qf}6 \) 17 \(\text{Qxb}7 \) 17 \(\text{xf}3 \)
\(\text{b}6 \) 18 \(\text{g}5 \) (after 18 \(\text{Qxd}5 \) \(\text{cx}d5 \) 19
\(\text{Qxd}5 \) \(\text{f}6 \) Black’s lead in development gives him excellent compensation for the pawn) 18...\(\text{f}6 \) 19 \(\text{h}6 \) (19 \(\text{Qxd}5 \)
\(\text{Qxb}3 \) 20 \(\text{Qxb}3 \) \(\text{Qx}g5 \) would be a way
White could virtually force a draw, if he wanted it) 19...\(\text{g}7 \) 20 \(\text{d}2 \) and once again, though the pawns are symmetrical, the minor piece situation – here White has the two bishops – give White that little annoying pull.

Drawable? Certainly, but again a long defence with no real winning chances.

However, in both cases Black forces several exchanges and gets closer and closer to a clearly drawn position. I think the defence is easier in these lines than in the game.

\[\text{13 Qc4} \]

White immediately prevents ...\(\text{e}7-\text{e}5 \). Black must now simply wait and watch for the moment to counter-attack – nerve-wracking against anyone, even more difficult against Anand.

13...\(\text{Wc7} \) 14 \(\text{Qc5} \) \(\text{Qg}4 \)

When I first looked at this game, I thought this was a mistake as Black gets doubled pawns – but now I think it’s correct. Black exchanges pieces, and the doubled pawns can be liquidated later.

\[\text{15 Qh4} \]

Black can’t move the f5-bishop as his knight on g4 hangs, but Adams gets two sets of minors off the board.

15...\(\text{Qxe5} \) 16 \(\text{Qxf5} \) \(\text{gxf5} \) 17 \(\text{Qxe5} \) \(\text{e}6 \)

Not 17...\(\text{Qxe5} \) 18 \(\text{Qxd5} \) \(\text{cx}d5 \)
(18...\(\text{Qad}8 \) 19 \(\text{Qxf7+} \) destroys Black) 19 \(\text{Qxd5} \) winning the f-pawn.

\[\text{18 We2 Qe7} \]

White is minutely better, but Adams has blocked White’s bishops and can break with ...\(\text{f}7-\text{f}6 \).

\[\text{19 f4 Qd5 20 c4 Qe7 21 Qe3 Qad8 22 b4 Qd7 23 Qf2 Qc8 24 a4 Qed8 25 a5 f6} \]

81
Now Black has his chance...

\[29...\text{Axd4} \]

...and misses it! Adams goes for a further exchange, but he should remember that the essence of the Alekhine is *counter-attack*. \[29...\text{A_d6}\] is correct, suddenly hitting the undefended c4-pawn. Since \[30\text{ c5}\] closes off the bishops and Black is better after \[30...\text{A_c4}\], White has to go into the complications of \[30\text{ Axa7}\], when a tactical slugfest occurs: \[30...\text{Axc4} 31 \text{ A_a2} \text{A_d2} 32 \text{ A_b6} \text{(weaker is 32 \text{wxe6}+ \text{w_f7} 33 \text{wxf7}+ \text{Axf7} 34 \text{A_b6} \text{Axb1} 35 \text{Axd8} \text{A_d2} 36 \text{A_c1} \text{A_b3} and Black comes out the exchange ahead)} 32...\text{w_d7} 33 \text{A_xd8} \text{(if 33 \text{A_b1}, 33...\text{Axf1} 34 \text{Axd3} \text{wxd3} 35 \text{wxe6}+ \text{w_f8} 36 \text{Axd8} \text{A_e3} 37 \text{w_e7+ is a draw)} 33...\text{Axb1} 34 \text{wxb1} \text{wxd8} 35 \text{b5} \text{Axa5} 36 \text{bxc6} \text{bxc6} 37 \text{Axc6} \text{A_c3} 38 \text{A_f3} and amazingly enough, after all that, Black is still marginally worse because of his split kingside pawns – but certainly reasonable defence holds the draw.}

\[30 \text{Axd4} \text{A_3xd4}\?\]

\[30...\text{A_8xd4} \text{is correct, when best play looks like 31 \text{f_e1} \text{w_d7} 32 \text{f_f1} \text{A_d2} 33 \text{A_e2} \text{A_d1} 34 \text{Axd1} \text{Axd1} 35 \text{Axe1} \text{Axe1} 36 \text{wxe1} \text{w_d6} 37 \text{A_g2} \text{A_e7} 38 \text{w_c3} \text{A_g6} 39 \text{h_4} \text{and the often cited queen + knight superiority is not seen here, as Black has no attacking chances and can’t get the knight to the only good outpost at e4 – in other words, in this specific position the queen + bishop battery is superior and Anand would have winning chances, though nothing like the game.}

\[31 \text{f_e1}?!\]

\[31 \text{d_5}\] should win, but for now, both sides overlook this tactic.

\[31...\text{w_f7} \]

Black is in trouble no matter what: \[31...\text{Axc4} 32 \text{wxe6} \text{w_d7} 33 \text{A_b1} \text{Axb4} 34 \text{a_6} \text{bxa6} 35 \text{Axc6 is much better for White, while if 31...\text{A_d6} 32 \text{c5} and the e6-pawn goes.}

\[32 \text{A_d5}!\]

Finally! Now White wins the exchange, there are old and new files for the white rooks, and the black knight is
not playing – in short, a decisive advantage for White.
32...\textit{wg7} 33 \textit{xe5!} \textit{xd5} 34 \textit{xd5} 35 \textit{g4!} \textit{e7} 36 \textit{xe6 fxe4} 37 \textit{wh4} \textit{d7} 38 \textit{be1} \textit{f8} 39 \textit{f5} 1-0

If Black plays on, the finish is forced: 39...\textit{dxe5} 40 \textit{xf6+} \textit{f7} 41 \textit{xex5} \textit{xe5} 42 \textit{d8+} \textit{f7} 43 \textit{e7+} wins the queen.

It's hard to switch from defence to attack, and that's probably the reason Adams missed 29...\textit{d6}.

I would have struck earlier with the Kengis-style 12...\textit{e5} and defended that very slightly worse but entirely tenable position.

\textbf{Summary}

The Kengis Variation is completely playable right up to World Championship level. As Kengis himself showed, his line can take down anyone from club players to 2500 GMs. Above that level, one needs precise play to make the draw with Black, and nothing more is rationally possible. The Kengis is a realistic line; Black must be willing to take some draws (see Game 21), but there are rich chances to outplay most of the foes you will actually meet, using the hard-earned strategical ideas of Kengis and Larsen.
Chapter Four

Modern Variation III: Vikings Board the Alekhine Longboat

Our Hero: Magnus Carlsen

Continuing the exploration of our repertoire in the critical Modern Line, after 1 e4 \( \text{\textit{d}} \text{f6} \) 2 e5 \( \text{\textit{d}} \text{d5} \) 3 d4 d6 4 \( \text{\textit{f}} \text{f3} \) dxe5 5 \( \text{\textit{x}} \text{xe5} \) it's also possible to play 5...c6, currently favoured by Magnus Carlsen.

In this line Black is not committed to a kingside fianchetto – sometimes the bishop does come out this way, as we saw in Game 1, but it might also develop on the a3-f8 diagonal, usually e7 though sometimes d6. Another advantage, besides this flexibility, is that there is no potential check on a4, which can be important in early \( \text{\textit{b}} \text{b4} \) lines.

On the other hand the disadvantage of 5...c6 is equally obvious: unlike 5...g6 it does not prepare to develop a piece.

5...c6 was first introduced to high-level play by the late GM Tony Miles, and it’s often called the Miles Variation. The first game of the chapter shows a typical Miles strategy – but there are some difficulties associated with this line. Then Carlsen developed an important strategical improvement, and the remaining games of the chapter feature Carlsen’s ideas, as well as two of his extremely high-level encounters: vs. Shirov and Anand.

It is because of his deep improvements and new strategical ideas that I have named the new and improved 5...c6 variation after Carlsen.

\[ \text{Game 27} \]
\[ \text{M.Carlsen-T.Taylor} \]
\[ \text{Los Angeles 2004} \]

1 e4 \( \text{\textit{d}} \text{f6} \) 2 e5 \( \text{\textit{d}} \text{d5} \) 3 d4 d6 4 \( \text{\textit{f}} \text{f3} \) dxe5 5 \( \text{\textit{x}} \text{xe5} \)
\[ \text{\( \text{\textit{\textbf{\textdollar}}xe5 \text{c6 6 \textdollarc4} \)} \]}

This looks even more harmless here than in the Kengis – after all, the knight on d5 is already protected – but is still the most popular move for White, which I’ll examine in this and the next two games.

We saw 6 \( \text{\textdollard3} \) in Game 1 and I’ll take another look in Game 30. The direct 6 \( \text{c4} \) is much weaker here than in the Kengis – see Games 31 and 32. The quiet 6 \( \text{\textdollard2} \) gives the same nothing – see Game 33; and while 6 \( \text{g3} \) was dangerous vs. the Kengis, it’s not much with the pawn on c6 already blocking – see Game 34. Finally, the best move, approved by Kasparov and Anand, the poisonously quiet 6 \( \text{\textdollarf2} \) (as in the Kengis, White does well to keep his king’s bishop back) will be covered in the final three games of this chapter – Games 35-37.

6 \( \text{\textdollarf3} \), which led to a sharp draw vs. the Kengis (see Game 21), is one move that doesn’t deserve a full game. Here this crude approach gives less than nothing, as the diagonal to b7 is blocked. Black just plays 6...\( \text{\textdollar e6} \) 7 \( \text{c3} \) (7 \( \text{c4} \), analogous to said game, just loses a pawn here: 7...\( \text{\textdollarb4} \) 8 \( \text{\textdollarc3} \) \( \text{\textdollarxd4!} \) 7...\( \text{\textdollar d7} \) 8 \( \text{\textdollard3} \) \( \text{g6} \) (a typical transposition from Carlsen to the Kengis, which is why I must again make the point that that the Alekhine player who wants to play Kengis or Carlsen must actually learn both, as they constantly transpose into each other) 9 0-0 \( \text{\textdollar g7} \) 10 \( \text{\textdollarxd7} \) \( \text{\textdollarxd7} \) 11 \( \text{h3} \) \( \text{\textdollarf5!} \) 12 \( \text{\textdollar d2} \) (if 12 \( \text{\textdollarxf5} \) \( \text{\textdollarxf5} \) 13 \( \text{\textdollarxf5} \) gxf5 and the ending is good for Black who has the better bishop and the g-file) 12...\( \text{\textdollarxd3} \) 13 \( \text{\textdollarxd3} \) 0-0 14 \( \text{\textdollar d3} \) \( \text{\textdollar f8} \) 15 \( \text{\textdollar e1} \) \( \text{\textdollar ac8} \) 16 \( \text{\textdollar e4} \) \( \text{c5} \) and Black broke in classic Kengis style and went on to win in A.Abreu Delgado-A.Mirzoev, Padrun 2003.

6...\( \text{\textdollar d7} \)

It’s worth quoting Larsen again: “the idea should be to win back the ‘lost’ tempo by exchange threats against the white knight.” This knight development characterizes both the old Miles and new Carlsen Variations, but it’s not the only move. The true lazy man’s line is 6...\( \text{g6!?} \), transposing straight back to the Kengis, as we already know 6 \( \text{\textdollarc4} \) is harmless against that.

- But don’t try the careless 6...\( \text{\textdollarf5?} \) as you will be bopped on the head by the typical sac: 7 \( \text{\textdollarxf7!} \) \( \text{\textdollarxf7} \) 8 \( \text{\textdollarf3} \), when White wins the piece back or generates a winning attack as in M.Boehnisch-H.Packroff, World Seniors Ch., Naumburg 2002.
7 \textit{\&}f3

The standard move: White tries to keep pieces on to accentuate his slight space advantage. A GM-GM encounter did feature 7 0-0, but after 7...\textit{\&}xe5 8 dxe5 \textit{\&}f5 9 \textit{\&}d2 e6 10 a3 \textit{\&}e7 11 a2 0-0 12 \textit{\&}b3 \textit{\&}c7 13 \textit{\&}e2 \textit{\&}ad8 Black was already a little better due to his strong knight on d5 in A.Yermolinsky-A.Shabalov, New York 1993.

7...\textit{\&}7b6

This is the older Miles variation, which is not at all bad, though Black has to be careful about his lightly protected kingside. Our next game features Carlsen himself playing the modern 7...\textit{\&}7f6 which covers the kingside more economically.

8 \textit{\&}b3 \textit{\&}g4 9 h3

The game K.Van der Weide-A.Miles, European Ch., Saint Vincent 2000, continued 9 \textit{\&}bd2 e6 10 0-0 \textit{\&}e7 11 h3 \textit{\&}h5 12 c3 0-0 13 \textit{\&}e4 \textit{\&}g6 14 \textit{\&}e2 \textit{\&}d7 15 \textit{\&}e1 a5 16 a4 \textit{\&}e8 17 \textit{\&}c4 \textit{\&}c7 18 \textit{\&}g5 \textit{\&}xg5 19 \textit{\&}exg5 h6 20 \textit{\&}e4 \textit{\&}ad8 21 \textit{\&}ad1 \textit{\&}5b6 22 \textit{\&}b3 e5 23 \textit{\&}g3 e4 24 \textit{\&}h4 \textit{\&}h7 and now instead of 25 \textit{\&}h5?! \textit{\&}f6! (when Black made up for his 7th move and held his kingside together, while offering White only a rather indigestible pawn on a5), White could have seized the advantage with 25 \textit{\&}h5!, which prevents ...\textit{\&}f6 and gives White a very dangerous attack with the coming \textit{\&}g4.

In the main game I run into similar kingside problems – this is why, Carlsen style, we should put the knight on f6 on move 7!

9...\textit{\&}h5

Note that in an analogous position from the Kengis, Black would have to exchange on f3 here, as the pawn on g6 would block a bishop retreat.

10 0-0 e6

The king’s bishop tries a different diagonal.

11 \textit{\&}e1 \textit{\&}e7 12 \textit{\&}bd2

After 12 c3 0-0 13 \textit{\&}bd2 \textit{\&}c7 14 \textit{\&}e4 \textit{\&}ad8 15 \textit{\&}g3 \textit{\&}g6 16 \textit{\&}e5 c5 Black got in this typical freeing move at the cost of the two bishops in S.Mannon-J.Shaw, Clarkston 2002. One should note that the bishop on e7 is more pas-
sive than on g7, so the ...c5 break doesn’t do as much as in the Kengis – one sees there are slight advantages and disadvantages to both lines. As one might expect, in Mannion-Shaw White obtained a very slight advantage but the game was eventually drawn – whether Kengis or Carlsen, many well-played games in these variations end only in draws.

**12...0-0 13  Qed4 Qf6 14 Qxf6+ Qxf6 15 c3**

The b3-g8 diagonal blows up, White’s light-squared bishop becomes very strong, and Black is much worse.

**17...h6 18 g5 hxg5 19 hxg5 Qe7 20 h4!**

White’s attack – Black needs a knight, not a bishop on f6.

**15...Qc7?**

I simply underestimated the coming attack. The problem is that Black’s only knight (remember 7...Q7b6) is far away from the kingside. Correct is 15...Qxf3! 16 Qxf3 Qg5, eliminating White’s main attacking pieces (and clearing a square for ...Qd5-f6). This accurate defensive manoeuvre would leave White with only a marginal advantage – though it’s true that Black would have no real winning chances and would have to aim consistently for the draw.

**16 g4! Qg6 17 h4!**

There is already no good answer to
A great practical try, as 25...\textit{\textbar}h4 26 \textit{\textbar}e3 just leaves White a pawn up for nothing.

\textbf{26 \textit{\textbar}xd5+!}

White finds the correct solution ...for now! Worse is 26 \textit{\textbar}xf2 \textit{\textbar}h2+ 27 \textit{\textbar}f3 \textit{\textbar}f8+ 28 \textit{\textbar}e4 \textit{\textbar}h4+ 29 \textit{\textbar}f4 \textit{\textbar}f6 (not 29...\textit{\textbar}xf4? 30 \textit{\textbar}d3 \textit{\textbar}h3+ 31 \textit{\textbar}c2 \textit{\textbar}f2+ 32 \textit{\textbar}c1 when Black runs out of checks) 30 \textit{\textbar}e8+ (White must avoid 30 \textit{\textbar}g1? \textit{\textbar}h7+ 31 \textit{\textbar}f3 \textit{\textbar}d3+ 32 \textit{\textbar}e3 \textit{\textbar}xf4+ 33 \textit{\textbar}g3 \textit{\textbar}g6+ 34 \textit{\textbar}h2 \textit{\textbar}h4+ 35 \textit{\textbar}h3 \textit{\textbar}d6+ 36 \textit{\textbar}h1 \textit{\textbar}xh3+ 37 \textit{\textbar}h2 \textit{\textbar}xh2 mate) 30...\textit{\textbar}xf8 31 \textit{\textbar}g6 \textit{\textbar}f6 with a draw.

\textbf{26...\textit{\textbar}cxd5 27 \textit{\textbar}xf2 \textit{\textbar}h4+}

Not 27...\textit{\textbar}h2?? 28 \textit{\textbar}e3 \textit{\textbar}f8 29 \textit{\textbar}e2 \textit{\textbar}h3+ 30 \textit{\textbar}d2 and White escapes.

\textbf{28 \textit{\textbar}g2 \textit{\textbar}xe1 29 \textit{\textbar}e6+ \textit{\textbar}f7 30 \textit{\textbar}xe1 \textit{\textbar}f8}

30...\textit{\textbar}e8 31 \textit{\textbar}g3 \textit{\textbar}e2+ 32 \textit{\textbar}g1 wins for White, but now Black threatens to win with 31...\textit{\textbar}f3+ and 32...\textit{\textbar}f5 – but there is an answer!

\textbf{31 \textit{\textbar}f4?}

I escape! The text blocks the mating attack, but only draws.

It was hard to see this over the board, but White wins with 31 \textit{\textbar}g5!! \textit{\textbar}f3+ (or 31...\textit{\textbar}g6 32 \textit{\textbar}g3 \textit{\textbar}c2+ 33 \textit{\textbar}h1 and Black is done) 32 \textit{\textbar}h2 \textit{\textbar}f7 (if 32...\textit{\textbar}h5+ 33 \textit{\textbar}h4 \textit{\textbar}e2+ 34 \textit{\textbar}h1 \textit{\textbar}f3+ 35 \textit{\textbar}g1 wins) 33 \textit{\textbar}g3 \textit{\textbar}h8+ 34 \textit{\textbar}h4! (the key defensive block) 34...\textit{\textbar}e2+ 35 \textit{\textbar}g1 and Black is doomed.

\textbf{31...\textit{\textbar}xf4 32 \textit{\textbar}e6+ \textit{\textbar}f7 33 \textit{\textbar}c8+ \textit{\textbar}f8}

33...\textit{\textbar}h7 34 \textit{\textbar}h1+ \textit{\textbar}g6 35 \textit{\textbar}e6+ also draws.

\textbf{34 \textit{\textbar}e6+ \textit{\textbar}f7 35 \textit{\textbar}c8+ ½-½}

Given the kingside dangers faced by Miles and myself, let’s move on to the modern treatment with the knight on f6.

\textbf{Game 28}

\textbf{A. Shirov - M. Carlsen}

\textbf{World Blitz Championship, Moscow 2007}

\textbf{1 e4 \textit{\textbar}f6}

I’m not a fan of blitz games in books, but this game and Game 36 are of such theoretical importance, and between such great players, that I had to include them.

\textbf{2 e5 \textit{\textbar}d5 3 d4 d6 4 \textit{\textbar}f3 dxe5 5 \textit{\textbar}xe5 c6 6 \textit{\textbar}c4 \textit{\textbar}d7 7 \textit{\textbar}f3 \textit{\textbar}f6}

The modern way: Black secures his kingside against the kind of attack that occurred in the last game, and the queen’s knight aims at the central square e4 rather than the easy tempo off the c4-bishop, which is probably somewhat misplaced anyway.
8 h3 \textit{xf5 9 0-0 e6 10 g5}

In the next game we’ll see White wait with 10 b3.

10...\textit{e7 11 bd2 h6}

\textbf{12 xf6?!}

More logical is 12 h4 when Black has three good choices:

a) He can go wild with 12...g5 13 g3 \textit{f4 14 e1 g8} with sharp counterplay.

b) He can play it safe with 12...0-0 13 e1 a5 14 c3 a4 15 a3 b5 16 a2 c7 with equality.

c) He can bore his opponent to death with 12...e4 13 xe7 xe7 14 xe4 xe4 15 e1 f5 with a dead

even Caro-Kann type position (though he could liven things up at the last minute with 15...xf3 16 xf3 0-0-0?).

It’s clear already that Black has no problems in the opening.

12...\textit{xf6 13 c3 0-0 14 b3 c5}

Not just a Kengis break, a Carlsen break as well! I don’t know what the idea was behind the unforced surrender of the bishop pair, but Black is already comfortable and, after one slight error, will be clearly better.

15 c2 xc2 16 xc2 c8 17 b3 c7 18 fe1 fd8 19 ad1 cxd4 20 xd4 c5

Now that Black has cleared off the
white centre, the dark-squared bishop (just as in the Kengis) assumes an active role, albeit on a different diagonal. In this case, the white king is at least slightly menaced.

21...\textit{2f3} \textit{d5} 22 c4?!

Here’s that second mistake: White weakens the key diagonal.

Correct is to play for a draw with 22 \textit{b5} – not very Shirovian, but necessary. In every variation Black can repeat, but it’s hard to find something more: 22...\textit{g3} (22...\textit{b6} 23 \textit{bd4} and 22...\textit{a5} 23 \textit{dx5} \textit{xd5} 24 \textit{bd4} are similar) 23 \textit{bd4} \textit{d6} 24 \textit{b5} etc.

22...\textit{d7} 23 \textit{b5} \textit{b6} 24 \textit{e2} \textit{xd1+} 25 \textit{xd1} \textit{xf2}+!!

\textit{xc2} 35 \textit{d6} \textit{d2} 36 \textit{e3} \textit{h2} 37 \textit{xb7} \textit{xh3+} 38 \textit{e2} e5 39 \textit{f3} e4 40 \textit{d2} f5

The black army ants begin an unstoppable advance.

41 b4 \textit{f4} 42 \textit{d6} \textit{h2+} 43 \textit{e1} e3 44 \textit{f3} \textit{b2} 45 \textit{b5} g5 46 \textit{e5} h5 47 \textit{d3} \textit{b3} 48 \textit{c5} \textit{b1+} 49 \textit{e2} h4 50 \textit{e6} h3 0-1

One sees from this game that the “active” development of White’s bishops – \textit{c4} and \textit{g5} – is not dangerous for Black; indeed, White has to be careful, as slight errors can be fatal.

\textit{Game 29}
I. Smirin-H. Nakamura
Philadelphia 2009

1 \textit{e4} \textit{f6} 2 \textit{e5} \textit{d5} 3 \textit{d4} d6 4 \textit{f3} dx\textit{e}5 5 \textit{dx}e5 c6 6 \textit{c4} \textit{d7} 7 \textit{f3} \textit{f6} 8 h3 \textit{f5} 9 0-0 \textit{e6}

10 \textit{b3}

We saw in the previous game that the “active” 10 \textit{g5} led to nothing or less, so Smirin waits, looking especially to see which side Black will castle.
Meanwhile, Mr. Fritz has an interesting suggestion: the evil one gives 10 \( \text{d}3 \) as its number one pick, which is completely illogical to human eyes, but has a computer point to it: Black’s light-squared bishop is stronger than White’s, so exchange! But if in fact this is the best move, then 6 \( \text{c}4 \) makes no sense whatsoever.

Another alternative could be risky: 10 \( \text{h}4 \text{g}6 \) 11 \( \text{x}g6 \text{hx}g6 \), since Black might play as in some lines of the Caro-Kann with \( ...\text{c}7 \text{ and } ...0-0-0 \), with attacking possibilities down the h-file.

10...\( \text{d}6 \)

Black has an active development and nothing to fear.

11 \( \text{bd}2 \)

White also got nothing with the seemingly more active 11 \( \text{c}4 \) in S.Kindermann-S.Loeffler, German League 2007: 11...\( \text{e}7 \) 12 \( \text{c}3 \) \( \text{h}6 \) 13 \( \text{c}2 \) – I have to interrupt the game here to note that White just spent three moves to exchange the bishops (\( \text{c}4 \text{-b}3 \text{-c}2 \)) – maybe Fritz was right! In any case such slow manoeuvres can’t hurt Black, and once again one sees that keeping the light-squared bishop back is White’s most dangerous weapon. After 13...0-0 14 \( \text{b}3 \) \( \text{a}5 \) 15 \( \text{b}2 \) \( \text{fd}8 \) 16 \( \text{e}2 \) \( \text{xc}2 \) 17 \( \text{xc}2 \) \( \text{f}5 \) 18 \( \text{xf}5 \) \( \text{xf}5 \) Black had no problems and went on to draw.

11...0-0 12 \( \text{h}4 \)

Now that Black has castled, White can play this safely; he expects 12...\( \text{g}6 \) but Nakamura shows a new idea.

12...\( \text{e}7! \) 13 \( \text{xf}5 \) \( \text{xf}5 \)

Black’s repositioned knight is ideally placed to pressurize the white centre.

14 \( \text{c}3 \) \( \text{c}5! \) \( \frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2} \)

The GMs took their quick draw, but... Black is certainly at least equal, I would say a little better. Here are some sample (unforced) variations that come to Black’s advantage. Maybe White can hold, but it’s not good that White must be looking for a draw by move 14!: 15 \( \text{dx}c5 \) (after 15 \( \text{f}3 \) \( \text{a}5 \) 16 \( \text{d}3 \) \( \text{ad}8 \) 17 \( \text{d}5 \) \( \text{b}5 \) 18 \( \text{c}4 \) \( \text{xc}4 \) 19 \( \text{xc}4 \) \( \text{xd}5 \) 20 \( \text{xd}5 \) \( \text{e}7 \) Black wins a pawn) 15...\( \text{xc}5 \) 16 \( \text{f}3 \) \( \text{c}7 \) 17 \( \text{c}4 \) (if 17 \( \text{e}4? \), 17...\( \text{xe}4 \) 18 \( \text{xe}4 \) \( \text{g}3 \) wins the
exchange) 17...\( \text{\textit{c6}} \) 18 \( \text{\textit{e3}} \) \( \text{\textit{dxe3}} \) 19 \( \text{\textit{exe3}} \) \( \text{\textit{cxe3}} \) 20 \( \text{\textit{fxe3}} \) \( \text{\textit{e3d8}} \) 21 \( \text{\textit{e4}} \) \( \text{\textit{g3}} \) 22 \( \text{\textit{ffe1}} \) \( \text{\textit{e5}} \) 23 \( \text{\textit{ee3}} \) \( \text{\textit{h5}} \) and Black is slightly better in view of White's isolated e-pawn.

It's evident that 6 \( \text{\textit{c4}} \) is harmless against either the Kengis or Carlsen Variations.

\begin{center}
\textbf{Game 30}
J.Kleiman-A.Ramirez
Chicago 2007
\end{center}

1 \( \text{\textit{e4}} \) \( \text{\textit{f6}} \) 2 \( \text{\textit{e5}} \) \( \text{\textit{d5}} \) 3 \( \text{\textit{d4}} \) \( \text{\textit{d6}} \) 4 \( \text{\textit{f3}} \) \( \text{\textit{dxe5}} \) 5 \( \text{\textit{dxe5}} \) \( \text{\textit{c6}} \) 6 \( \text{\textit{d3}} \) \( \text{\textit{d7}} \)

\begin{center}
\textbf{\( \text{\textit{xd1 g6}} \)}
Black should not lash out like the young Carlsen: after 10...\( \text{\textit{f5?!}} \) (depriving Black of a later ...\( \text{\textit{f7-f6}} \) break – pawns can't move backwards!) 11 \( \text{\textit{a3}} \) \( \text{\textit{a6}} \) 12 \( \text{\textit{f3}} \) \( \text{\textit{g6}} \) 13 \( \text{\textit{d2}} \) \( \text{\textit{e6}} \) 14 \( \text{\textit{e2}} \) \( \text{\textit{c7}} \) 15 \( \text{\textit{f3}} \) \( \text{\textit{d5}} \) 16 \( \text{\textit{d4}} \) \( \text{\textit{g7}} \) 17 \( \text{\textit{c4}} \) \( \text{\textit{f7}} \) 18 \( \text{\textit{f4}} \) Black was cramped and eventually lost in E.Sutovsky-M.Carlsen, European Club Cup, Rethymnon 2003.

11 \( \text{\textit{a3}} \) \( \text{\textit{a6}} \) 12 \( \text{\textit{b4}} \)

Black can gradually equalize (as Morozevich has advised in similar positions) after 12 \( \text{\textit{e3}} \) \( \text{\textit{g7}} \) 13 \( \text{\textit{f4}} \) 0-0 14 \( \text{\textit{c3}} \) \( \text{\textit{c7}} \) 15 \( \text{\textit{d3}} \) \( \text{\textit{e6}} \) (patience! Fritz wants the wild 15...\( \text{\textit{g5}} \), but after 16 \( \text{\textit{g3}} \) this weakens Black more than White) 16 \( \text{\textit{ad1}} \) \( \text{\textit{f6}} \) (the key break that Carlsen never had) 17 \( \text{\textit{exf6}} \) \( \text{\textit{xf6}} \) 18 \( \text{\textit{g3}} \) \( \text{\textit{f6}} \) 19 \( \text{\textit{d4}} \) \( \text{\textit{f7}} \) 20 \( \text{\textit{g2}} \) \( \text{\textit{ed8}} \) 21 \( \text{\textit{h3}} \) \( \text{\textit{f5}} \) 22 \( \text{\textit{xf5}} \) \( \text{\textit{gx5}} \), when Black was solid and eventually drew in A.Jurkovic-H.Tarakcija, Bosnjaci 2004.

12...\( \text{\textit{g7}} \)

In general in the Kengis/Carlsen lines, this move should win a tempo, as White usually retreats back to \( \text{\textit{f3}} \). Black also gains if White takes on \( \text{\textit{d7}} \) (Game 1) as the exchange develops Black and eases his slightly cramped position.

If White doesn't retreat, as here, Black should be able to equalize by exchanges (recall the Shabalov game – note to move 7 in Game 27).

\begin{center}
7 \( \text{\textit{0-0}} \) \( \text{\textit{exe5}} \) 8 \( \text{\textit{dxe5}} \) \( \text{\textit{b4}} \) 9 \( \text{\textit{e4}} \) \( \text{\textit{xd1}} \) 10
\end{center}

White seems to be better, and the computer evaluates it as such ...but there's nothing tangible. Black can
slowly prepare the key break with ...f7-f6. The young, but very strong Costa Rican GM shows how it’s done.

13 b2 c7 14 d2 g4 15 f3 d8

Black’s king needs to be in the centre to defend his position. He could lose after the natural but dubious 15...0-0 16 h3 e6 (16...xf3 17 xf3 is about the same) 17 g5, when White gets the two bishops and something to play for.

16 xxd8+ xxd8 17 g5 e8 18 a4 h6 19 f3 e6 20 b5 d5 21 xd5 cxd5 22 d4 a6 23 bxa6 bxa6 24 b1 d7 25 b6 c8

37 d4+ d7 38 exf6 xf6 39 d3

Correct; White must allow the ...e6-e5 advance, for if 39 f4 xxd4! 40 cxd4 c7 41 d3 c6 42 c3 b5 43 b3 e8 and Black has winning chances with the superior minor piece.

39...e5 40 c2 c7 41 c4 c6

After 41...e4+ Black is a shade better but not enough to win; e.g. 42 e3 dxc4 43 xe4 c6 44 d4+ xd4 45 xd4 b5 46 d2 h5 47 f3 e6+ 48 d5 c5 49 g4 b3 50 e1 xa5 51 gxh5 gxh5 52 xa5 xa5 53 xc4 b6 54 b4 h4 55 h3 c6 56 a5 d6 57 xa6 e5 58 b6 f4 59 c5 xf3 60 d4 g3 61 e3 xh3 62 f3 and draws.

42 cxd5+ xd5 43 c4 d8 44 d2 h5 45 f3 c7 46 e1 f6 47 d3 e4 48 c5?!

48 fxe4 xe4 49 f4 xa5 50 e5+ b7 51 xg6 d8 is a dead draw.

48...exf3 49 gxf3 xh2 50 xa6 d5 51 c5 h4 52 e4 g1 53 d3 h3 54 e2

26 c3

The trick 26 e6+ fails to 26...xe6 27 xe6 xd4! 28 xa6 xc2.

26...e6 27 f1

Not 27 xa6 xd4 28 xd4 xe5 and Black breaks through on the long diagonal, Kengis style.

27 c6 28 b7+ d8 29 a7 c7 30 b7 c8 31 b6 xb6 32 xb6 b7 33 c5 e6 34 e2 a8 35 a5 c6 36 b4 f6!

Did I say “slowly prepare” back on move 12? The time is now! Black fully equalizes and soon takes over the initiative.
In the previous game we saw White play a quiet line and gradual equalization ensued. The much higher rated player could not win due to the drawish nature of the position. Fortunately, this is not the only kind of Alekhine’s experience you will have. Many people simply believe the defence is unsound, and will attempt – as my opponent does in this game – to wipe it off the board! Then the Alekhine comes into its own as a counter-attacking system. In general, the harder White plays for a quick win, the better Black’s winning chances are!

2 e5 d5 3 d4 d6 4 f3 dxe5 5 fxe5 c6 6 c4 c7

6...b4 is sharper and stronger – see the next game. But this retreat perhaps emboldened my opponent to “refute” my “bad opening” right now!

7 c3 g6

Note that what started as a Carlsen is now more of a Kengis.

8 e3 g7 9 f4

This go for broke move is just what the Alekhine player wants – now we...
can counter-attack!

On the other hand, the following two GM vs. GM encounters feature a different, and far more terrifying strategy than bluntly playing for mate: White goes for the dreaded plus equals and squeezes. In one of the games, GM Tseshkovsky makes a draw after careful defence; in the other, GM Miles impatiently sacrifices his queen and is mercilessly ground down over many moves. I’ll face the kingside attack any day!

a) 9 \( \text{\ prosecution} \) 10 f4 0-0 11 0-0 \( \text{\xe5} \)
12 dx5 \( \text{\xd1} \) 13 \( \text{\xd1} \) f6 14 exf6 exf6
15 \( \text{\f3} \) \( \text{\e8} \) 16 \( \text{\f2} \) a6 17 \( \text{\e4} \) f5
18 \( \text{\d6} \) \( \text{\d8} \) b3 \( \text{\f8} \) 20 \( \text{\xc8} \) \( \text{\xc8} \)
21 \( \text{\g4} \) \( \text{\xg4} \) \( \text{\c7} \) 23 \( \text{\d4} \) \( \text{\c5} \) 24
\( \text{\xc5} \) \( \text{\xc5} \) 25 \( \text{\fe1} \) \( \text{\g8} \) 26 \( \text{\g3} \) \( \text{\g7} \) 27
\( \text{\e3} \) a6 28 c5 b4 29 a6 \( \text{\g5} \) 30 \( \text{\g5} \)
S.Dolmatov-V.Tseshkovsky, Russian Team Ch. 2001.

b) 9 \( \text{\e2} \) 0-0 10 0-0 c5 11 \( \text{\f3} \) cxd4
12 \( \text{\xd4} \) \( \text{\h6} \) 13 \( \text{\c5} \) \( \text{\c6} \) 14 \( \text{\d5} \) \( \text{\e8} \)
(the dreaded plus equals!) 15 \( \text{\b3} \) e6
16 \( \text{\d3} \) a6 17 \( \text{\fd1} \) \( \text{\xc5} \) (or 17...\( \text{\wha5} \)
18 \( \text{\d6} \) with annoying pressure; but now White gets a technical position with a material advantage – one sees a long grind coming!) 18 \( \text{\xd8} \) \( \text{\xd8} \) 19
\( \text{\wa3} \) b6 20 \( \text{\b4} \) e4 21 c5 bxc5 22 bx\( \text{\xc5} \) \( \text{\g7} \) 23 \( \text{\xc1} \) \( \text{\b7} \) 24 \( \text{\d3} \) \( \text{\f6} \) 25 \( \text{\a6} \)
\( \text{\ab8} \) 26 \( \text{\xb7} \) \( \text{\xb7} \) 27 g3 \( \text{\d5} \) 28 \( \text{\c4} \)
\( \text{\db8} \) 29 \( \text{\g2} \) h6 30 \( \text{\wa4} \) \( \text{\de7} \) 31 \( \text{\c2} \)
\( \text{\bb4} \) 32 \( \text{\wa3} \) \( \text{\bb5} \) 33 \( \text{\d6} \) a5 34 \( \text{\d3} \)
\( \text{\d5} \) 35 a3 \( \text{\bb8} \) 36 h4 \( \text{\a4} \) 37 \( \text{\c4} \) \( \text{\xc4} \)
38 \( \text{\xc4} \) \( \text{\bb2} \) 39 \( \text{\wa4} \) \( \text{\de7} \) 40 \( \text{\b5} \) a5
41 \( \text{\d6} \) \( \text{\b8} \) 42 \( \text{\c4} \) \( \text{\f6} \) 43 \( \text{\h2} \) \( \text{\d4} \)
44 \( \text{\f3} \) \( \text{\f6} \) 45 \( \text{\b5} \) \( \text{\d8} \) 46 \( \text{\f4} \) \( \text{\g7} \)
\( \text{\d6} \) \( \text{\f8} \) 48 g4 \( \text{\b2} \) 49 \( \text{\hd2} \) a1 50
\( \text{\c1} \) \( \text{\d4} \) 51 \( \text{\xd4} \) \( \text{\xd4} \) 52 \( \text{\c3} \) \( \text{\ec6} \)
53 \( \text{\c4} \) \( \text{\a8} \) 54 \( \text{\e5} \) \( \text{\g8} \) 55 \( \text{\xc6} \) \( \text{\xc6} \)
56 \( \text{\d3} \) \( \text{\d8} \) 57 \( \text{\wa6} \) \( \text{\e7} \) 58 \( \text{\xa5} \) \( \text{\d4} \)
59 \( \text{\g3} \) \( \text{\d5} \) 60 \( \text{\wb5} \) \( \text{\d1} \) 61 \( \text{\wb8} \) \( \text{\g7} \)
62 c6 \( \text{\d2} \) 63 \( \text{\wb3} \) \( \text{\d4} \) 64 a4 h5 65
\( \text{\gxh5} \) \( \text{\gxh5} \) 66 c7 \( \text{\g4} \) + 67 \( \text{\h3} \) \( \text{\xc7} \) 68
\( \text{\c3} \) + \( \text{\g8} \) 69 \( \text{\xc7} \) \( \text{\xa4} \) 70 \( \text{\d8} \) + \( \text{\h7} \)
71 \( \text{\wg5} \) \( \text{\a3} \) + 72 \( \text{\h2} \) \( \text{\d3} \) 73 \( \text{\wxh5} \)
\( \text{\g7} \) 74 \( \text{\g5} \) + \( \text{\f8} \) 75 h5 \( \text{\d5} \) 76 \( \text{\wg4} \)
\( \text{\f5} \) 77 h6 \( \text{\xf2} \) + 78 \( \text{\g1} \) \( \text{\f6} \) 79 \( \text{\wg7} \)
\( \text{\xe7} \) 80 h7 1-0 Gil.Hernandez-A.Miles,

9...0-0 10 \( \text{\wd2} \) \( \text{\d7} \) 11 0-0-0 \( \text{\xe5} \) 12
\( \text{\fxe5} b5! \)

The counter-attack begins! This is a very common Alekhine break, often as a pawn sacrifice, when White sets up the centre with c4 and d4.

Here it turns out that the white king is not so safe either. Note that the position of the knight on c7 (allowed by the early c-pawn move) makes this move possible, as opposed to positions with the knight on b6.

13 \( \text{\h4} \)
Accepting Black’s sacrifice is too dangerous: 13 cxb5 cxb5 14 ∆xb5 (or 14 ∆xb5 ∆xb5 15 ∆xb5 ∆f5 with a tremendous attack against White’s cut off king) 14...∆xb5 15 ∆xb5 ∆d5 and White has no good answer to the double attack on b5 and a2.

13...h5 14 ∆e2 c5
14...bxc4 15 g4 ∆xg4 16 ∆xg4 hxg4 17 h5 looked dangerous for me, so I blew up White’s centre with this typical Kengis counter.

15 d5

Stronger is 15 ∆f3! ∆b8 16 dxc5 ∆xd2+ 17 ∆xd2 bxc4 18 c6 with a better endgame for White, but that was not the sort of game my opponent wanted.

15...∆xe5

16 ∆xc5

After 16 cxb5 ∆b7 17 ∆xc5 ∆c8 Black has compensatory play against the king.

16...bxc4 17 g4

Optimistic! White is true to himself and plays for attack, though 17 ∆xc4 with equality is simpler.

17...∆xg4 18 ∆xg4 hxg4 19 h5 ∆d7 20 ∆d4

White misses his chance! 20 ∆e3!, attacking the bishop and eyeing h6, is very dangerous.

20...∆xd4 21 ∆xd4 g5 22 h6 f6

This was nerve-wracking to defend, but there’s still no mate!

23 d6 exd6 24 ∆e4 ∆e7 25 ∆xd6 ∆e6!

The first of three strong counter-attacking moves by the Alekhine knight!

26 ∆d5

Since 26 ∆xc4 ∆c7 27 ∆xc7 ∆xc7 28 ∆dg1 ∆ad8 29 ∆f5 ∆fe8 ends in Black’s favour, White continues to throw everything at my king.

26...∆ad8 27 ∆f5 ∆f7 28 h7+ ∆h8 29 ∆h6 ∆e7 30 ∆f5 ∆d4!
And here’s the second counterblow. In the following variation one might think White has a mating attack against the trapped black king, but Black’s counter comes first! 31 \( \text{Nh}x\text{d}4 \text{Nh}x\text{d}4 \text{Nh}x\text{d}4 \text{Nh}x\text{d}4 \text{Nh}x\text{d}4 \) (threatening \( \text{Wg}8+ \) and mate) 32 \( \text{Wg}6 \) (32 \( \text{Wb}1 \) \( \text{Qd}3+ \) gets the queens off and Black wins) 33 \( \text{Nh}d2+ \) 34 \( \text{Nh}c1 \text{Nh}h2+! \) and Black mates.

\[ 31 \text{Wg}6 \]

The game reaches its crisis: White has a passed pawn on the seventh and a seemingly irresistible attack – but all is maya, as only the Alekhine counter-attack is real.

\[ 31...\text{Ne}2+ 32 \text{Nh}c2 \text{Nh}f4!! \]

Completing the loop with the third crushing knight move. Black is better as the white attack falls just short: 33 \( \text{Nh}f7+ \text{Nh}xh7 \) (but not 33...\( \text{Wxh}7 \)?? 34 \( \text{Wxh}7 \) and White wins as the back rank collapses and the passed h-pawn goes through) 34 \( \text{Wxh}7 \) \( \text{We}4+ \) 35 \( \text{Nh}c3 \) (or 35 \( \text{Nh}c1 \) \( \text{Nh}e2 \) mate) 35...\( \text{Wxh}7+ \) (the black queen gains room to manoeuvre on the fourth rank and the white king is hopelessly exposed: mate is forced) 36 \( \text{Nh}c2 \) (if 36 \( \text{Nh}xg4 \) \( \text{Nh}c8 \) and Black mates in seven) 36...\( \text{Wf}5+ \) 37 \( \text{Nh}c3 \) \( \text{Nh}e2+ \) 38 \( \text{Nh}xg4 \) \( \text{Nh}c8+ \) 39 \( \text{Nh}b4 \) \( \text{Nh}b8+ \) 40 \( \text{Nh}a4 \) (or 40 \( \text{Nh}c4 \) \( \text{Nh}b5 \) mate) 40...\( \text{Nh}b5+ \) 41 \( \text{Nh}a3 \) \( \text{Nh}b4 \) mate.

\[ 33 \text{Wg}8+ \]

There is nothing else.

\[ 33...\text{Nh}g8 34 \text{Nhxg}8+ \text{Nh}xg8 35 \text{Nh}f5+ \text{Nh}h7 \]

The defence rests!

\[ 36 \text{Nh}xh7+ \text{Nh}h7 37 \text{Nh}d7+ \text{Nh}8 \]

\[ 38 \text{Nh}xh7 \]

Black wins beautifully after 38 \( \text{Nh}h6 \) \( g3 \) 39 \( \text{Nh}xg8 \) \( \text{Nh}xg8 \) (but not 39...\( g2 \)?? 40 \( \text{Nh}xh6+ \) with a terrible reversal!) 40 \( \text{Nh}d1 \) \( g2 \) 41 \( \text{Nh}g1 \) \( \text{Nh}f7 \) 42 \( \text{Nh}d2 \) \( \text{Nh}e6 \) 43 \( \text{Nh}e3 \) \( \text{Nh}f5 \) 44 \( \text{Nh}f3 \) \( g4+ \) 45 \( \text{Nh}e3 \) \( \text{Nh}e5 \) 46 \( a3 \) \( f5 \) 47 \( a4 \) \( a5 \) and White perishes due to zugzwang.

\[ 38...\text{Nh}e8 39 \text{Nh}a4 \]

There are no saves: if 39 \( \text{Nh}h6 \) \( g3 \) 40 \( \text{Nh}f7+ \) \( \text{Nh}g7 \) 41 \( \text{Nh}d6+ \) (or 41 \( \text{Nh}xg5+ \) \( \text{Nh}g6 \) 42 \( \text{Nh}e3 \) \( \text{Nh}e2+ \) 43 \( \text{Nh}d1 \) \( \text{Nh}f2 \) and wins) 41...\( \text{Nh}g6 \) 42 \( \text{Nh}xh8 \) \( g2 \) and the passed pawn goes through.

\[ 39...\text{Nh}g5 40 \text{Nh}g3 \text{Nh}e2 41 \text{Nh}h5 \]
The rook ending is not drawn after 41 \( \text{fxe2} \text{exe2}+ 42 \text{c3} \text{g3} 43 \text{d7} f5 44 \text{a5} g2 45 \text{d1} f4 46 a6 \text{e6}. \)

\text{41...e6 42 c7}

Black wins easily after 42 \( \text{d2} \text{g3} 43 \text{xf6} \text{xf6} 44 \text{xe2} g2. \)

\text{42...g3}

Winning a piece.

\text{43 xg3 xg3 44 xc4 f5}

White won the opening struggle, in that both 9 \( \text{e2} \) and 15 \( \text{f3} \) would have given him some grinding advantage, while 20 \( \text{e3} \) would have given him a dangerous attack. For this reason I recommend the move I did not play, 6...\( \text{c4} \), which is seen in the next game. There Black avoids potential distress, not to mention the dreaded plus equals!

I can slow up White’s pawns with my rook, while the knight escorts my own pawns to victory.

\text{45 a5 f4 46 d3 f3 47 c2 f5 48 b4}

Black wins in all lines: the most entertaining is 48 a6 \( \text{xa6} \) 49 \( \text{e4} \) \( \text{f6} \) 50 \( \text{e5} \) \( \text{e3} \) (a typical counter-attacking blow with the Alekhine knight) 51 \( \text{c1} \) \( \text{g4}+ \) 52 \( \text{e4} \) f2 53 \( \text{f1} \) \( \text{f2} \).

\text{48...d6 49 f2 g4 50 d4 e2 51 f1 f5+ 52 c5 g3! 53 a6}

Or 53 \( \text{xf3} \) g2 and the black knight holds g3, ensuring promotion.

\text{53...g2 54 a1 f2 55 a7 e8 0-1}

The black rook gives itself up for the cause, leaving the knight and pawns triumphant.

Objectively we must note that 7 \( \text{e3} \)

\text{Game 32}

P. Blatny - A. Baburin

Las Vegas 2003

\text{1 e4 f6 2 e5 d5 3 d4 d6 4 f3 dxe5 5 dxe5 c6 6 c4}

As in the previous game, where I played the quiet 6...\( \text{c7} \) and White got the initiative. However, Black has a stronger move!

6...\( \text{b4}! \)

This is possible, unlike in the Kengis Variation, as White does not have \( \text{a4} \) with check.
Modern Variation III: Vikings Board the Alekhine Longboat

The trap 7 a3? \( \text{Wxd}4! \) has claimed many victims: White loses material in all lines. Since both 8 axb4 \( \text{We}5+ \) and 8 \( \text{Wxd}4 \text{Cc}2+ \) leave White a pawn down for nothing, the only chance to complicate is 8 \( \text{Qxf}7 \), but then 8...\( \text{We}4+ \) should win for Black as the following variations show:

a) 9 \( \text{Wxe}2 \text{Cd}3+ \) 10 \( \text{Cd}1 \) (worse is 10 \( \text{Cd}2 \text{Wxe}2+ \) 11 \( \text{Cx}e2 \text{Cxc}1 \) 12 \( \text{Qxh}8 \text{Qb}3+ \) and Black is a piece up) 10...\( \text{Wxe}2+ \) 11 \( \text{Qxe}2 \text{Cxc}1 \) 12 \( \text{Qxh}8 \text{Qxe}2 \) 13 \( \text{Qxe}2 \text{g}6 \) 14 \( \text{Qc}3 \text{Qg}7 \) 15 \( \text{Qxg}6 \) hxg6 and Black's two bishops should beat White's rook and pawn.

b) 9 \( \text{Qe}2 \text{Wxg}2 \) 10 \( \text{Qf}3 \text{Cc}2+! \) 11 \( \text{Qe}2 \) (worse is 11 \( \text{Qd}2 \text{Wxf}2+ \) 12 \( \text{Qe}2 \text{Wxe}2+ \) 13 \( \text{Qxe}2 \text{Qxa}1 \) 14 \( \text{Qxh}8 \text{Qb}3 \) 15 \( \text{Qc}2 \text{Cxc}1 \) 16 \( \text{Qxc}1 \text{g}6 \) 17 \( \text{Qd}3 \text{Qg}7 \) 18 \( \text{Qxg}6 \) hxg6 19 \( \text{Qxg}6+ \text{Qf}8 \) with an easy piece up win, or 11 \( \text{Qxc}2 \text{Wxf}3 \) 12 \( \text{Qxh}8 \text{Qxh}1 \) 13 \( \text{Qe}2 \text{Qa}6 \) 14 \( \text{Qxh}7 \text{Qg}4 \) 15 \( \text{Qd}2 \) 0-0-0+ with a decisive attack) 11...\( \text{Qg}4 \) 12 \( \text{Qxg}4 \text{Wxg}4+ \) 13 \( \text{Qd}2 \text{Wxd}1+ \) 14 \( \text{Qx}d1 \text{Qxa}1 \) 15 \( \text{Qxh}8 \text{g}6 \) 16 \( \text{Qg}1 \text{Qb}3 \) 17 \( \text{Qe}3 \text{Qg}7 \) 18 \( \text{Qxg}6 \) hxg6 19 \( \text{Qxg}6 \text{Qf}7 \) (through the settling dust we see that Black is just a piece up for one pawn) 20 \( \text{Qg}4 \text{Qd}7 \) 21 \( \text{Qc}2 \text{Qbc}5 \) 22 \( \text{Qd}2 \text{Qh}8 \) 23 \( \text{Qf}3 \text{Qe}6 \) 24 b4 b6 25 h4 \( \text{Qf}6 \) 0-1 N.Khaliovsky-A.Leontiev, Tula 2000.

7...\( \text{Qf}5 \)

Black's main point: the threat to c2 seems to force 8 \( \text{Qa}3 \) – a constantly repeating Alekhine theme which we have seen before, as in Tal's great victory in Game 7. With the knight on a3 White's whole position is lamed, as he can't kick out the black knight and his queen's rook is tied to the defence of a2.

Some practical examples show White's difficulties after 8 \( \text{Qa}3 \text{Qd}7 \):
exd3 13 wb3 wb6 14 0-0 wbxb3 15 axb3 ab4 16 ab1 and White somehow drew this terrible position in G.Kamsky-S.Mamedyarov, Internet match 2006.

8 ad3

A strong player can see the difficulties he will face after 8 a3, and so will search for something else – but what he finds might be even worse!

8...e5!

![Diagram](image_url)

Black defends the b4-knight with gain of time. Baburin had this position three times in two years – against a GM (this game) a master and an IM – and won all three!

9 xb4 xb4+ 10 c3 wa5

Black is already better. White can't even play the natural 11 ac1 because of 11...wa2, while Fritz is so desperate it recommends the pawn sacrifice of 11 ae2!?, after which I seriously doubt White has compensation for the pawn.

11 wb3 0-0

Baburin won even more quickly in a later game with the equally good 11...exd4 12 xd4 0-0 13 0-0 a6 14 d3 fd8 15 xf5 xf5 16 c2 f4+

17 wd2?? (17 e3, losing the c4-pawn, is necessary as now a piece goes) 17...xd4! 0-1 T.Gillani-A.Baburin, Calvia Olympiad 2004.

12 xe2 exd4 13 xd4 a6 14 0-0 c5 15 e5

After 15 xc5 xc5 16 wa3 xa3 17 bxa3 fd8 Black had a much better game in view of White's shattered pawns, and duly won in S.Collins-A.Baburin, Bunratty 2004.

15...ae8 16 g3 b4

![Diagram](image_url)

It's all White can do just to avoid losing material – this is the kind of Alekhine we love to see!

17 wd1 d8 18 wc1 e8

Black has manoeuvred into an ideal development and White is hard pressed to hold.

19 xe1 c5 20 h4

20 a3 xc3 21 wc3 xc3 22 bxc3 e4 23 ac1 xc3 24 xc3 xe2! is another winning line given by Baburin.

20...f6 21 h5 xe1+ 22 xe1 d3 23 we2 xb2!

Decisive.

24 xe1 d3 25 d1
Black needn’t fear 25 \( \text{We8+} \) \( \text{x} \text{exe8} \) 26 \( \text{exe8+} \) \( \text{ef} \text{8} \).

25...\( \text{ax} \text{c3} \) 26 \( \text{we} \text{7} \) \( \text{ff} \text{8} \) 27 g4 \( \text{df} \text{4} \)!

\( \text{exe5 c6 6 df2} \)

We saw this idea of supporting the advanced knight in the Kengis (Game 24), where the great Larsen freed his position after 5...g6 6 \( \text{dd} \text{2} \) \( \text{g} \text{7} \) 7 \( \text{df} \text{3} \) 0-0 8 \( \text{ec} \text{4} \) c6 9 0-0 \( \text{dd} \text{7} \) 10 \( \text{ee} \text{1} \) \( \text{exe} \text{5} \) 11 \( \text{exe} \text{5} \) a5 12 a4 \( \text{ee} \text{6} \) 13 \( \text{wf} \text{3} \) \( \text{wd} \text{6} \) 14 c3 c5 and eventually obtained the better game.

Because exchanges essentially favour Black (since about all White has here is a slight space advantage), this idea of encouraging Black to exchange a piece is a non starter. As we will see, Black could equalize with ease, but he lacks Larsen’s boldness.

6...\( \text{dd} \text{7} \) 7 \( \text{df} \text{3} \) \( \text{xe} \text{5} \) 8 \( \text{xe} \text{5} \) g6

Carlsen to Kengis once again!

9 \( \text{wf} \text{3} \) \( \text{ee} \text{6} \) 10 c3 \( \text{gg} \text{7} \) 11 \( \text{ee} \text{2} \)

In my opinion Black loses this game because he never gets in either of the key Kengis diagonal softening breaks, ...e5 or ...c5. We recall that Larsen broke this way at his first opportunity. In fact Black could consistently play for a central break right now: 11...\( \text{wc} \text{7} \) 12 \( \text{dd} \text{3} \) \( \text{ff} \text{5} \) 13 0-0 0-0 14 \( \text{ee} \text{1} \) \( \text{fe} \text{8} \) (White
can't do a thing about the coming break) 15 d2 ad8 16 h3 xd3 17 xd3 e5 and with the Kengis break in, Black stands fully equal. This position is more favourable to Black than the analogous position in Anand-Adams (Game 26, note to Black's 12th move) as his rooks are much better placed here on the centre files, and the white bishop is less dangerous on d3 than on the long diagonal.

Fritz evaluates the end of the above variation (after 17...e5) as double zero, or dead even, and I agree. Black has solved all his problems, but it is the nature of the position that, against solid White play, the game levels out and a draw is likely.

11...a5?! 12 0-0 0-0 13 d3 a4 14 a3 f5 15 e1 xd3 16 xd3 e6 17 g3 b6 18 h4 h5 19 g2 fe8 20 e2

23 g4!
Since Black will not act, White will! White begins an attack.

23...hxg4 24 xg4 c7 25 g1 d7 26 c2 e8 27 f1
The g-file is dangerous for Black.

27...c5
Better late than never, but this is awfully late!

28 dx5 xc5 29 h5 gxh5 30 f3!
White likes the open g-file but has no interest in falling into the discovery on the queen trap: 30 xh5 f6 31 xf6 e3+! 32 xe3 xh5 33 xg7+ xg7 34 xg7 xg7 35 xe6 b5 and Black has the better endgame.

28...f8 31 d2 d5 32 e1 c8 33 g2 f6?
Overlooking a tactic. Black had to play 33...f6, which keeps the g-file semi-closed and prevents the following blow – though White would still be slightly better after 34 e4.

34 xa4!
White wins his pawn back and takes
over the advantage, as the bishop is immune: 34...\textit{xa4} 35 \textit{g8+ e7} 36 \textit{xc8}.  
\textbf{34...b5} 35 \textit{c2}

White has targets on both sides of the board. It may be only plus equals on the computer, but the human defensive task is too much. Black should have counter-attacked much earlier in the centre!  
\textbf{35...c4} 36 \textit{f3}

Not the impatient 36 \textit{g8+ e7} 37 \textit{b3} as 37...\textit{c8} saves the day.  
\textbf{36...g4?}

Black panics and gives up a pawn; it’s true that after 36...h4 37 b3 \textit{c8} 38 \textit{g4} White is better with his two bishops and queenside pawn majority, but this is nowhere near as bad as the game.  
\textbf{37 \textit{xg4 hgx4} 38 \textit{xg4}}

White is a pawn up with his positional advantage intact. Tiviakov now wins smoothly.  
\textbf{38...\textit{c7} 39 \textit{e4} \textit{c5} 40 \textit{d2} \textit{wh2} 41 \textit{f4} \textit{wh8} 42 \textit{d2} \textit{e7} 43 \textit{xf5} \textit{xf5} 44 \textit{d6+ e8} 45 \textit{g2}}

The threat of \textit{a8} ends resistance – Black could resign here.  
\textbf{45...d5} 46 \textit{xd5 exd5} 47 \textit{xd5} \textit{h3+} 48 \textit{e1} \textit{e6+} 49 \textit{xe6+ fxe6} 50 \textit{e2 d7} 51 \textit{f8 c6} 52 \textit{d3 1-0}

This game shows the harmlessness of White’s opening – and then demonstrates the perils of passive play. Had Black broken in the centre like Larsen he would have been fine.

\textbf{Game 34}  
Sti. Andersen-M. Gajic  
Borup 2009

\textbf{1 e4 \textit{f6} 2 e5 \textit{d5} 3 d4 d6 4 \textit{f3 dxe5} 5 \textit{xe5} c6 6 g3 \textit{d7}}

This recent game makes a nice contrast to the previous one. Black plays sharply and aggressively from the start, makes his break, and gets a good game.  

Note that the Carlsen move order allows this quick attack on White’s central knight. When Black played a Kengis order in Game 26, 5...g6 6 g3 \textit{g7} 7 \textit{g2} 0-0, he had to prepare for a few
moves (because of his loose knight on d5) before he could deal with White’s advanced cavalry.

7 \( \text{\texttt{f3}} \) g6

Now Black switches to a comfortable Kengis.

8 \( \text{\texttt{g2}} \) g7 9 0-0 0-0 10 \( \text{\texttt{e1}} \) b5!

A sharp and interesting idea: Black intends to secure his knight in the centre, and follow up with queenside play. He is not afraid of the fianchettoed white bishop, as he will remove his pieces from the long diagonal.

Of course it’s also possible to play simply: 10...\( \text{\texttt{e8}} \) 11 c4 \( \text{\texttt{c7}} \) 12 \( \text{\texttt{c3}} \) e5 with near equality.

11 \( \text{\texttt{g5}} \)!

Since Black has forced the pace, it’s now or never: if White wants anything out of the opening he has to play 11 a4 here and challenge Black’s plan. After the likely 11...\( \text{\texttt{b6}} \) 12 axb5 cxb5 a very double-edged position has arisen: White has weakened the defences of Black’s centralized knight, but Black’s position is still intact and he has the c-file for counterplay.

11...h6 12 \( \text{\texttt{e3}} \) \( \text{\texttt{b6}} \)

Black has consolidated and stands at least equal. Note that the black knight on b6 is fine here, as White does not have kingside attacking chances in this line, with his light-squared bishop pointing the other direction.

13 \( \text{\texttt{bd2}} \) \( \text{\texttt{f5}} \) 14 \( \text{\texttt{h4}} \) \( \text{\texttt{e6}} \) 15 c3 a5 16 \( \text{\texttt{c1}} \) \( \text{\texttt{c8}} \)

Black clears his pieces off the long diagonal, sort of like a reversed Voronezh! (see Game 38).

17 a3 g5

Black drives back the white knight and...

18 \( \text{\texttt{h3}} \) \( \text{\texttt{f5}} \) 19 b3 c5!
...breaks on the queenside! This is how I like to see the Alekhine played!
20 \textit{\text{De5}}?

White errs under pressure. Correct is 20 dxc5 \textit{\text{Dxe3}} 21 fxe3 \textit{\text{Dxc5}} 22 \textit{\text{Dd4}} and White's strong knight compensates for his pawn weaknesses.
20...\textit{\text{Dxe3}} 21 fxe3 \textit{\text{Dxe5}} 22 dxe5 \textit{\text{Dc7}}
23 \textit{\text{Dh5}} \textit{\text{Dg7}} 24 h4 \textit{\text{Dg6}} 25 \textit{\text{Dg4 gxh4}}!

Another bold move: Black doesn't fear the opening of the g-file, as he sees he can use it for attack.
26 \textit{\text{Gxh4 Dxe5}}

Black's excellent opening and middlegame play has left him a good pawn up. It would be nice to say that "Black converts smoothly", but it doesn't work out quite that easily!
27 \textit{\text{Df3 Dh5}} 28 \textit{\text{Dg3 Dh8}} 29 \textit{\text{Dh2 Dg8}}
30 \textit{\text{Dh3 De4}} 31 \textit{\text{Dxe5+ Dxe5+}} 32 \textit{\text{Dxe5}}

Another simple, clear win, but this is the 40th move.
40...\textit{\text{Da4}} is a simple, clear win, but this is the 40th move.
41 \textit{\text{Dfa2 Dxa2+}} 42 \textit{\text{Dxa2 Da8}} 43 \textit{\text{Da5}}
\textit{\text{Dxa5}} 44 \textit{\text{bxa5 Da4?!}}

Missing a second, more difficult win: 44...b4! 45 cxb4 c3 46 axb6 c2 47 b7 (after 47 \textit{\text{Dd3 Dxd3}} 48 b7 \textit{\text{C1w}} 49 b8\textit{\text{D}} \textit{\text{xe3}} Black should win eventually)
47...\textit{\text{Dc1w}} 48 b8\textit{\text{D}} \textit{\text{h1+}} 49 \textit{\text{Dg3 Dg1+}} 50 \textit{\text{Df4 Dh2 mate}}.
45 a6 \textit{\text{Dxc3}} 46 \textit{\text{Dg2 Dd5}} 47 a7 \textit{\text{Dc7}} 48 \textit{\text{Dxe4 fxe4}} 49 \textit{\text{Dc6 Dg6}} 50 \textit{\text{Dg3 b4}}

Even after the best 50...c3 51 \textit{\text{Dd4 e5}} 52 \textit{\text{Dxb5 c2}} 53 \textit{\text{Dxc7 C1w}} 54 \textit{\text{Dh8}}

\textit{\text{Dxe3+}} 55 \textit{\text{Dg2 Dd2+}} 56 \textit{\text{Df1 Dc1+}} 57 \textit{\text{Dxe2 Dxc7}} 58 \textit{\text{Dxe4+}} I'm not sure Black is winning any more!
51 \textit{\text{Dc5+ Df5}} 52 \textit{\text{Dxc4 Da8}} 53 \textit{\text{Dd6+}}

\textit{\text{Dc5}} 54 \textit{\text{Dc4+ Dd5}} 55 \textit{\text{Da5 e5}} 56 \textit{\text{Dg4}}

\textit{\text{Dc5}} 57 \textit{\text{Dh5 Db5}} 58 \textit{\text{Db3 Dc4}} 59 \textit{\text{Da5+}}
60 \textit{\text{Dh6 Dxe3}} 61 h5 \textit{\text{f3}}

62 \textit{\text{Dc4?}}

White blunders, just when the draw is in reach: 62 \textit{\text{Dg5!}} e3 63 h6 e2 64 h7

\textit{\text{Dh6}} 65 \textit{\text{h8D}} \textit{\text{g1+}} 66 \textit{\text{Df5 Dxa7}} 67

\textit{\text{Dh3+ Dc2}} 68 \textit{\text{Dg4+}} and White will give perpetual check or take both of Black's extra pawns.
62...e3 63 \textit{\text{Dxe3 Dxe3}} 64 \textit{\text{Dg7 b3}} 65 h6

b2 66 \textit{\text{h7 Df1}} 67 \textit{\text{h8D}} \textit{\text{Db7+}} 68 \textit{\text{Df6}}

\textit{\text{Dc6+}} 69 \textit{\text{Df5 e4}} 70 \textit{\text{Dh3+ Dd4}} 71 \textit{\text{Dh8+}}


**Alekhine Alert!**

\[ \text{d3} 72 \text{d}8+ \text{e}2 73 \text{d}4 \text{e}3 0-1 \]

A great opening – a very messy endgame! From the repertoire point of view, one sees that Black secured his centre and quickly made the Kengis break with ...c6-c5, after which he had no problems – except for the eternal one of how to win the won game!

Anand himself likes 6 \text{e}2 against the Carlsen (as we will see in Game 36), only using 6 g3 against the Kengis – and this game shows us why. Black’s counterplay comes faster here as his knight is secure in the centre – and White is very hard pressed to demonstrate any opening advantage at all.

**Game 35**

K.Niemi-M.Maki Uuro

Finnish Championship, Helsinki 2006

1 e4 \text{f}6 2 e5 \text{d}5 3 d4 d6 4 \text{f}3 dxe5 5 \text{xe}5 c6 6 \text{e}2

Preferred by Kasparov and Anand – all one can say is this is White’s best chance for advantage. The ideas should be familiar by now: White keeps the bishop back so he can play c2-c4 at the right time (but not now, because of Baburin’s 6...\text{b}4!). Attacking the well-defended knight on d5 is ineffective, so neither \text{c}4 nor g2-g3/\text{g}2 promises anything. However, the bishop might go to f3 later if the long diagonal is weakened.

6 \text{e}2 is the realistic move: since all attempts to destroy Black fail, White simply develops and tries to keep a slight edge.

6...\text{f}5

The modern move, characteristic of the Carlsen Variation, though it’s also possible to play Miles’ older 6...\text{d}7. Very high-rated White players didn’t get much in the following three games: 7 \text{f}3 g6 8 c4 \text{c}7 9 \text{c}3 \text{g}7 10 0-0 0-0 11 \text{g}5 (or 11 \text{e}1 c5 12 dxc5 \text{xc}5 13 \text{g}5 \text{xd}1 14 \text{xd}1 \text{e}8 and Black made a draw in L.Aronian-T.Nalbandian, Yerevan 2000) 11...\text{e}6 12 \text{e}3 \text{f}6 13 h3 b6 (Miles himself preferred 13...\text{c}7 against P.Zarnicki, Oviedo rapid 1993, and also drew) 14 \text{b}3 \text{c}7 15 \text{fe}1 \text{b}7 and Black was cramped but solid in C.Bauer-S.Mamedyarov, Spanish Team Ch. 2005, which was in fact finally won by Black – in 98 moves!

7 0-0

For the wild 7 g4 see the next game.

7...\text{d}7 8 \text{f}3

For the exchanging 8 \text{g}4 see Game 37.
8...e6 9 c4!

Well timed: I think this move represents best play for White in this variation.

Now 9...b4 is nowhere near as strong as the 6 c4 b4 counter of Game 32, which Baburin won stylishly – three times! He tried the same knight move one more time at this juncture, but was fortunate to draw: 10 c3 c2 11 b1 b4 12 a1 c2 13 b1 b4 ½-½ S.Collins-A.Baburin, Nagoya Open 2009, looks like a typical grandmaster draw, but wait! As Baburin himself pointed out after the game, White doesn’t have to allow the repetition, but can sacrifice the exchange with 12 g5! (instead of the drawing 12 a1) 12...f6 13 e3 xB1 14 xb1, which gives him a tremendous attack, as the black knight will be driven back to a6, the diagonal b1-h7 is a strong attacking avenue (weakened by Black’s forced ...f7-f6) and, furthermore, White has a good central break with d4-d5 coming after he kicks the knight. I would prefer to be White.

9...f5f6

Best.

10 c3 c7 11 e1 d6 12 h3 0-0

12...0-0-0 is very dangerous, as due to the cluttered d-file, White can get his next move in with tempo and attack. A sample follow-up is: 13 c5! f4 (or 13...e7 14 b4 with a similar attack) 14 a4 xc1 15 xc1 b8 16 b4 a6 17 d1 e4 18 d3 xc3 19 xc3 xd3 20 xd3 f6 21 a4 d5 22 b3 f4 23 d2 g5 24 b5 and White breaks through decisively.

13 e3

13 c4 is my recommendation, and would probably be Anand’s choice if he got this position. White captures the light-squared bishop for a knight, and then even if Black exchanges a pair of bishops, White will be left with the slightly superior minor piece: the long-range bishop vs. a knight in a semi open position – and the “traditional” tiny pull.

So one might say, why play Alekhine’s Defence if this is the best you can do? Well, first of all, it’s not
that bad: I’ve let Fritz run for all the time I’ve been writing this note, and all it gives is that White has slightly the better of “=”, that is, about 0.25 plus for White, or a quarter of a pawn. So if White knows his stuff, and plays in Anand/Kasparov style, he can get a quarter of a point advantage? Can’t even make it to plus equals? That’s not too tragic a road, nor is it that different from defending a more popular opening such as a main line Ruy.

But yes, one must say that the resulting position is on the cheerless side, and Black can only play to equalize gradually and draw. If everyone played like Anand, then perhaps I could not recommend the Alekhine – but since the great majority of non-GM opponents play “junk”, then I think a little suffering for a draw in the main lines is acceptable.

After 13 g4 I recommend 13...h2+ 14 h1 f4 15 xf5 exf5 16 d3 g6 and White has only the minimal edge of the Tartakower Caro-Kann, and in this position that amounts to just about nothing.

To be absolutely clear, by “just about nothing” I mean by careful play Black can make a draw. You do need to be careful; you probably can’t play for a win.

I’m sure those weren’t the words you wanted to hear, but that’s modern chess!

13...h6

Now Black keeps his bishop, and despite the computer’s assertion of plus equals, I can hardly see anything for White.

14 wd2 f8

Black has a Caro-Kann restraint position, with kings on the same side. In other words, Black has nominally less space, but White’s only break, d4-d5, just opens lines for Black. White has only a formal advantage.

15 c5?!

If Black were castled queenside, as we saw above, this would be a strong move – here it just gives up the key central square d5.

Fritz likes 15 ad1 and claims White is still slightly better, but I see no play for White. I think that after the simple 15...ad8 the position is objectively equal.

15...f8 16 f4 d8 17 b4 e4 18 xe4 xe4 19 a4 e5

Black breaks in the centre and stands fully equal.

20 e3

Simplest is 20 xe5 xe5 21 dxe5 xd2 22 xd2 xe5 with a dead draw.
Slightly less dead is 20 dxe5 dxe5 21 xf3 xe5 22 e4 xd2 23 xd2 a5 with a little play for both sides, but still pretty drawish.

20...exd4 21 xd4 d5 22 a3

22 d3 is better, immediately challenging the open file with equality.

22...a5!

Now the Alkhine counter-attack finally kicks in! White’s queenside structure is weak; he should have run to the draw.

23 d1

If 23 b5 xc5 snaps off a pawn.

23...xe1+ 24 xe1 axb4 25 g3

White can’t hold material; e.g. 25 xb4 b6 26 d3 bxc5 27 xc5 b8 28 c3 xc5 29 xc5 b1 and a piece has to go, as White can’t defend everything.

25...h7?! 

Black has won a good pawn, but this move allows White attacking compensation, based on the momentarily exposed black king. Correct is 25...g6 (necessary sooner or later, and better sooner, without wasting a tempo mov-

ing the king) and if 26 c2 xc5, when White has no compensation for two pawns and the attack falls short: 27 xg6 fxg6 28 xc5 (or 28 xg6+ h7 29 g4 e7 30 xc2+ e4 31 f3 h5 32 xe4 xe4 33 fxe4 c5 34 b2 c4 35 e5+ g7 36 wc4 wc5+ and wins) 28...xc5 29 xh6 xf2+ 30 xf2 w6+ 31 f3 f7 and now that the attack is over, Black should win with his strong, extra passed pawn.

26 d3?!

White should seize the opportunity to recapture his pawn with 26 xb4 g6 (if 26...b6 27 b1+! spotlights Black’s bad king) 27 c2 g8 (the loss of two tempi can’t go unpunished, but 27...b6 28 w1 is still a strong attack) 28 xg6! fxg6 29 w1 e8 30 xg6+ f7 31 f5+ e7 32 d6 and White’s attack is very dangerous.

26...e4

Both sides play inaccurately. Black should assert his passed pawn and deny White the a1-h7 diagonal, the firing line toward his king: 26...b3 is better for Black.

27 f4

27 c2! is obviously correct, when Black’s defence is not easy; e.g. 27...g6 28 f4 xc2 29 xc2+ g8 30 xg7! xg7 31 h5 and White is better.

27...xc5 28 f3

Now Black keeps his material and defends; and 28 c2 is too late in view of 28...d6.

28...d3!

Decisive – finally!
Alekhine Alert!

29 a1

Or 29 xg7+ xg7 30 xc5 g6 and wins.

29...f5 30 c1 b3!

At last! The crucial diagonal is denied to the white bishop.

31 h2 xa4 32 h5 g6 33 f4 d6 34 xg6 xg3+ 35 xg3 fxg6 36 wc3 d6+ 37 f2 xa1! 0-1

This is the simplest: White has no more counterplay and resigns here, rather than waiting for the denouement with 38 xa1 b2! 39 b1 d2+ 40 e2 wc1 and the pawn goes through.

This is a classic modern Alekhine's Defence: Black reaches near or practical equality out of the opening. The position arrived at might be hard to defend against Anand but should be good enough for anyone else. Proof of that is in the game itself: just when a draw was expected, White played inaccurately and Black struck hard with a counter-attack. As long as chess is played by human beings all results are possible!

Game 36
V.Anand-M.Carlsen
World Blitz Championship,
Moscow 2007

1 e4 f6 2 e5 d5 3 d4 d6 4 f3 dxe5 5 fxe5 c6 6 e2 f5 7 g4

Nigel Short was willing to face this against two superb attacking players, Kasparov and Judit Polgar, and one can see why from the games: in each he equalized rather easily; in fact he nearly defeated Kasparov. And so Carlsen is also not afraid against the current World Champion. In general, I think that such violent anti-Alekhine variations play into the strength of the defence as a counter-attacking system. The hardest lines to meet are the quiet ones aiming for positional pressure, such as the previous game where White could have maintained an edge out of the opening (13 h4), albeit a very small one. Normally the quiet squeeze is Anand's style, but he goes for broke here in a blitz game – and almost loses!
7...\textit{e}6 8 c4

White can also attack with the other bishop pawn: 8 f4 f6 9 d3 f7 10 0-0 d6 11 c3 xc3 12 bxc3 g6 13 w1 g7 14 f5 w7 15 w2 g5f5 16 wxf5 (Black gets the queens off, as 16 gxf5 g8 17 h1 d5+ 18 f3 wxf5 wins a pawn) 16...wxf5 17 gxf5 g8 18 f2 0-0-0 19 e3 f8 20 f3 c7 21 a4 d5 ½-½ J.Polgar-N.Short, Bled Olympiad 2002. That was a short-lived attack!

8...c7

Short played 8...\textit{b}6 9 b3 (maybe 9 c5? d5 10 c3 is better) 9...f6 10 d3 w2xd4 11 b2 w8 12 c3 (Kasparov sacrifices a pawn, but has no real targets and so his development advantage gradually comes to nothing) 12...a6 13 w2 c7 14 0-0-0 0-0-0 15 w3 f7 16 f4 b8 17 h4 e6 18 e4 d7 19 h5 h6 20 g5 e7 21 g6 e8 22 b1 w6 23 d4 c5 24 b2 a8 25 g3 db8 26 he1 d7 27 f5 exf5 28 wxe7 h8 29 f3 c6 30 xc6 wc6 31 w6 wc6 32 xc6 d6 33 f2 c7 34 w4 e2 d6 35 c3 e8 36 c2 d8 37 xd8+ xd8 38 xc6+ xc8 39 d1 d7 40 e3 fe6 41 d3 d6 42 d5 d4 43 c7+ d7 44 d5 d7 (Short's excellent defence could have been rewarded here: 44...w7 45 xf6 e5 should win for Black) 45 wxe7 dxe7 46 e1 d7 47 a4 b6 48 e3 c6 49 d3 a6 50 e3 b5 51 d3 bxa4 52 bxa4 \textit{b}6 53 \textit{c}2 d6 54 d3 c8 55 c3 d7 56 e3 ½-½ G.Kasparov-N.Short, Russia vs. World rapid match, Moscow 2002.

Rather than go into a possibly prepared line from Kasparov-Short, Carlsen puts the knight on another square, from where (as in my win over Furdzik, Game 31) it can support the counter-stroke ...b7-b5, even as a pawn sacrifice.

9 g1 d7

The typical knight challenge and tempo gain works especially well here, as White has wasted a development tempo on 7 g4.

10 f3 g6 11 c3 g7

Black has an excellent Kengis, where White's g1/g2-g4 set-up can hardly be recommended (to attack the king the rook should be on h1 to back up h4-h5), and White has no safe place for his king. I think Black is already better: Carlsen has prospects on the long diagonal and has by far the safer king. Once again a "wipe the Alekhine off the board" falls short.

My conclusion after researching this book is that only the positional pressure lines are truly worrisome for
Alekhine’s Defence players.
12 e3 0-0 13 d2 b5!

As in Game 31, this is the typical counter when Black has his knight on c7 – Carlsen breaks up White’s queen’s wing, demonstrating that the white king has no safety there.
Anand, having nothing going for his game positionally, snatches the offered pawn and hangs on!
14 cxb5

For the record, if White declines, Black gets the better game as follows: 14 b3 bxc4 15 bxc4 b6 and White can’t maintain his position; or 14 d5 cxd5 15 cxb5 (if 15 cxd5, 15...xc3 16 xc3 xd5 wins a pawn) 15...f6 and Black has cleared the long diagonal with advantage.
14...cxb5 15 xb5 xb5 16 xb5 d5
17 e2 c8 18 b3 f6 19 e5 e4 20 b2

I think Carlsen has played excellently so far and he has tremendous compensation for the pawn: White has three pawn islands, including an isolated d-pawn and deranged kingside (that early g2-g4!), while Black’s structure is excellent and invulnerable. Black has a safe king, White, to put it mildly, does not. Black’s bank rank is connected, White’s is not. But how to continue?

One sees that Carlsen eventually lost the game, and I think his next move is the first downward step. Although this natural move defends his bishop and opens a path to h4 for his queen, it’s still not correct. First, Anand is able to block the queen with his next, 21 g5, and then this same pawn move prevents ...f7-f6 to kick out the white knight.

I looked at this position for a long time before finding the solution: Black should play 20...c3! 21 c1 (the rook is too strong and must be exchanged: if 21 f3 xe3 wins, or 21 d3 a5 22 b4 c7 23 xe4 xe4 24 c1 xc1+ 25 xc1 b7 26 d2 c8 27 d3 xd4 28 xd4 xd3 recovers Black’s pawn with advantage, for if 29 xd3 xc1+ 21...xc1+ 22 xc1 (White can’t play the natural 22 xc1, as after 22 a5+...
23 \(f1\) \(xa2\) Black again gets his pawn back with advantage) 22...\(b6\) 23 \(e3\) \(c8\) with great play. White’s remaining rook is out of the game, and the white king is caught between Scylla (the c8-rook) and Charybdis (the d5-bishop). Black has more than enough for the pawn.

However, I want to make it clear that I am not criticizing Carlsen for his inaccuracy: I took an hour to find this; Carlsen had seconds. In a blitz game mistakes must happen, and overall he played extremely well, as did Anand in defending and finally winning from a compromised position.

\(20...e6\) 21 g5 \(d6\) 22 h4 \(c3\) 23 \(g3\) \(xe2\) 24 \(xe2\) \(c7\) 25 \(c1\) \(a6+\) 26 \(e1\) \(fc8\) 27 \(xc7\) \(xc7\) 28 \(f4\)

\(\square e3\) \(f3\) 33 \(c4\) \(d5\)

33...\(g2\) 34 \(e3\) is another draw, but Carlsen bravely continues his quest for the win.

34 \(xd6\) \(xd6\) 35 \(xc7\) \(xc7\) 36 \(a3\) \(h2?\)

It’s time to wrap it up. As tough as it would have been to admit, Black has to realize that his attack has not broken through: 36...\(c2!\) 37 \(xa7\) \(f3\) 38 \(b8+\) \(g7\) 39 \(e5+\) \(g8\) is a clean draw.

37 \(e3\) \(h1+\)

If 37...\(xh4\) 38 \(xa7\) \(h1+\) 39 \(d2\) \(a1\) 40 \(f4\) and Black has a tough defence ahead of him.

38 \(d2\) \(b1\) 39 \(xa7\)

\(39...\(b2+\)

Or 39...\(e4\) 40 \(b8+\) \(g7\) 41 \(e5+\) \(g8\) 42 \(c3\) and the king escapes – the game is tilting in White’s direction.

40 \(d3\) \(b1+\) 41 \(c3\) \(e1+\) 42 \(b2\) \(e2+\) 43 \(a3\) \(g7\) 44 \(f4\) \(b5\) 45 \(e5+\) \(f8\) 46 \(c5+ 1-0\)

The queens come off, and Black cannot defend against three connected passed pawns.
Alekhine Alert!

A great turnaround for Anand, but from an opening point of view, we see that if two world champions end up in difficulties with White after 7 g4, this may not be the best move! Here the counter-attacking nature of the defence shines, and if not for their great defensive abilities, and a bit of luck, both Kasparov and Anand would have lost in this line.

Game 37
M. Adams-Zhao Xue
Edmonton 2009

1 e4 d6 2 d4 d6 3 c4 f5 4 dxc5 e5 5 dxe5 c6 6 e2 fxe5 7 0-0

The idea of exchanging light-squared bishops, here and in the main game, is not very threatening to Black. One recalls that when White gets a positional pull in the Modern Variation, usually the first player trades a knight for Black’s light-squared bishop – take a look back at Games 25, 26 and the note to move 13 in Game 35. Here White exchanges bishop for bishop and merely equalizes in the opening.

On the immediate 7 g4 Black can be happy about piece exchanges that relieve her slight cramp: 7...xg4 8 xg4 f6 (or 8...d7 9 0-0 xex5 10 dxe5, transposing to 9...xex5 in the notes to the main game) 9 h3 e6 10 e3 bd7 11 xd7 (if 11 0-0 xex5 12 dxe5 d5 13 d2 xex3 14 xex3 db6 15 f4 db8 16 e4 wd4 and Black should equalize, but not 15...xb2? 16 ab1 xc2 17 xb7 with a very strong attack) 11...xd7 (Black has two minor pieces off the board and a lock on d5; she has an equal game with good long-term prospects as the white pawn at d4 may become weak, as we will see) 12 0-0 e7 13 c4 0-0 14 fc3 fd8 15 fd1 wc7 16 fc3 wa5 17 we2 ed7 18 ad3 ad8 19 ad1 b5! (we’ve seen this typical break before!) 20 cxb5 cxb5 21 a3 b4 22 axb4 xb4 23 fc4 d5 24 xd5 xd5 and White has no compensation for the isolated pawn. But it’s hard to win against just one weakness – White held on grimly and drew after 66 tough moves in I.Sudakov-A.Ushenina, Serbian Team Ch. 2007.

7...d7 8 g4

8...xg4 9 xg4

The Chinese GM had previously faced the knight capture: 9 xg4 e6 10 c4 g5 11 c3 (positionally White doesn’t want to exchange as that gives Black the comfortable, two minor pieces on each side, Caro-Kann block – yet White can hardly avoid that here as
the only free square for knight is the self-blocking e3) 11...\(\text{Q}xg4\) 12 \(\text{W}xg4\) \(\text{Q}f6\) 13 \(\text{W}h4\) \(\text{L}e7\) 14 \(\text{A}d1\) \(\text{A}a5\) 15 \(\text{W}g3\) \(\text{A}d8\) 16 \(\text{f}4\) \(\text{W}f5\) 17 \(\text{f}c7\) \(\text{A}d7\) 18 \(\text{A}b8\) 0-0 19 \(\text{A}xa7\) b5! (again!) 20 \(\text{A}b6\) \(\text{bxc4}\) 21 a4 \(\text{A}d6\) 22 \(\text{W}f3\) \(\text{W}xf3\) 23 \(\text{g}xf3\) \(\text{A}d5\) 24 \(\text{c}5\) \(\text{Axc5}\) 25 dxc5 \(\text{A}b7\) 26 \(\text{A}d2\) \(\text{A}a8\) 27 a5 \(\text{A}ba7\) 28 \(\text{A}a4\) \(\text{A}xa5\) 29 \(\text{A}xc4\) \(\text{A}a1\) + 30 \(\text{A}g2\) \(\text{e}7\) and Black eventually won, largely due to her superior pawn structure, in N.Pogonina-Zhao Xue, Krasnoturinsk 2007.

9...\text{e}6

Once again Larsen’s key observation: “the idea should be to win back the ‘lost’ tempo by exchange threats against the white knight.”

In other words, Black threatened to take on e5; in general, exchanges are good for Black, who has slightly less space; White did not move away; thus Black should just take, when I don’t see any advantage for White at all: 9...\(\text{Q}xe5\) 10 \(\text{dxe5}\)

\(\text{w}xe5\) 14 \(\text{A}f4\) \(\text{W}f5\) 15 \(\text{W}g3\) \(\text{G}g6\) 16 \(\text{A}d6\) e5 17 \(\text{A}xf8\) \(\text{A}xf8\) and Black looks fine, though White has some compensation) 13...\(\text{G}g6\) 14 \(\text{A}c3\) (if 14 \(\text{A}g3\) h5 with good counterplay) 14...\(\text{A}xf4\) 15 \(\text{W}xf4\) f5 – this idea, known from the McCutcheon Variation of the French, gains space and should equalize for Black; e.g. 16 \(\text{A}d2\) \(\text{A}e7\) 17 \(\text{A}ad1\) \(\text{A}d8\) 18 \(\text{A}xd8+\) \(\text{A}xd8\) 19 \(\text{W}d4\) b6 and Black is equal. White could even go wrong with 20 \(\text{W}d6\)?! \(\text{W}xd6\) 21 \(\text{A}xd6\) \(\text{A}c7\) 22 \(\text{A}xc6\) \(\text{A}d7\) and the rook is trapped.

Alternatively, 10...\(\text{W}d7\) is Shabalov’s untried suggestion, and this looks like a clean equalizer: the ending is nothing for White with the black king able to fend for himself, Steinitz style; while Black can castle long if White stays in the middlegame, with mutual chances:

a) 11 \(\text{W}xd7+\) \(\text{W}xd7\) 12 \(\text{A}d2\) (12 \(\text{f}4\) e6 13 c4 \(\text{A}c5\) favours Black, as White’s position is nothing but holes due to the prematurely advanced pawns) 12...\text{e}6 13 \(\text{A}d1\) \(\text{A}c7\) 14 c4 \(\text{A}b6\) 15 b3 \(\text{e}7\) 16 \(\text{A}e4\) \(\text{A}ad8\) and Black gradually equalizes.

b) 11 \(\text{W}e2\) 0-0-0 12 c4 (12 \(\text{A}d1\) \(\text{A}f4\) 13 \(\text{W}d2\) \(\text{A}e2\) 14 \(\text{f}1\) \(\text{A}xc1\) favours Black) 12...\(\text{A}b6\) 13 \(\text{C}c3\) \(\text{W}d3\) 14 \(\text{W}g4\) e6 15 \(\text{A}d1\) h5! and Black successfully counter-attacks in typical Alekhine fashion.

10 \(\text{A}d1\)

Black won in curious style after 10 c4 \(\text{A}b4\) 11 \(\text{A}xd7\) \(\text{W}xd7\) 12 \(\text{W}e4\) \(\text{A}d8\) 13 a3 \(\text{A}a6\) 14 \(\text{A}e3\) \(\text{A}e7\) 15 \(\text{A}d2\) 0-0 16 \(\text{A}f3\) f6 17 \(\text{A}fe1\) \(\text{A}fe8\) 18 \(\text{A}d2\) \(\text{A}c7\) 19 \(\text{A}a5\) b6
20 c3 f8 21 ac1 c8 22 h4 h5 23 e2 d6 (Black is slightly cramped but very solid) 24 cc2 f8 25 ed2 b5 26 a5 a6 27 e2 c5 28 dx5 xc5 29 g6 bxc4 30 xh5 d3 31 e4 (Black got his queenside breaks in; now White should notice Black is up to something and play 31 g4) 31...c5! (suddenly winning a piece) 32 g6 xa5 33 exc4 e5 34 xe5 xe5 35 c7 d6! (a nice back rank trick to finish) 36 g3 0-1 Al. David-C. Bauer, Clichy 2004.

18 h4

18...d6 19 h5 xe5

Black finally takes, ten moves too late – and White can even recapture with the bishop, instead of the pawn, increasing his advantage.

10...f6

Black should still be fine with 10...xe5. The white pawn wedge on e5 is, generally speaking, not dangerous when White has no attacking kingside knight. After 11 dxe5 wc7 12 c4 e7 13 f4 g6 transposes to the note to Black’s 9th move, which gives an equal balance.

11 e2 e7 12 c4 0-0 13 c3 e8 14 d3 f8?

The “logical” result of Black’s dreadfully passive play – now White just builds up his attack without hindrance.

15 f4 wb6 16 ad1 ad8 17 b3 wa6

This desperate pawn pitch makes things worse. 28 f6 is better.

29 dxe5 ac5 30 e3 e6 31 g3 wc7 32 ed3 h6 33 d6 h7 34 wf3 we7 35 g2 wc7 36 b4 wc8 37 a4 fe7 38 wd3 f8 39 e3 g8 40 f4 a6 41 c5 xc5 42 bxc5 we8 43 we2 wf7 44 g6 1-0
Black put up no resistance in this game – perhaps a reaction to Adams' surprise on move 9 – but objectively the novelty doesn’t amount to much. White voluntarily exchanges two pieces and so relieves Black of a slightly cramped position (though of course Zhao did not take advantage of this exchanging opportunity).

In the notes to move 9, I point out two clean equalizers for Black: Shabalov’s 10...\textit{W}d7 and the “McCutcheon” method.

**Summary**

White’s best line was seen in Game 35: White keeps the bishop back with 6 \textit{\textit{A}}e2, plays c2-c4 when he can, and goes for the two bishops. Black gets a marginally worse position that’s very drawable. This is not the most fun in the world, but fortunately White players don’t seem to play this way very often.

Violent tries like an early c2-c4 or g2-g4 or g4 all lead to nothing – the people who are dangerous against the Alekhine are the grinders!
Chapter Five

Exchange Variation: The Ox is not a Scary Animal

Our Hero: Bent Larsen

I'm glad to have escaped the Modern line alive! Now we proceed to the far from terrifying Exchange Variation, which in my experience is the most common line against the Alekhine – and the most fun to play against! First of all, this variation gives no advantage against the prepared Alekhinist and, even better, the game is not too drawish and Black has perfectly reasonable chances to outplay his opponent.

Black does have to know a couple of things, however, and the first one is how to take back when White makes the capture that gives the Exchange Variation its name: After 1 e4 d5 2 e5 dxe5 3 c4 d6 4 d4 exd5 5 cxd5 Bxd5 6 Bb6 7 Bxe5 Bxe5 8 dxc5 Bb5+ White has three legal captures, but I only recommend one – take with the e-pawn like this chapter’s hero, Bent Larsen!

As for taking toward the centre, I refer you to the following game, and the dreaded headline...

Lines I Don’t Like

Game 38
A.Zubarev-R.Aloma Vidal
Athens 2008

1 e4 d5 2 e5 dxe5 3 d4 d6 4 c4 Bb6 5 exd6

The Exchange Variation, far less aggressive than the Modern line or Four Pawns Attack, voluntarily parts with White’s e-pawn wedge. Black should have nothing to fear here – but he can make life difficult for himself with the following recapture.
5...cxd6

This move, even though played with success by Bobby Fischer (see Game 10) is one I emphatically do not recommend! The reason is the Voronezh Variation, not known in Fischer's time, which has placed a huge monkey wrench in Black's "taking toward the centre" idea. The point of the Voronezh is that White evacuates the long diagonal, thus preventing counterplay from Black's fianchettoed dark-squared bishop, and utilizes his queenside majority. This leads to a game where White's position is very easy to play, while Black's is insanely difficult. With "enviable" stubbornness, Black players have tried to contend with this, resulting in an explosion of theory which reached its nadir in a note to this game, where John Watson recommends a line by which Black can make a draw on move 33 (if he memorizes every subvariation on the way, of course).

I do not advocate this style of play; I want to enjoy chess and win like Larsen, not memorize everything to make a draw. Besides the main game, I've thrown in a few more Voronezhs in the notes to give you the flavour – but I wouldn't take a bite!

Oh, and one more thing: before we get to this simultaneously boring and treacherous variation, I should note that Black could also (besides the correct 5...exd6) take with the queen (5...wxd6). While this is tactically sound (6 c5 is answered by 6...wxe6+), it's strategically suspect, as the black queen takes two moves just to block her own bishop. There are eleven games in the database with the position after 5...wxd6 6 c5 wxe6+: White wins ten of them to one Black win – and that was from 1935, when the far overmatched Michell lost a crushing position against Salo Flohr!

Here's a quick look at this dubious line after the black queen checks: 7 e2 d5 8 f3 w7 (or 8...f6 9 0-0 w7 10 c4 c6 11 e1 a6 12 b3 ac7 13 c3 e6 14 d2 e7 15 e2 0-0 16 ae1, when White had a big advantage after playing simple moves and won easily in D.Mikulas-A.Galan, Slovakian Team Ch. 1994) 9 0-0 e6 10 c3 e7 11 e1 0-0 12 e5 w8 13 xd5 exd5 14 d3 f6 15 f4 and White had a dominating position in R.Michell-S.Flohr, Hastings 1935/36.

6 c3 g6 7 e3 g7 8 c1 0-0 9 b3 e5

A key point is seen here: if Black makes the natural developing move 9...c6, then White just plays 10 d5
with a space advantage. The open long diagonal means nothing for Black as the rook is off the line and the c3-knight is protected. Local Los Angeles GM Melikset Khachiyan fell victim to this vs. IM Altounian.

40 \(d7\) \(xa2\) 41 \(xb7\) (the ending with the extra, passed c-pawn presents no problems) 41...\(db6\) 42 \(e5\) \(a3\) 43 \(xg7+\) \(xf8\) 44 \(d6+\) \(xg7\) 45 \(xa3\) \(xf6\) 46 \(d6\) \(g1\) 47 \(g4\) a6 48 \(h5\) \(e3\) 49 \(f8\) \(f5\) 50 \(h6\) \(f2\) 51 \(d2\) \(e4\) 52 \(h6\) \(b6\) 53 b4 \(f2\) 54 c5 \(xg3\) 55 \(xh7\) \(d3\) 56 \(g5\) \(c4\) 57 \(e7\) \(d5\) 58 \(d8\) 1-0 L.Altounian-M.Khachiyan, Costa Mesa 2003.

**10 dxe5 dxe5 11 \(xd8\) \(xd8\) 12 c5**

A modern tabiya: White has an active queenside pawn majority and stands at least slightly better, though it seems some theoreticians think Black can draw if he has superb memorization skills.

For my part, I am absolutely stunned that Alekhine players voluntarily submit to this suffering - what is the purpose? Since the line is so booked up, and very popular with GMs, this means your regular under-2500 player is fighting not only against his opponent at the board, but also against all the strong GMs who play the white side of this, and their even stronger com-
puters! And if Black memorizes furiously, walks some incredibly narrow path, then he might make a draw –
Maybe.
12...\(\text{d}6\text{d}7\)
Black already has to avoid the instant death of 12...\(\text{d}5\) 13 \(\text{d}1\) – and so must block his own pieces. Meanwhile White can follow with logical developing moves.
13 \(\text{f}3\) \(\text{c}6\) 14 \(\text{c}4\) \(\text{a}5\)
The problem with this position is that, as I’ve already mentioned, White’s game is so easy to play: he’s well ahead in development and all he has to do is advance his queenside pawns. Black’s kingside counterplay is a long way from coming, and first he has to perform great feats just to get his queenside pieces out. In the following two games Phil Adams and GM Michael Adams make it look easy – probably because it was!
14...h6 15 0-0 \(\text{f}8\) 16 \(\text{e}4\) \(\text{e}6\) 17 \(\text{d}6\) \(\text{d}7\) 18 \(\text{b}5\) \(\text{b}8\) 19 \(\text{xb}7!\) (already decisive) 19...\(\text{dxb}7\) 20 \(\text{xc}6\) \(\text{c}7\) 21 \(\text{a}4\) f5 22 c6 \(\text{d}8\) 23 \(\text{f}d1\) \(\text{x}d1+ 24 \text{xd}1\) \(\text{f}7\) 25 \(\text{d}8\) \(\text{h}7\) 26 \(\text{xe}5\) \(\text{xe}5\) 27 \(\text{xf}8\) \(\text{e}7\) 28 \(\text{c}5\) \(\text{c}7\) 29 \(\text{a}8\) \(\text{g}7\) 30 \(\text{xa}7\) \(\text{xa}7\) 31 \(\text{xa}7\) (now that’s a queenside majority)! 31...\(\text{c}7\) 32 \(\text{g}3\) \(\text{f}6\) 33 \(\text{d}4+\) \(\text{e}7\) 34 \(\text{g}7\) h5 35 \(\text{h}6\) \(\text{d}5\) 36 \(\text{g}5+\) \(\text{e}6\) 37 \(\text{f}1\) \(\text{f}3\) 38 \(\text{e}1\) \(\text{a}5+\) 39 \(\text{d}2\) \(\text{c}7\) 40 b4 \(\text{d}5\) 41 \(\text{e}3\) \(\text{c}4\) 42 \(\text{ad}2\) h4 43 a3 \(\text{d}5\) 44 a4 hxg3 45 fxg3 \(\text{xf}4\) 46 gxg4 \(\text{d}6\) 47 \(\text{f}2\) 1-0 P.Adams-P.Crocker, Manchester 2002.
In a later game GM Adams won a little faster with 15 \(\text{e}4\) \(\text{e}8\) 16 0-0 \(\text{e}7\) 17 \(\text{d}6\) \(\text{f}8\) 18 \(\text{xc}8\) \(\text{xc}8\) 19 \(\text{d}2\) \(\text{a}5\) 20 b4 \(\text{xc}4\) 21 \(\text{xc}4\) \(\text{e}6\) 22 \(\text{fd}1\) \(\text{d}4\) 23 \(\text{f}1\) \(\text{d}8\) 24 \(\text{d}2\) \(\text{ed}7\) 25 \(\text{cd}1\) f5 26 f4 exf4 27 \(\text{xf}4\) g5 28 \(\text{xe}5\) \(\text{xe}5\) 29 \(\text{xe}5\) \(\text{d}5\) 30 \(\text{c}4\) \(\text{xd}7\) 31 \(\text{f}2\) and the pin was decisive 1-0 M.Adams-M.Santo Roman, French Team Ch. 2004.
15 \(\text{e}2\) \(\text{b}6\)
16 cxb6
Supposedly Black can make a draw after 16 b4, at least in analysis! – 16...\(\text{c}6\) 17 b5 \(\text{d}4\) 18 c6 \(\text{c}5\) 19 0-0 a6 20 \(\text{c}4\) \(\text{e}6\) (here’s Watson’s improvement, and so what the Black player needs to memorize: 20...axb5 21 \(\text{xb}5\) \(\text{e}6\) 22 \(\text{fd}1\) \(\text{f}6\) 23 h3 \(\text{ac}8\) 24 \(\text{xd}4\) exd4 25 \(\text{a}4\) \(\text{xa}4\) 26 \(\text{xa}4\) \(\text{c}7\) 27 \(\text{b}1\) b5 28 \(\text{xb}5\) \(\text{xa}2\) 29 \(\text{b}4\) \(\text{d}5\) 30 \(\text{xd}4\) \(\text{xc}6\) 31 \(\text{xc}6\) \(\text{xc}6\) 32 \(\text{xc}6\) \(\text{xd}1+\) 33 \(\text{h}2\) with a draw) 21 \(\text{xe}6\) \(\text{cxe}6\) 22 a4 axb5 23 axb5 \(\text{a}3\) 24 \(\text{h}1\) \(\text{c}7\) 25 \(\text{xd}4\) exd4 26 \(\text{f}4\) dxc3 27 \(\text{xc}7\) \(\text{d}5\) 28 \(\text{xb}6\) \(\text{xb}5\) 29 c7 (Black is dead) 29...\(\text{a}8\) 30 \(\text{fd}1\) \(\text{f}6\) 31 \(\text{d}4\) \(\text{e}7\) 32 \(\text{xc}3\) \(\text{c}8\) 33 \(\text{e}3\) (a recurring picture in the Voronezh – we see the
white c-pawn going through) 33...\textit{b}7 34 \textit{f}4 \textit{f}8 35 \textit{g}4 \textit{b}4 36 \textit{g}3 \textit{a}xg4 37 \textit{b}3 \textit{c}4 38 \textit{d}b8 \textit{e}8 39 \textit{e}1 \textit{c}6 40 \textit{d}d6! \textit{xd}6 41 \textit{xe}8+ 1-0 D.Daulyte-Nguyen Thu Giang, Dresden 2008.

16...\textit{xb}6 17 0-0 \textit{b}7 18 \textit{fd}1 \textit{c}6 19 \textit{b}5 \textit{d}5 20 \textit{xd}5 \textit{xd}5 21 \textit{c}7

22 \textit{xd}4 \textit{exd}4 23 \textit{xd}5 \textit{xd}5 24 \textit{d}2

Black has "succeeded" in his aim: White is slightly better as the potential outside passed pawn (that queenside pawn majority) is stronger than Black’s passed but blocked d-pawn, but the plus equals position maybe should be drawn (now that’s success!).

24...\textit{h}5 25 \textit{c}4 \textit{xc}4 26 \textit{xc}4 \textit{d}3 27 \textit{f}1 \textit{xd}8 28 \textit{b}4 \textit{d}4 29 \textit{a}4 \textit{d}7 30 \textit{b}5 \textit{f}6 31 \textit{e}1 \textit{e}7+ 32 \textit{e}3 \textit{xe}3 33 \textit{fxe}3 \textit{xe}3+ 34 \textit{d}2 \textit{e}2+ 35 \textit{xd}3 \textit{e}xg2

21...\textit{d}4

Don’t worry, we’re still in book: Black is trying to improve on the following debacle, which sees famous Alekhine expert GM Zoltan Varga (our hero in Chapter Nine) switching sides – and why not if Black players want to submit to this torture? 21...\textit{dd}8 22 \textit{xa}8 \textit{xa}8 23 \textit{b}5 \textit{d}4 24 \textit{xd}4 \textit{exd}4 25 \textit{g}5 \textit{f}6 26 \textit{d}2 \textit{d}5 27 \textit{c}7 \textit{b}8 28 \textit{a}6 \textit{f}5 29 \textit{xa}7 \textit{e}8 30 \textit{b}5 \textit{b}8 31 \textit{d}3 \textit{h}6 32 \textit{h}4 \textit{h}5 33 \textit{f}3 \textit{f}7 34 \textit{f}2 \textit{f}6 35 \textit{g}3 \textit{c}8 36 \textit{b}4 \textit{c}4 37 \textit{xc}4+ \textit{xc}4 38 \textit{e}2 \textit{c}2 39 \textit{b}5 \textit{b}2 40 \textit{a}4 \textit{e}5 41 \textit{f}4 \textit{f}6 42 \textit{b}7 \textit{b}3 43 \textit{a}5 \textit{xg}3 44 \textit{a}6 \textit{d}3+ 45 \textit{f}2 \textit{g}4 46 \textit{a}7 \textit{d}4+ 47 \textit{f}3 \textit{xa}7 48 \textit{xa}7 \textit{hx}4 49 \textit{b}6 (just for variety, we see the white b-pawn going through this time) 1-0 Z.Varga-G.Llanos, Budapest 1999.

36 \textit{c}7?

White blunders a pawn. Correct is the zwischennzug 36 \textit{c}2! \textit{g}4 (but not 36...\textit{xc}2?? 37 \textit{xc}2 \textit{f}7 38 \textit{a}5 \textit{e}6 39 \textit{b}6 axb6 40 \textit{a}6! and, moving leftward, this time it’s the a-pawn that queens!) 37 \textit{c}8+ \textit{f}7 38 \textit{c}7+ \textit{e}6 39 \textit{xa}7 reaching an endgame highly typical for the variation: Black, after playing well for 36 moves, is left with an uphill struggle to draw (yes, still plus equals – the two white connected passed pawns are stronger than Black’s slower three to one majority with only one passed pawn), if indeed a draw is possible.
36...\textit{hxh2} 37 \textit{axa7} \textit{axb2} 38 \textit{c4} h4 39 a5 h3 40 \textit{d7} h2 41 \textit{d1} f7 42 a6

Even a pawn down White draws easily, while Black must be careful, as the white queenside pawns are so dangerous.

42...\textit{a2} 43 \textit{c5} e6 44 b6 \textit{a5+} 45 \textit{c6} \textit{axa6} 46 \textit{h1} \textit{a2} 47 b7 \textit{c2+} 48 \textit{b6} \textit{b2+} 49 \textit{c7} f5?!

Black should be happy to take the draw with 49...\textit{c2+}, although all is not lost yet.

50 \textit{hxh2!} \textit{xb7+} 51 \textit{xb7} f4 52 \textit{c6}

60...\textit{g3} and White can only take perpetual or give up his rook for the pawn.

53 \textit{c5} g4 54 \textit{d4} g3 55 \textit{h8} f5 56 \textit{g8} f3 57 \textit{xg3} \textit{f4} 58 \textit{g8} f2 59 \textit{f8+} 1-0

Two things, as Ving Rhames would say:

1. Black only obtained a clear drawing position (which he was unable to draw) after White blundered a pawn on move 36.

2. If White had played the correct 36 \textit{c2}, maintaining material equality while obtaining connected passed pawns, Black would have still had a painful defence.

The games given in the notes don’t inspire confidence either. Again, Black must be extremely well prepared and fight to the death to draw the ending.

Meanwhile, in the line I recommend, Black faces none of these problems, equalizes easily and can play for a win like the great Bent Larsen!

I don’t quite recommend this, but we’re getting there!

\textbf{Game 39}

J.Emms-N.Davies

Southend 2002

1 e4 \textit{f6} 2 e5 \textit{d5} 3 d4 d6 4 c4 \textit{b6} 5 exd6 exd6!

One advantage of this recapture is that \textit{...exd6} vacates e7 for the king’s bishop, which does not have to lose
time fianchettoing. Now Black is slightly ahead in development, while White's only advantage is a little more space. Basically Black is a bit cramped; if he exchanges one pair of minor pieces he's fine; if he exchanges two then he's more than fine and can play for an advantage, as White's advanced pawns can become weak. The reason I don't recommend Davies' line is that he goes to considerable lengths to keep all the minor pieces on the board, which leads to a traffic jam that gives White chances.

The author of a previous book on the Alekhine's Defence, Davies plays one of his own recommendations.

10 b3

The problem for Black after this move is that if ...\(\text{b}4\) now, White can play \(\text{b}1\), preserving the bishop, as \(c4\) is defended.

10...\(\text{f}8\) 11 h3 \(\text{b}4\) 12 \(\text{e}3\)

I don't understand either player's moves here. Why not 12 \(\text{b}1\), and then why does Black not exchange with 12...\(\text{xd}3\) - ?

I think the former gives White the edge, as in the game, while the latter gives Black good chances to equalize, as we will see later in this chapter.

12...c6 13 \(\text{b}1\)

Now there are too many black pieces and, with White's nagging space edge, not enough squares to accommodate them. Transferring the well-placed knight on c6 to c7 (one step backward) by using three moves does not seem to be the best idea.

13...d5 14 a3 \(\text{a}6\) 15 c5 \(\text{d}7\) 16 b4 \(\text{c}7\)

To me this position looks clearly fa-
vourable to White, when you compare the activity of the respective pieces, and add in White’s queenside space—it’s time to strike!

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{17} \text{d}3
\end{array}
\]

17 b5! is best, and Black has no satisfactory answer: note again the cluttered pieces on his queenside—it would definitely help if at least one had been exchanged. Black can try:

a) 17...\text{xb}5 18 \text{xb}5 \text{cxb}5 19 \text{c}3 and White recovers the pawn with advantage.

b) 17...\text{f}6 18 bxc6 bxc6 19 \text{d}3 with queenside pressure and space.

c) 17...\text{cxb}5 18 \text{f}4 \text{f}6 19 \text{d}3 \text{d}7 20 \text{b}1 a6 21 a4 \text{c}6 (not 21...\text{bxa}4 22 \text{xb}7 and the powerful rook gives White a clear plus, while the black pawns are weak) 22 \text{xb}5 axb5 23 \text{xb}5 \text{xb}5 24 \text{xb}5 and Black, with two permanent weaknesses at b7 and d5, faces a painful defence for a long time to come.

17...b6

Black gets some counterplay.

18 \text{b}3 \text{e}6 19 \text{fd}1 a6 20 \text{xb}6

Even now 20 \text{f}4, maintaining the pawn chain, gives White some advantage.

20...\text{xb}6 21 \text{a}4 \text{xa}4 22 \text{xa}4 \text{d}7 23 \text{f}4 g6!

Black dodges 23...c5?! 24 \text{c}2! and maintains his important defensive light-squared bishop.

24 \text{xe}6 \text{xe}6 25 \text{c}2 \text{d}6 \frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}

Black has set up a solid defensive position, and note that with two pairs of minor pieces off, his game is not bad.

\textbf{The Lines I Like Begin Here!}

\textbf{Game 40}

\textbf{A.Gipslis-B.Larsen}

Sousse Interzonal 1967

1 e4 \text{f}6

“If White is very sure that it [Alekhine’s Defence] is very bad, then I like to play it with Black!” Larsen comments, and he’s right. If White treats the Alekhine with respect, like Anand,
and aims for a marginal edge with 4 \texttt{Qf3}, then it is a hard opening. If White plays casually (as if anything can win against such a “bad” opening), then the Alekhine is great fun to play!

2 \texttt{e5 Qd5 3 d4 d6 4 c4 Qb6 5 exd6 exd6}

Now that we’ve seen what not to do...

I think this is one of the easiest and most harmless variations of the Alekhine: Black can play against it with confidence as long as he remembers one specific move order and some general ideas. I’ll run through all that in the course of the game, but first let’s note that Larsen played the black side of the Exchange Variation with 5...exd6 six times against GM opposition, and defeated Yudovich, Kavalek, Adorjan, Giplis and Matanovic (how’s that for a fabulous score with Black – 5 wins vs. stellar opposition) and only gave up one draw to Parma, and that didn’t have to happen, as Larsen tricked himself into a bad move order.

In that game White played 4 \texttt{Qf3}, and we already know that Black should play 4...\texttt{dxe5} (as Larsen has played himself – Games 17 and 24). But Larsen experimented with 4...\texttt{Qc6} (more on this in the following game, where this provocative move order worked for him), and after 5 c4 \texttt{Qb6 6 Qe2 Qf5 7 exd6 exd6} White had succeeded in transposing to a favourable Exchange Variation where Black’s light-squared bishop should be – but isn’t – on g4 (the bishop on g4 indirectly threatens both c4 and d4 due to ...\texttt{Qxf3} possibilities).

White continued with 8 0-0 \texttt{Qe7 9 Qc3 Qf6 10 Qe3 0-0 11 Qc1 d5 12 c5, and now Black should settle for the cramped 12...\texttt{Qc8}, but lost a pawn after 12...\texttt{Qc4? 13 Qxd5! Qxd5 14 Qxc4, yet still somehow swindled his way to a draw in B.Parma-B.Larsen, Beverwijk 1964}.

Since one cannot count on such swindles, keep the correct move order in mind – but here I’m only asking you to have it down for six or seven moves, not thirty-three!! Here are my recommendations, based on the study of Larsen’s five big wins and my own analysis:

Our repertoire so far: 1 e4 \texttt{Qf6 2 e5 Qd5 3 d4 d6 and now if 4 Qf3 dxe5}.

If White goes in for the Exchange Variation, we have 4 c4 \texttt{Qb6 5 exd6 exd6!}

and now, as one might expect, White’s most common moves are the three obvious developments 6 \texttt{Qc3}, 6 \texttt{Qf3} and 6 \texttt{Qd3}, given in order of popu-
larity. Here's our repertoire against these moves:

a) 6 \( \mathcal{D}c3 \mathcal{D}c6 \) – exact: by threatening the d-pawn, Black prevents the very solid, even machine-like system composed of \( \mathcal{D}c3/\mathcal{D}d3/\mathcal{D}e2 \) which White could have reached in this game (note to White’s 7th move). Black has prevented 7 \( \mathcal{D}d3 \) and is ready to meet 7 d5 by 7...\( \mathcal{D}e5 \) and 7 \( \mathcal{D}f3 \) by 7...\( \mathcal{D}g4 \) with pressure on d4. See Games 42 and 43 for this precise move order.

b) 6 \( \mathcal{D}f3 \mathcal{D}g4! \) – exact: by playing this immediately, Black makes sure he obtains the pin. He will follow with ...\( \mathcal{D}c6 \) and his minor pieces will pressure White’s advanced pawns. Larsen reaches this type of position in both Games 40 and 41 by transposition.

c) 6 \( \mathcal{D}d3 \mathcal{D}c6 \) – exact: we saw Black play 6...\( \mathcal{D}e7 \) in Game 39 and end up with a cramped game. After the correct 6...\( \mathcal{D}c6 \), it’s obvious 7 \( \mathcal{D}f3 \) is met by \( \mathcal{D}g4 \) as in ‘b’. However, if White tries 7 \( \mathcal{D}e2 \) to avoid the pin, Black strikes with 7...\( \mathcal{D}b4 \) and equalizes at once. If 8 \( \mathcal{D}e4 \), then 8...d5 neatly isolates White’s centre pawn, while Black has an easy game after 8 0-0 \( \mathcal{D}xd3 \) 9 \( \mathcal{W}xd3 \), as he has freed his position due to the exchange of minor pieces, and gained the two bishops besides.

That’s pretty much all you need to know to play this variation with Black – but if you want to memorize 33 Voronezh moves, be my guest!

Oh, I should mention that the odd attacking move 6 \( \mathcal{W}f3 \) is also met by 6...\( \mathcal{D}c6 \) (Game 44) and non-developing pawn moves (6 a4 and 6 h3) are covered in Game 45 – Black should answer those two with 6...a5 and 6...\( \mathcal{D}c6 \), respectively.

Now if you know this much, you can play for a win, not a draw!

**6 \( \mathcal{D}c3 \mathcal{D}e7 \)**

My preferred move order once again is 6...\( \mathcal{D}c6 \) 7 \( \mathcal{D}e3 \mathcal{D}e7 \) 8 \( \mathcal{D}e2 \) 0-0 9 \( \mathcal{D}f3 \mathcal{D}g4 \), reaching the game position, which is fine for Black – whereas after Larsen’s actual move, White could have dodged this – see the next note.

**7 \( \mathcal{D}e3 \)**

White could avoid Larsen’s counterplay in the game by playing 7 \( \mathcal{D}d3 \)! here.

---

I mentioned this set-up above: White plans an unshakeable position with the coming \( \mathcal{D}g1-e2 \), so there is no pin with ...\( \mathcal{D}g4 \) (White has f2-f3) and a Black ...\( \mathcal{D}b4 \) won’t get the two bishops, as White can tactically defend c4 for long enough. This solid line has given White many victories, or you could say Alekhine players have had many sad
defeats against this – to name three: Wonderboy Magnus Carlsen; Grandmaster Tigran Nalbandian, and yours truly! A look at these debacles is instructive:

a) Wonderboy crashes: 7  d3!  c6 8  ge2 (White has set up his system) 8...f6 9  e3 0-0 (Black can’t play 9...b4 10  b1  xc4?? on account of 11  a4+ winning a piece, but now  b4 is threatened) 10 b3 (White simply eliminates the positional threat: of course if 10...b4 White keeps his bishop and stays solid with 11  b1, as the c4-pawn is protected) 10...e8 11 0-0  g4 12  d2 d5 13 c5  xe2 14  xe2  c8 (Black can’t shake the white position at all and becomes ever more cramped, while Ivanchuk enjoys the two bishops and soon the e-file) 15  f1  e7 16  g4! g6 17  e2  g7 18  ae1

18...f5 (the computer gives this as its number one pick, and evidently Magnus could not find anything better, but now Black gets permanent weaknesses and his long-term chances of survival are slim; still, I can’t find anything better, as the obvious 18...f5 or 18...h5 also create kingside weaknesses, while sitting tight won’t last long with  g5 coming) 19  xf5 gxf5 20  h6  xe2 21  xe2  f6 22  xg7  xg7 23  d1  e8 24 f3  e7 25  g3  f6 26  e1  f8 27  e5 c6 28  h5  g6 29  f4  f6 30  e3 h6 31 g3  c8 32  f2 b6 33 h4  d8 34  h5  g6 35  xe7  xh5 36  xa7  e8 (Magnus has sacrificed a pawn to finally get some e-file counterplay, but Ivanchuk has a surprise ready) 37  xe8+!  xex8 38 cxb6 f4 39 b7 fxg3+ 40  g2 and this looks like a “domination” problem: Black is a queen up – and helpless! 1-0 V.Ivanchuk-M.Carlsen, World Blitz Ch., Moscow 2007.

b) Grandmaster’s king burns in the centre: 7  d3!  c6 8  ge2  g4 9 f3 (no pin!) 9...h5 10 0-0  g6 11  xg6 hxg6 12 b3  f6 13  e4 d5 14  xf6+  xf6 15 c5  c8 16  f4

16...d7? (Black has to live with the plus equals; he can actually hold after 16...d8 17  c3  e7 18  b5  c8

128
with ...a7-a6 coming; so White should probably just play 18 \( \text{He}1 \ 0-0 \ 19 \text{g}4, \) when Black is cramped and miserable but still in the game for all that) 17 \( \text{Hd}2 \ \text{Wh}4 \ 18 \text{b}4 \text{a}6 \ 19 \text{a}4 (\text{now it's clear that the king move was a mistake, as White's attack is just too strong}) \) 19...\( \text{Cd}8 \) 20 \( \text{b}5 \ \text{Ce}7 \) 21 \( \text{Wa}5 \ \text{Cc}8 \) 22 \( \text{Hfe}1 \ \text{g}5 \) 23 \( \text{Cg}3 \ \text{Wh}6 \) 24 \( \text{Cc}3 \ \text{Cd}6 \) (a spirited try: Black wins material, temporarily, but his king is cut off from escape) 25 \( \text{Hxe}7+! \ \text{Cxe}7 \) 26 \( \text{He}1 \ \text{Hhd}8 \) 27 \( \text{C}6+ \text{bx}c6 \) 28 \( \text{bxa}6 \ \text{Hf}5? \) 29 \( \text{Cd}5! \) \( \text{Cxd}5 \) 30 \( \text{Hxd}5+ \text{Cd}6 \) 31 \( \text{Hxd}6 \ \text{Hxd}6 \) (White has a great trick mate after 31...\( \text{Cxd}6 \) 32 \( \text{Hxf}7+ \ \text{Ce}6 \) 33 \( \text{Hb}7 \text{mate!}) \) 32 \( \text{Hxf}7+ \ \text{C}6 \) 33 \( \text{He}6 \ \text{C}8 \) 34 \( \text{Hxd}6+ \ \text{Cxd}6 \) 35 \( \text{C}4+ \ \text{C}7 \) 36 \( \text{Cb}5+ \ \text{C}7 \) 37 \( \text{Hxg}5+ \ \text{Hf}8 \) 38 \( \text{Cc}5 \ \text{Cxa}6 \) 39 \( \text{Cxc}7 \) \( \text{Mac}6 \) 40 \( \text{C}8+ \ \text{Cf}7 \) 41 \( \text{h}4 \) (White has consolidated with four extra pawns, but Black plays on to the bitter end) 41...\( \text{g}6 \) 42 a5 \( \text{Cd}7 \) 43 \( \text{Cb}3+ \ \text{Hf}6 \) 44 \( \text{Hb}5 \ \text{Cdd}6 \) 45 \( \text{Ch}2 \ \text{Ce}7 \) 46 \( \text{Cg}3 \ \text{C}8 \) 47 d5 \( \text{Ca}6 \) 48 \( \text{Hf}4 \ \text{Hf}6+ \) 49 \( \text{He}4 \ \text{C}7 \) 50 \( \text{Cf}7 \) 51 \( \text{Hb}7+ \ \text{Hf}8 \) 52 \( \text{C}5 \) \( \text{He}8 \) 53 \( \text{C}8+ \ \text{Ce}7 \) 54 \( \text{Cc}7+ \) 1-0 Art.Minasian-T.Nalbandian, Armenian Ch., Yerevan 1999.

c) IM devours poisonous pawn: 7 \( \text{Cb}3 \) 0-0 8 \( \text{Cg}2 \ \text{Cc}6 \) 9 0-0 \( \text{Cb}4 \) 10 \( \text{Cb}1 \) \( \text{C}5 \) (it's obvious enough that 10...\( \text{Cxc}4? \) loses to 11 a3 \( \text{C}6 \) 12 \( \text{Hd}3, \) but I became obsessed with making the pawn snatch work, which isn't really possible) 11 d5

(see following diagram)

11...\( \text{Cxc}4? \) (this really is poisoned; I should accept the dreaded plus equals and play 11...\( \text{Cd}7 \), when the knight at least reroutes to f6 and defends my kingside) 12 a3 \( \text{Wa}5 \) (my dubious idea) 13 axb4 \( \text{Cxa}1 \) 14 \( \text{Hd}3! \) (the refutation) 14...\( \text{g}6 \) 15 \( \text{Hxc}4 \) \( \text{Cxb}4 \) 16 \( \text{Ca}2! \) (even better than 16 \( \text{Hxb}4 \), as Black now has to pay too much to get his queen out) \( \text{bxC}3 \) 17 \( \text{Cxc}3 \) \( \text{Cc}5 \) 18 \( \text{Cb}3 \) \( \text{C}d3 \) 19 \( \text{Cc}1 \) \( \text{Hfc}8 \) 20 \( \text{Cd}2 \) \( \text{Ce}2 \) 21 \( \text{Cxa}1 \) \( \text{Cxb}3 \) 22 \( \text{Cxa}2 \) \( \text{Cf}6 \) 23 \( \text{Hf}1 \) a6 24 \( \text{Hb}1 \) b5 25 \( \text{Ce}4 \) \( \text{He}7 \) 26 \( \text{C}4 \) \( \text{C}d8 \) 27 \( \text{C}5 \) \( \text{C}f5 \) 28 \( \text{Cf}6+ \) \( \text{Cxf}6 \) 30 \( \text{Hxf}6 \) a5 31 \( \text{C}d1 \) \( \text{C}a4 \) 32 \( \text{C}c3 \) \( \text{Cc}8 \) 33 \( \text{C}e2 \) \( \text{Cc}5 \) 34 \( \text{Cc}1 \) \( \text{C}b7 \) 35 \( \text{C}b4 \) \( \text{Cc}2 \) 36 \( \text{C}xg6 \) \( \text{Hxb}2 \) 37 \( \text{C}e5 \) \( \text{Cc}2 \) 38 \( \text{C}d6 \) \( \text{Cc}8 \) 39 \( \text{Cc}3 \) \( \text{Cc}7 \) 40 \( \text{C}d5+ \) \( \text{C}f8 \) 41 \( \text{C}e6 \) \( \text{C}e8 \) 42 \( \text{C}xg7+ \) \( \text{C}xd7 \) 43 \( \text{Hb}1 \) \( \text{C}c5 \) 44 \( \text{f}4 \) \( g5 \) 45 \( g3 \) \( g4 \) 46 \( \text{C}e2 \) \( \text{Cc}6 \) 47 \( \text{Cd}2 \) \( \text{C}d5+ \) 48 \( \text{Cc}2 \) \( \text{Cc}5+ \) 49 \( \text{C}b2 \) \( \text{Cd}5 \) 50 \( \text{Cc}1 \) \( \text{Cb}6 \) 51 \( \text{C}c2 \) \( \text{b}4 \) 52 \( \text{Cc}4 \) \( \text{Cb}5 \) 53 \( \text{Cd}4 \) \( \text{Cc}5 \) 54 \( \text{d}7 \) a3+ 55 \( \text{C}b1 \) b3 56 \( \text{C}d1 \) 1-0 R.Dellaca-T.Taylor, Los Angeles 2005.

I trust the reader would not like to add his name to the roster of defeats above, which is why move order is cru-
cial at least up to move 6. By playing exactly as I have shown, Black prevents White from setting up his solid machine, and creates good counterplay.

7...0-0 8 e2 c6 9 f3 g4

Now that Larsen has dodged the reef, Black has a typical sound development with counterplay, and can already be said to have an equal game. The position is complicated and far from drawish; unlike in the Voronezh, Black can simply play chess here and try to win!

But remember that Larsen should not have reached this happy position by the move order he chose; but he could have reached it by the correct order I gave, namely 6...c6!.

10 b3 f6 11 0-0 d5

"This move accomplishes very little here" – Larsen. Since White has no queenside majority, pushing the b-pawn just leaves weak squares in its wake – in this case the c6-knight, far from being driven back, soon advances via a5 to c4.

Larsen considers 13 h3 to be best; see the next game for his reaction to that move.

13...e7

Of course not 13...xb4? 14 b1 and White recovers the pawn with advantage.

14 b5 a5 15 h3 xf3 16 xf3 c6 17 wd3

If 17 e2 f5 with good counterplay – White can’t shut out both of Black’s active knights.

17...c4 18 f4 g6 19 h2 g5!

The key counter-attack: Black fixes White’s centre pawn at d4, where it is directly attacked by the f6-bishop and c6-knight, indirectly attacked by the g4-bishop, and even the Alekhine knight sometimes reroutes via c8-e7-f5 to attack the pawn again!

12 c5 c8 13 b4

A clever move: Black sees that direct attack on d4 won’t win the game, so he creates some kingside play, only to strike at d4 later when White least expects it!

20 bxc6 bxc6 21 d1 f4

Black has played a nice game so far
and has good squares for his pieces, but he doesn’t have any advantage — yet! Black’s queen’s knight, well posted in White’s territory, is very strong — so White should get rid of it: 22 $b3 is best, which leads to equality in all lines, most bluntly by 22...$xh2+ 23 $xh2 $a5 24 $c2 $c4 25 $b3 etc. I get the feeling the Giplis did not want to play for a draw against such a “bad opening” — so he plays for a win and loses!

For the record, other variations after 22 $b3 are 22...$xh2+ 23 $xh2 $f6 24 $xc4 $f4 25 $d2 dxc4 with a double-edged but equal game, or 22...$d2 23 $fd1 (23 $xf4? $xf4 24 $xd2 $g5 wins the queen) 23...$xh2+ 24 $xh2 $xb3 25 axb3 $b8+ 26 g3 $xb3 27 $db1 $c4 28 $xc4 dxc4 29 $b4 with, as Larsen says, “a rather drawish endgame”.

22 $c2 $xh2+ 23 $xh2 $f6 24 g3 $fe8!

White can’t oppose on the open file because f2 falls; Black’s advantage is getting serious...

25 $g2 $g5 26 $h2 $b2!

...and is now decisive!

“I am surprised every time such simple means lead to a winning position against a Grandmaster,” writes Larsen.

One sees that the little respected knight on c4 (Giplis could have chased it off, with a draw, if he wanted) now strikes the death blow, as Black wins the d-pawn. I think there were psychological factors in play: White was reluctant to admit that Black was obtaining an excellent position with this defence (without, as Larsen points out, doing anything very complicated) and so could not bring himself to play for equalization —

And now that the light bulb is on, it’s too late!

27 $f3 $d2 28 $xg6 hxg6 29 $d1 $c4

Black keeps his strong knight — the d4-pawn isn’t going anywhere,

30 $c3 $ab8 31 $c1 $e4 32 $c2 $xd4 33 $xd4 $xd4 34 $e1 a5 35 $g2 a4 36 $c3 a3 37 $a4 g5 38 $e7 $b4 39 $b6

$b2

A typical Larsen rook pawn and rook attack, sealing the win.
40 $c3$ $xa2$ 41 $xc4$ $dxc4$ 42 $c7$ $add2$ 43 $f3$ c3 0-1

After the best defence 44 $xc3$ (if 44 $xc6$ $xf2+$ 45 $xf2$ $xf2+ 46 $xf2$ c2 and Black queens; the same thing happens after 44 $xf7$ $xf2+$ 45 $xf2$ $xf2+ 46 $xf2$ c2, while if 44 $xf7$ c2 45 $f8+ $h7$ 46 $c3$ $a1$ Black wins a rook) 44...$xf2+$ 45 $g1$ $g2+ 46 $h1$ $g2$ 47 $c1$ $h2+ 48 $g1$ $g2+ 49 $f1$ a2 50 $a7$ (if 50 $xc6$ $h1+$ 51 $xg2$ $xc1$ wins quickly) 50...$xg3$ 51 $c4$ $g xh3$ 52 $ca4$ $h1+$ 53 $g2$ a1$g$ 54 $xa1$ $xa1$ 55 $xa1$ $c3$ 56 $a5$ f5 Black comes out three good pawns ahead.

This is one of Larsen’s great wins, but one should note Black’s opening moves were not quite precise. The middlegame was quite interesting, as the Soviet GM just could not believe that Black’s “simple means” had pushed him to the point of draw or death!

One sees that Black had middlegame counterplay across the board, from the knight on c4 to the queen + knight kingside attack on the far wing.

3...$d5$

In his book Play 1...$c6$, Christoph Wisnewski recommends 3...$g4$ 4 $d4$, but I have a problem with moving the king’s knight three times to get to h6, where it will soon be driven after 4...$d6$ 5 $h3$.

4 $d4$ $d6$ 5 $c4$

5 $b5$ is also dangerous – in my opinion, playing this move order means too much opening preparation!

5...$b6$ 6 $exd6$

White settles for the non-threatening Exchange Variation.

One recalls from the previous game
(note to move 5) that Larsen ran into trouble against Parma’s simple 6 \( \text{e}2 \) – but the real problem with this line, usually reached via the Alekhine move order 1 \( \text{e}4 \text{f}6 \) 2 e5 \( \text{d}5 \) 3 d4 d6 4 \( \text{f}3 \text{c}6!\)? 5 c4 \( \text{b}6 \), is that White has a dangerous “obstructive” sacrifice, 6 e6!.

\[ \text{\textbf{\text{Diagram:}}} \]

After 6...fxe6 (Black must take with the pawn in view of the fork on d5) Black has a central pawn mass, but a weak kingside and difficult development. Play is extremely sharp – one recalls Marcinkiewicz’s queen sacrifice from the Introduction, and here are a few more examples:

a) Cautionary tale: Black better know this before taking it out for a spin – might be a short ride! 7 \( \text{g}5 \text{d}7 \) (Marcinkiewicz played 7...e5 here) 8 \( \text{d}3 \text{e}5?? \) 9 \( \text{h}5+ \) 1-0 K.Richter-W.Jurgschat, Berlin 1948.

b) Tal at his wildest – but forgetful! 7 h4 e5 8 d5 \( \text{d}4 \) 9 exd4 exd4 10 \( \text{d}3 \text{d}7 \) 11 \( \text{g}5 \) h6 12 \( \text{d}2 \text{g}4 \) 13 \( \text{e}2 \text{e}4 \) 14 0-0 \( \text{f}5 \) 15 \( \text{a}3 \text{xh}4 \) 16 \( \text{b}5 \) d3 17 \( \text{xc}7+ \) (forcing the black king to move) 17...\( \text{d}8 \) 18 \( \text{xa}8 \) dxe2 19 \( \text{xe}2 \text{xa}8 \) 20 c5 \( \text{e}4 \) 21 \( \text{b}5 \text{xd}5 \) 22 \( \text{a}5+ \) b6 23 \( \text{fd}1 \text{e}5 \) 24 a4 \( \text{d}7 \) 25 cxb6 axb6 26 \( \text{xb}6+ \) \( \text{e}8 \) 27 \( \text{a}6 \) \( \text{xb}6 \) 28 \( \text{xb}6 \) g5 29 \( \text{e}1 \)

“I had calculated that by advancing my a-pawn, I would win in a few moves (following is a look at what those few moves might be) but suddenly I saw that by castling (!) Black could set up a counter-attack against f2. I therefore began to take energetic measures to prevent Black from castling...” So writes Tal, poking a bit of fun at himself – needless to say, according to the laws of chess, Black can’t castle in this game, having already moved his king, something the World Champion had forgotten! Tal could have won with his intended 29 a5 \( \text{g}7 \) 30 a6 \( \text{f}7 \) 31 a7 \( \text{e}4 \) 32 \( \text{e}1 \) \( \text{a}8 \) 33 \( \text{b}3+ \) d5 34 \( \text{a}6 \) \( \text{f}6 \) 35 \( \text{b}6 \) \( \text{f}8 \) (or 35...\( \text{xa}7 \) 36 \( \text{xd}5+ \) \( \text{g}6 \) 37 \( \text{b}7 \) winning a piece) 36 \( \text{c}2 \) \( \text{g}7 \) 37 \( \text{c}7 \) \( \text{f}5 \) 38 \( \text{xf}6 \) \( \text{xf}6 \) 39 \( \text{xe}7+ \) \( \text{g}6 \) (39...\( \text{g}8 \) loses to 40 \( \text{b}8+ \) \( \text{f}8 \) 41 \( \text{e}5 \)) 40 \( \text{g}7+ \) \( \text{h}5 \) 41 \( \text{h}2+ \) \( \text{g}4 \) 42 f3 mate!

Now back to Misha’s misadventure.
after his forgetful 29 \( \texttt{e}1 \): 29...\( \texttt{f}4 \) 30 \( \texttt{a}5 \) \( \texttt{g}7 \) 31 \( \texttt{b}8+ \) (to “prevent” castling!) 31...\( \texttt{f}7 \) 32 \( \texttt{b}3+ \) \( \texttt{e}6 \) 33 \( \texttt{b}7 \) \( \texttt{e}7 \) 34 \( \texttt{e}4 \) \( \texttt{d}2 \) 35 \( \texttt{a}e1 \) \( \texttt{a}e5 \) 36 \( \texttt{a}6 \) (way too late – Black didn’t castle, but he is nonetheless winning) 36...\( \texttt{x}b2 \) 37 \( \texttt{b}4 \) \( \texttt{w}a2 \) 38 \( \texttt{a}7 \) \( \texttt{c}3 \) 39 \( \texttt{b}b1 \) \( \texttt{xe}1 \) 40 \( \texttt{xe}1 \) \( \texttt{f}8 \) 41 \( \texttt{b}6 \) \( \texttt{d}5 \) 42 \( \texttt{c}1 \) \( \texttt{c}8 \) 43 \( \texttt{xc}8 \) 44 \( \texttt{c}7+ \) \( \texttt{d}7 \) 45 \( \texttt{f}3 \) \( \texttt{g}4 \) 46 \( \texttt{f}2 \) \( \texttt{gx}f3 \) 47 \( \texttt{g}xf3 \) \( \texttt{e}5 \) 48 \( \texttt{g}3 \) \( \texttt{h}5 \) 49 \( \texttt{wc}1 \) \( \texttt{h}4+ \) 50 \( \texttt{x}h4 \) \( \texttt{xf}3 \) 0-1 M.Tal-B.Larsen, Eersel (8th matchgame) 1969.

C. A modern version of this madness: 7 \( \texttt{c}3 \) \( \texttt{g}6 \) 8 \( \texttt{h}4 \) \( \texttt{g}7 \) 9 \( \texttt{h}5 \) \( \texttt{e}5 \) 10 \( \texttt{d}5 \) \( \texttt{d}4 \) 11 \( \texttt{hxg}6 \) \( \texttt{g}4 \) 12 \( \texttt{gxh}7 \) \( \texttt{d}7 \) 13 \( \texttt{d}3 \) 0-0 0-0 14 \( \texttt{e}3 \) \( \texttt{df}8 \) 15 \( \texttt{xd}4 \) \( \texttt{exd}4 \) 16 \( \texttt{e}4 \) \( \texttt{xf}3 \) 17 \( \texttt{g}xf3 \) e6 18 \( \texttt{dxe}6 \) \( \texttt{wx}e6 \) 19 \( \texttt{we}2 \) \( \texttt{d}5 \) 20 \( \texttt{c}5 \) \( \texttt{dxe}4 \) 21 \( \texttt{cx}b6 \) \( \texttt{wb}6 \) 22 \( \texttt{xe}4 \) \( \texttt{d}3 \) 23 \( \texttt{wx}d3 \) \( \texttt{d}8 \) 24 \( \texttt{wc}4 \) \( \texttt{xb}2 \) 25 0-0 \( \texttt{ff}6 \) 26 \( \texttt{fc}1 \) \( \texttt{c}6 \) 27 \( \texttt{ab}1 \) \( \texttt{d}7 \) 28 \( \texttt{wa}4 \) \( \texttt{h}6 \) 29 \( \texttt{xc}4 \) \( \texttt{wg}5+ \) 30 \( \texttt{f}1 \) \( \texttt{wh}5 \) 31 \( \texttt{xc}6+ \) \( \texttt{d}8 \) 32 \( \texttt{hx}h6 \) \( \texttt{hx}h6 \) 33 \( \texttt{xa}7 \) \( \texttt{hx}h7 \) 34 \( \texttt{wb}8+ \) \( \texttt{e}7 \) 35 \( \texttt{xe}7 \) \( \texttt{wh}1+ \) 36 \( \texttt{e}2 \) \( \texttt{wh}7 \) 37 \( \texttt{we}5+ \) \( \texttt{d}8 \) 38 \( \texttt{wb}8+ \) \( \texttt{e}7 \) 39 \( \texttt{we}5+ \) \( \texttt{d}8 \) 40 \( \texttt{wa}5+ \) \( \texttt{e}8 \) 41 \( \texttt{wb}5 \) \( \texttt{f}8 \) 42 \( \texttt{b}4 \) \( \texttt{wc}2+ \) 43 \( \texttt{f}1 \) \( \texttt{wd}1+ \) 44 \( \texttt{g}2 \) \( \texttt{g}7+ \) 45 \( \texttt{g}4 \) \( \texttt{xe}4 \) 46 \( \texttt{fx}g4 \) \( \texttt{wg}4+ \) 47 \( \texttt{f}1 \) \( \texttt{wd}1+ \) ½-½ S.Kindermann-J.Fleck, German League 1982. One would have to be crazy to play this without full preparation – note how Black casually allowed a white passed pawn to sit on h7, one move from queening, for twenty one moves!!

6...\( \texttt{ex}d6 \) 7 \( \texttt{c}3 \) \( \texttt{e}7 \)

I don’t recommend Larsen’s peculiar move order, but now that he’s back in good field position I think he should play 7...\( \texttt{g}4 \) at once, transposing back to our repertoire.

8 \( \texttt{e}2 \) 0-0 9 0-0 \( \texttt{g}4 \) 10 \( \texttt{b}3 \) \( \texttt{f}6 \) 11 \( \texttt{e}3 \) \( \texttt{d}5 \) 12 \( \texttt{c}5 \) \( \texttt{c}8 \) 13 \( \texttt{h}3 \)

In the last game we saw the inoffensive 13 \( \texttt{b}4 \). Here Larsen faces what he considers to be strongest, and which is most popular in the database.

13...\( \texttt{h}5 \)

13...\( \texttt{xf}3 \) 14 \( \texttt{xf}3 \) \( \texttt{e}7 \) is simpler, but Larsen has cleverly found squares for all his pieces and sees no need to exchange.

14 \( \texttt{d}2 \) \( \texttt{g}6 \) 15 \( \texttt{h}2 \) \( \texttt{b}6! \)

Another important counter-attack, quite in Larsen’s style. I noticed in my
book on Bird's Opening (where the bold Birdophile Bent was often featured) that Larsen loves to bring pawns toward the centre via exchange: note that here his a-pawn steps one square closer to the centre, while the a-file opens.

16 cxb6 axb6 17 ∆g4 ∆e7 18 ∆f3 ∆b4

Black pressures White across the board.

19 a3 ∆xa3 20 ∆xa3 ∆xa3 21 ∆xd5

24 b5 may be a slight improvement, but many variations like the following are similar to the game, where Black ends up with an outside passed pawn:

24...∆b4 25 ∆c1 ∆d3 26 ∆d1 ∆xb5 27 ∆f4 ∆d7 28 ∆xc7 ∆g6 29 ∆b1 ∆a5 30 ∆g3 ∆c8 31 ∆xd7 ∆xd7 32 ∆e3 b5 etc.

24...∆xb4 25 ∆xb4 ∆xb4 26 ∆xc7 b5

Black has a small endgame advantage due to the more distant passed pawn, and converts this into a win with excellent technique.

27 d5 ∆f5

The white d-pawn is blockaded, but Black's b-pawn is not.

28 ∆e5 ∆c8 29 ∆b6 ∆d6 30 ∆xg6 hxg6 31 g4 ∆h4 32 ∆e2 ∆c2!

Taking advantage of a tactic to get his rook to the seventh – now Black's advantage is clear.

33 ∆d3

The pawn is poisoned, for if 33 ∆xb5 ∆b2 34 ∆d8 (forced) 44...∆f3+ 35 ∆g2 ∆d2 36 ∆d3 (again forced, as Black has a winning attack after 36 ∆d1 ∆e4; e.g. 37 ∆f1 ∆xf2+ 38 ∆h1 ∆g3+ 39 ∆g1 ∆c5, or 37 ∆e1 ∆xf2+ 38
Alekhine Alert!

32 g1 h2+ 39 h1 g3 mate, or 38 h1 g3+ 39 g1 c5) 36...xf1 37 xf1 c5 38 h4 g5 39 g3 d2 and Black should win the exchange up ending.

33...d2 34 e4 f5 35 b1 b4

The difference between the passed pawns is enormous.

36 d8 f3+ 37 g2 fxg4 38 hgx4 e5 39 g5 d4 40 f3 b3

Instead of the complicated 40...xg4, Black simply presses on with his passer!

41 e4 b2 42 b1 c4 43 c2

43 f2 resists longer, but Black should win with 43...e5 as his pawn on the seventh, now protected by two minor pieces, is just too strong.

43...e7!

Diverting the bishop from d2; e.g.

44 xe7 d2+ 45 g3 xc2 46 b4 c1 and wins.

44 b3 xg5 45 xc4 c1!

The average person would win with 45...xc4 46 xb2 d4, but Bent has a spectacular zugzwang in mind.

46 b3 g5 47 f2 f7 0-1

It transpires that White has no useful moves, while Black will bring his king to d6, sac the exchange on d5, and then win as in a king and pawn ending, since the white rook is helpless.

Here are some beautiful variations – from the days of slow time limits and adjournments. I always enjoy games like this, and fine analysis, but I look on them with a certain nostalgia – such endgame beauty will never be seen again: 48 e2 (48 d6+ e8 doesn’t change anything) 48...e7 49 f2 d6 50 e2 xd5! 51 xd5 (if White refuses, then 51 e1 c5 52 e2 d4 53 e6 b4 54 f7 c3 55 g8 d2+ 56 e1 d4 57 h7 e3 58 e4 f2 59 b7 fx3! and Black will even sac the ox on g4 if he has to – White will finally have to take or resign!) 51...xd5 52 d3 e5 53 e2 (or 53 c3 f4 54 xb2 xb2+ 55 xb2 xf3 and now it really is a pawn ending – winning for Black!) 53...f4 54 f2 g6! (Bent’s point: he has this key “pawn ending” tempo) 55 g2 (either way is fatal; if 55 e2 g3 56 e1 xf3 57 f1 xg4...
58 \( g2 \) \( f4 \) 59 \( f2 \) \( g4 \) 60 \( g2 \) \( g3 \) 61 \( g1 \) \( f3 \) 62 \( f1 \) \( g2+ \) 63 \( g1 \) \( g5! \) 64 \( h2 \) \( f2 \) 65 \( h3 \) \( g1\text{R}! \) 66 \( h2 \) \( g3 \) and mates) 55...\( e3 \) 56 \( g3 \) \( d3 \) 57 \( xxb2 \) (if 57 \( f2 \) \( c2 \) and White can't even get \( f3\)-\( f4 \) in) 57...\( xxb2 \) 58 \( f4 \) \( gxf4+ \) 59 \( xxf4 \) \( c1+ \) 60 \( e5 \) \( g5 \) 61 \( f5 \) \( f4 \) 62 \( g6 \) \( e3 \) and wins.

White did his own analysis and foresaw his beautiful death.

I was in the midst of writing this book when I played this game and had already thoroughly studied the ideas – so I follow my own recommendation to the letter! Note again that by this move order I avoid White’s “solid machine” of \( c3/d3/e2 \), as that development is now simply impossible since the d-pawn hangs.

7 \( e2 \)

The aggressive 7 \( d5 \) will be considered in the next game; 7 \( f3 \) is of course met by 7...\( g4 \).

And after 7 \( e3 \) (White still tries to get the machine set up but, as we will see, this is not possible) 7...\( e7 \) 8 \( d3 \) 0-0 9 \( gge2 \) \( b4 \) catches the light-squared bishop with equality, for if 10 \( b1 \) \( c4 \) 11 a3, then not 11...\( c6?? \) 12 \( wd3 \) winning a piece, but the simple 11...\( xe3! \) (Black has something to take!) 12 \( fxe3 \) \( c6 \) and Black was just a pawn up in NN-T.Taylor, blitz game 2009.

7...\( e7 \) 8 \( f3 \)

White can prevent Black’s next with 8 \( h3 \), but only at the cost of time: 8...0-0 9 \( f3 \) \( e8 \) (or 9...\( f5 \) 10 0-0 \( e8 \) 11 a3 \( f6 \) 12 \( e1 \) \( a5 \) 13 b3 c5 14 \( e3 \) \( d5 \) 15 \( cxd5 \) \( xd5 \) 16 \( xd5 \) \( wd5 \) 17 \( dxc5 \) \( xd1 \) 18 \( xd1 \) \( d3 \) and now, instead of retreating with 19...\( e6 \) as in J.Benjamin-A.Wohl, Sydney 1999, Black could play the simple 19...\( xd3 \) 20 \( xd3 \) a5 with a slight edge in view of White’s split pawns) 10 0-0 \( f6 \) 11 \( f4 \) \( f5 \) 12 \( e1 \) \( h6 \) 13 \( c1 \) \( d7 \) 14 c5 dxc5 15 dxc5 \( xd1 \) 16
Alekhine Alert!

$\text{Ncxd1 Nxc3 17 bxc3}$ (again the split white pawns are seen) 17...$\text{Qd4}$ 18 $\text{Nxc7 Qxc3}$ 19 $\text{Qd2 Qe4}$ 20 $\text{Qc2 Qc8}$ 21 $\text{Qh2 Qxf2!}$ and Black won a pawn and eventually the game in L.Coope-A.Baburin, Bunratty 2006.

8...$\text{Qg4}$ 9 0-0 0-0 10 $\text{d5}$

Now 10 $\text{Qe3 Qf6}$ 11 $\text{b3}$ d5 transposes to the previous two Larsen games, so my opponent tries radically to prevent the coming ...d6-d5 – but while her pawn advance gains space, Black also gains the excellent e5-square for his knight.

10...$\text{Qxf3}$

10...$\text{Qe5}$ is also possible, and with good squares for his pieces, Black has few problems: 11 $\text{Qxe5 Qxe2}$ 12 $\text{Qxe2}$ (the desperado likewise gets nowhere: 12 $\text{Qxf7}$ $\text{Qxd1}$ 13 $\text{Qxd8}$ $\text{Qxd8}$ 14 $\text{Qxd1}$ $\text{Qxc4}$ with equality) 12...$\text{Qxe5}$ 13 $\text{Qxe5}$ $\text{Qxc4}$ is equal. It's worth pointing out that such balanced positions are also quite interesting, and the better player might well win them – while the Voronezh sufferer must usually try to force a draw, as anything more is usu-

ally impossible in those positions.

11 $\text{Qxf3}$ $\text{Qe5}$ 12 $\text{b3}$ a5

A sharp and active move in Larsen's style, though not the only possibility.

Vaganian's choice, 12...$\text{Qg5}$, is very simple, immediately easing the position through exchanges.

After 13 $\text{b2}$ $\text{Qxf3}$+ 14 $\text{Qxf3}$ $\text{Qf6}$ 15 $\text{Qae1 Qd7}$ 16 $\text{Qd1}$ $\text{Qe8}$ 17 $\text{Qxf6}$ $\text{Qxf6}$ 18 $\text{Qxf6}$ $\text{Qxf6}$ 19 $\text{Qc3}$ a6 20 $\text{f3}$, I would assess the position as completely equal – but it's far from a dead draw. In a classic GM grind, Vaganian manages to put the pressure on and win this game: 20...$\text{Qd7}$ 21 $\text{Qf2}$ $\text{Qe5}$ 22 $\text{Qe3}$ (I think 22 $\text{Qg3}$!, staying away from knight forks, is White's best, and then after 22...$\text{Qd3}$ 23 $\text{Qxe8+}$ $\text{Qxe8}$ 24 $\text{Qd1}$, say, White has good chances to draw; outside of this slight inaccuracy it's pretty hard to find a real mistake on White's part) 22...$\text{f5}$ 23 $\text{Qd1}$ $\text{Qe7}$ 24 h3 $\text{Qae8}$ 25 $\text{Qe2}$ g5 26 g3 $\text{Qf7}$ 27 $\text{Qd4}$ $\text{Qf6}$ 28 $\text{Qc2}$ h5 29 $\text{Qe2}$ g4 30 fxg4 hxg4 31 h4 $\text{Qf3}$ 32 $\text{Qd3}$ $\text{Qe4}$ 33 $\text{Qb2}$ $\text{Qxe2}$ 34 a4 $\text{a5}$ 35 $\text{Qc3}$ $\text{Qe1}$ 36 $\text{Qe2}$ $\text{Qxe2+}$ 37 $\text{Qxe2}$ $\text{Qb1}$ 38 $\text{Qf4}$ $\text{Qb2+}$ 39 $\text{Qe3}$ $\text{Qe1}$ 40 $\text{Qc3}$ $\text{Qg2}$+ 41 $\text{Qxg2}$...
\( \text{xg2} 42 \text{d4 f4! 43 gxf4 xf5 44 c5 xf4 45 cxd6 cxd6 46 ec7 ed2+ 47 ec3 xd5} \) (Black picks off White’s advanced centre pawn in true hypermodern fashion!) 48 \text{xb7 g3} 49 \text{g7 f3} 50 \text{b4 axb4+ 51 xb4} \text{d4+ 52 b5 g2 0-1 S.Belkhodja-R.Vaganian, FIDE World Ch., Moscow 2001.}

13 \text{b2}

13 \text{e3 xf3+ 14 xf3 d7} is simple equality: White’s slight space advantage means nothing with only two minor pieces on the board, and White’s advanced pawns might be vulnerable later, as we saw in the Vaganian ending.

White could play 13 \text{a4} to stop Black’s pawn break, but after 13...\text{xf3+ 14 xf3 d7} Black has good play with ideal squares for his minor pieces at c5 (knight) and f6 (bishop).

13...\text{a4}

Black has significant play on the queenside, and there is no risk even if White can sometime “win” a pawn with bxa4, as the white pawns will be too broken. Meanwhile Black always threatens a rook incursion (see the following note) if the a1-rook moves away.

14 \text{e4}

If instead 14 \text{e2 e8 15 wc2 g6 16 g3} (White’s extra pawn is not felt after 16 \text{xa4 xa4} 17 bxa4 \text{f6} 18 ab1 b6, when Black can pressure many fixed targets) 16...\text{f8 17 e4 g7} 18 f4 ed7 19 \text{xg7 xg7} 20 wc3+ \text{g8} 21 \text{f3 f5 22 g5 wf6 23 xf6 xf6} 24 \text{e6 e7} 25 \text{ae1 axb3} 26 axb3 \text{a3} with good queenside counterplay – note that White can’t play 27 \text{e3} due to 27...\text{xc4!}, winning a pawn.

14...\text{f5} 15 \text{g3 f6}

It’s amazing that after a few moves there is no clear way for White (I) to solve her problems.

16 \text{d4}

White offers doubled pawns, hoping to attack on the kingside, but it turns out only Black has an attack. On the other hand, 16 \text{c3 g6} is slightly better for Black in view of White’s bad knight; while after 16 \text{e2 f4} 17 \text{h5 f3} 18 \text{xf6+ xf6} 19 \text{d3} (not 19 \text{xf3?}
Since f3 is indefensible (29 \( \text{d2} \) \( \text{wxh2}+! \) and mates again), White must put her faith in her advanced pawns – but Black’s attack cannot be stopped!

29...\( \text{xf3} \) 30 \( \text{xf3} \)

30 dxc7 \( \text{wxh2}+ \) 31 \( \text{hxh2} \) \( \text{hxh2}+ \) 32 \( \text{hxh2} \) \( \text{hxh2} \) is a slightly fancier mate.

30...\( \text{xf3} \) 31 dxc7

White is one move away from queening with check, but I have an Alekhine-style mating combination – in the end it’s both rooks, not the queen, that is sacrificed on h2!

31...\( \text{hxh2}+! \)

I secure a powerful outpost for my knight on e5, which can no longer be driven away by any white pawn – Black is clearly better and we haven’t reached move 20 yet!

19 \( \text{e4} \) \( \text{d7} \) 20 \( \text{h1} \) \( \text{e5} \) 21 \( \text{d2} \) \( \text{h4} \)

22 b4 \( \text{f5} \) 23 \( \text{g1} \) \( \text{af8} \) 24 \( \text{c5} \)

Another possibility is 24 \( \text{g2} \) \( \text{h5} \) 25 \( \text{ag1} \) g6 26 \( \text{wa7} \) \( \text{h3} \) 27 \( \text{xa4} \) \( \text{xf3} \) 28 \( \text{xf3} \) \( \text{xf3} \) 29 \( \text{xd1} \) \( \text{xd1} \) 30 \( \text{xd1} \) f3 31 \( \text{g3} \) \( \text{e5} \), but Black’s advantage persists in the ending; the dark side of White’s bold 10 d5 is seen as Black’s pieces use the e5-square.

24...\( \text{f6} \) 25 \( \text{g2} \)

Or 25 cxd6 \( \text{xd6} \) and d5 is weak.

25...\( \text{h6} \) 26 \( \text{ag1} \) g6 27 \( \text{c3} \)

After 27 cxd6 \( \text{fh5} \) 28 dxc7 \( \text{hxh2}+! \) forces mate.

27...\( \text{fh5} \)

Black brings every piece to the attack!

28 \( \text{f1} \) \( \text{h3} \) 29 cxd6

32 \( \text{hxh2} \) \( \text{hxh2}+ \) 0-1

In view of 33 \( \text{hxh2} \) \( \text{h5} \) mate.

This is probably my best game to date with Alekhine’s Defence.

If Black knows the ideas of the Exchange Variation with 5...exd6 (and can memorize 6 moves – as opposed to 33!) then one can calmly play for a win in Larsen style. White’s game is not so easy, especially when one sees the Vaganian game in the notes, where White reached “equality” but could not convert that into “draw”.

140
1 e4 d5 2 e5 c6 3 c4 b6 4 d4 d6 5 exd6 exd6 6 c3

For 6 f3, planning to castle queenside and attack, see the next game. Note that if White wants to play this attack he has to play it now, as after 6 c3 my recommended 6...c6 prevents f3.

6...c6 7 d5 e5 8 f4

Unless White plays this move quickly, the early d4-d5 has no independent significance, and will transpose to something similar to the previous game, where Black had no problems.

Now Black, facing a serious cramp, has to counter accurately. In general, Black needs to get a minor piece off, and must be careful, as in the note to move 8, that he does not allow a White attack.

8...Ed7

Best: the knight can re-emerge on c5 or f6.

I don’t recommend 8...g6 as White won’t go for the pawn with d4 but will continue as follows, keeping a space advantage, while the black knight on g6 has little scope: 9 d3 h4?! (this manoeuvre fails, as nothing is exchanged and the black pieces get in each other’s way) 10 g3 f5 (the wandering knight ends up on f5, blocking the c8-bishop) 11 f3 g6 12 0-0 e7 13 a4 a5 14 d2 0-0 15 g4 h4 16 xh4 xh4 17 f5 g5 18 e4 xd2 19 xd2 (by the time Black has made some exchanges, White has a winning attack!) 19...h4 20 f4 g5 21 f6+ h8 22 e4 d7 23 c3 e5 24 xe5! dx5 25 xe5 and White converted easily in A.Giaccio-F.Tabak, Ostende 2002.

9 f3

White went on a pawn-snatching expedition in the following game – and barely drew: 9 d4 e7! 10 xg7 f6 11 g4 xc3+ 12 bx3 f6 13 d2 c5 14 g5 xg5 15 fxg5 f5 16 0-0 d3+ 17 xd3 xd3 18 c5 xd5 (Black has regained his pawn with a good game, but doesn’t seem to have enough to win) 19 cx6 cx6 20 h3 c8 21 f4 xf4 22 xf4 xc3+ 23 b2 c2+ 24 b3 f2 25 xd3 xf4 ½-½ Art.Minasian-Ara.Minasian, Armenian Ch., Yerevan 1999.

9...e7 10 e2 0-0 11 0-0

Black’s main goal in this variation is to exchange one pair of minor pieces
(two is even better) to nullify White’s space advantage (or more accurately, turn it into a liability, as advanced pawns without pieces to support them can become weak).

will own the centre with moves like ...\( \text{f5} \) and ...\( \text{e8} \); or if White takes the other piece then 13 \( \text{dxc5} \) dxc5 14 \( \text{e5} \) \( \text{d7} \) and he can’t keep the long diagonal closed, while the hole at d4 is permanent.

11...\( \text{e8} \) 12 \( \text{c2} \) h6

This is way too “careful”, and now White completes his development.

13 \( \text{d2} \) \( \text{f6} \) 14 \( \text{ae1} \) c6 15 dxc6 bxc6
16 \( \text{e4} \) \( \text{c5} \) 17 \( \text{xc5} \) dxc5

This position should be easy for Black: it looks like a King’s Indian Four Pawns Attack gone horribly wrong, as one of the centre pawns is missing and the line of the remaining three is crooked, giving Black squares for his pieces.

Nonetheless, in the game White gets good chances – or could have obtained good chances, had he sacrificed (and not lost!) a pawn. The reason this happened was that the Grandmaster played too slowly over the next few moves.

In fact, Black is already at least equal or better: he just needs to take over the open spaces behind White’s pawns. Best now is 11...\( \text{f6} \), seizing the unobstructed long diagonal, and if 12 \( \text{e4} \) then 12...\( \text{c5}! \), forcing exchanges. White has no completely satisfactory answer, for if 13 \( \text{xf6+} \) \( \text{xf6} \) and Black

18 \( \text{d3?} \)

Just when the first player has chances for advantage with a bold sacrifice – he overlooks a trick and loses a pawn. Correct is 18 \( \text{e5!} \) \( \text{e6} \) (or 18...\( \text{xe5} \) 19 \( \text{fxe5} \) \( \text{xe5} \) 20 \( \text{c3} \) with wonderful two bishop compensation for the pawn, while the knight on b6 is shut out of the game, and Black’s doubled pawns are weak) 19 b3 (again the black knight is blocked) 19...\( \text{d4+} \) 20 \( \text{f2} \) \( \text{xe5} \) 21 \( \text{fxe5} \) \( \text{xe5} \) 22 \( \text{c3} \) \( \text{g5} \) 23 \( \text{d3} \) with the two bishops and a terrific attack for the pawn – I would definitely rather be White here.

18...\( \text{xe1} \) 19 \( \text{xe1} \) \( \text{xb2}! \)
This is what White missed: the queen is overloaded.

20 \( \text{e4} \) \( \text{w6} \) 21 \( \text{e5} \) \( \text{d4+} \)

When I saw this position I suddenly had a Fischer flashback! Check out this instructive win, especially the position and pawn structure after Black's 25th move: 1 d4 \( \text{f6} \) 2 c4 g6 3 \( \text{c3} \) \( \text{g7} \) 4 e4 d6 5 \( \text{f3} \) 0-0 6 \( \text{e2} \) e5 7 d5 \( \text{bd7} \) 8 0-0 \( \text{c5} \) 9 \( \text{wc2} \) a5 10 \( \text{g5} \) h6 11 \( \text{e3} \) \( \text{g4} \) 12 \( \text{xc5} \) dxc5 13 h3 \( \text{f6} \) 14 \( \text{xe5} \) \( \text{xd5} \) 15 cxd5 \( \text{xe5} \) 16 f4 \( \text{d4+} \) 17 \( \text{h1} \) \( \text{h4} \) 18 \( \text{wd3} \) c6 19 \( \text{f3} \) h5 20 f5 \( \text{d7} \) 21 \( \text{c4} \) g5 22 \( \text{had1} \) \( \text{ae8} \) 23 dxc6 \( \text{xc6} \) 24 \( \text{xd5} \) \( \text{e5} \) 25 \( \text{xc6} \) bxc6

\( \text{xa4} \) \( \text{c2+} \) 50 \( \text{h1} \) c5 51 \( \text{a3} \) \( \text{xf5} \) 52 \( \text{h2} \) \( \text{c1+} \) 53 \( \text{g2} \) g4 54 \( \text{h1} \) \( \text{c2+} \) 55 \( \text{f1} \) \( \text{g5} \) 56 \( \text{h8} \) f5 57 \( \text{g8+} \) \( \text{h4} \) 58 \( \text{e1} \) f4 59 \( \text{d1} \) \( \text{g2} \) 60 \( \text{a6} \) f3 61 \( \text{h6+} \) \( \text{g3} \) 62 \( \text{hg6} \) \( \text{f4} \) 63 a4 \( \text{g1+} \) 64 \( \text{d2} \) f2 65 \( \text{f8+} \) \( \text{g3} \) 0-1 S.Gligoric-R.J.Fischer, Siegen Olympiad 1970.

22 \( \text{h1} \) \( \text{e6} \) 23 \( \text{xc6} \)

23 \( \text{xc6} \) is better, so as to get rid of Black's monster bishop on d4.

23...\( \text{d8} \)

(Black has complete control of the centre and a dominating bishop – the doubled isolated pawns keep the white knight out of the game, and are not felt as a weakness) 26 \( \text{d3} \) \( \text{fe8} \) 27 \( \text{g3} \) \( \text{w} \) 28 \( \text{w} \) 29 \( \text{d3} \) h4 30 b3 \( \text{bb8} \) 31 g3 hxg3 32 \( \text{g2} \) \( \text{b4} \) 33 \( \text{c1} \) \( \text{f7} \) 34 \( \text{g3} \) \( \text{e7} \) 35 \( \text{e1} \) \( \text{e6} \) 36 \( \text{wh1} \) \( \text{e7} \) 37 h4 \( \text{wh7} \) 38 h5 \( \text{wh6} \) 39 \( \text{f3} \) \( \text{e5} \) 40 \( \text{e2} \) a4 41 \( \text{g3} \) c4 42 bx\( \text{c4} \) \( \text{b2} \) 43 \( \text{f1} \) \( \text{h5} \) 44 \( \text{e} \) 45 \( \text{f2+} \) 45 \( \text{g3} \) \( \text{xf1} \) 46 \( \text{h8} \) \( \text{xe4} \) 47 \( \text{a3} \) \( \text{g1+} \) 48 \( \text{h2} \) \( \text{c1} \) 49

Now White's advanced pawns (c4 and f4) are both weak, and soon Black picks up material as the Alekhine counter-attack begins.

24 \( \text{f3} \) \( \text{xe5} \) 25 \( \text{xe5} \)

If 25 \( \text{xe5} \) ? \( \text{xc4} \) wins.

25...\( \text{wh4} \) 26 \( \text{a5} \) \( \text{d4} \) 27 \( \text{e4} \) \( \text{xe4} \) 28 \( \text{xe4} \) \( \text{f2?!} \)

Over elaborate: 28...\( \text{xe4} \) 29 \( \text{xe4} \) \( \text{xc4} \) with an extra pawn is much simpler and stronger.

29 \( \text{h3} \)?

White should play 29 \( \text{e2} \).

29...\( \text{xa2} \)

Black is a good pawn up and patiently grinds to victory, GM style.
53...c6! 0-1

White’s early aggression didn’t amount to much, though when Black played inaccurately, White could have come back strongly with a pawn sacrifice. However, the reader sees that Black should have no problems with this variation, if he immediately seizes the lines behind White’s prematurely pushed pawns.

53...f3?

53 h3 is better, though after 53...f2 Black will win in the long run; note the possibility of a king march to g5, targeting the white g-pawn. With three weak pawns White is doomed eventually, but after the played 53 f3, “eventually” becomes just one move!

It’s hard to believe this early queen attack can worry Black – and it doesn’t! White plans queenside castling and a kingside attack, but such ideas are far too naive, and Black counters easily.

6...c6

Black’s typical response, made even stronger by the fact that d4 is unprotected.
7 \( \mathcal{e}3 \) \( \mathcal{e}7! \)

As Alekhine has said, sometimes the best way to meet an eccentricity in the opening is to come back with one of your own – here Black’s clumsy queen comes with direct tactical threats that stop White’s plan.

Of course it’s also possible to let White have his fun, then counter-attack, as in the following much analyzed game. If you like this sort of thing, go for it! 7...\( \mathcal{e}7 \) 8 \( \mathcal{c}3 \) 0-0 9 0-0-0 \( \mathcal{e}6 \) 10 b3 (10 d5 doesn’t win anything in view of 10...\( \mathcal{e}5 \)) 10...a5 11 c5 \( \mathcal{d}7 \) 12 \( \mathcal{b}5 \) \( \mathcal{b}4 \) 13 \( \mathcal{g}e2 \) \( \mathcal{c}6 \) 14 \( \mathcal{d}3 \) a4 15 \( \mathcal{d}a4 \) b5 16 cxb6 \( \mathcal{d}a2+ \) 17 \( \mathcal{b}2 \) \( \mathcal{xb}6 \) 18 \( \mathcal{xb}6 \) \( \mathcal{xb}6 \) 19 d5 \( \mathcal{w}a5 \) 20 dxe6 \( \mathcal{w}a3+ \) 21 \( \mathcal{c}2 \) \( \mathcal{b}4+ \) 22 \( \mathcal{d}2 \) \( \mathcal{d}x d3 \) 23 \( \mathcal{d}x d3 \) \( \mathcal{w}x b3+ \) (White gets an extra piece and a centralized king!) 24 \( \mathcal{c}3 \) \( \mathcal{f}6 \) 25 exf7+ \( \mathcal{h}8 \) 26 \( \mathcal{d}d4 \) \( \mathcal{d}x d4 \) 27 \( \mathcal{d}x d4 \) d5 28 \( \mathcal{a}1 \) \( \mathcal{c}4+ \) 29 \( \mathcal{e}5 \) (now that’s a bold king!) 29...\( \mathcal{a}d8 \) 30 \( \mathcal{h}c1 \) d4 31 \( \mathcal{a}4 \) \( \mathcal{w}b4 \) 32 \( \mathcal{d}c5 \) d3 33 \( \mathcal{w}e4 \) \( \mathcal{b}2+ \) 34 \( \mathcal{f}4 \) \( \mathcal{w}x f2+ \) 35 \( \mathcal{g}5 \) h6+ 36 \( \mathcal{h}5 \) \( \mathcal{d}5+ \) 37 \( \mathcal{g}4 \) \( \mathcal{g}5+ \) 38 \( \mathcal{h}3 \) \( \mathcal{h}5+ \) 39 \( \mathcal{g}4 \) \( \mathcal{h}4 \) (yet mate comes even to the bold) 0-1 H.Hagesaether-A.Wohl, Ubeda 2000.

8 \( \mathcal{e}2 \)

White is already struggling to equalize: 8 d5 \( \mathcal{d}d4 \) 9 \( \mathcal{w}d1 \) \( \mathcal{f}5 \) and 8 \( \mathcal{c}3 \) \( \mathcal{d}x d4 \) both give Black the advantage due to the pin.

8...\( \mathcal{b}4! \)

A primitive but strong move, which shows another drawback of the white queen on f3, not holding c2.

9 \( \mathcal{a}3 \)

We’ve seen, over and over, that the white knight is awkward here, and the black knight becomes hard to drive away. If Black can play ...\( \mathcal{b}4 \) successfully in the Alekhine, by all means do!

9...\( \mathcal{c}6 \) 10 \( \mathcal{h}3 \) h5

White can’t castle queenside and has to be unhappy about the failure of his opening idea, though his position would not be so bad if he continued with 11 \( \mathcal{w}g3 \).

11 \( \mathcal{d}2 \) a5

The knight likes its spot in White’s territory and refuses to leave!

12 \( \mathcal{f}4 \) \( \mathcal{g}4 \) 13 \( \mathcal{w}e3 \) \( \mathcal{d}x e2 \) 14 \( \mathcal{w}x e2 \) \( \mathcal{d}7 \)

15 \( \mathcal{w}x e7+ \)

15 \( \mathcal{h}e1 \) g5 16 \( \mathcal{h}3 \) \( \mathcal{w}e8 \) 17 \( \mathcal{f}1 \) \( \mathcal{w}e3 \) 18 \( \mathcal{w}e3 \) g4 19 \( \mathcal{f}4 \) \( \mathcal{g}7 \) is probably more advantageous for Black than it first looks, as the a1-rook still can’t enter the game since it’s tied to the a-pawn.

15...\( \mathcal{w}e7 \) 16 h4?! \( \mathcal{f}6 \)

As usual, White’s advanced pawns come to be weaknesses in the Alekhine endgame. Here Black’s bishop aims at
two – h4 and d4 (of course the former should not have advanced at all!).

17  \( \text{c}3 \) g6 18  \( \text{d}3 \) \( \text{a}4 \) 19  \( \text{d}2 \)

if 19  \( \text{xb}4 \) axb4 20  \( \text{xb}4 \) \( \text{xb}2 \) with a clear plus for Black.

19...\( \text{he}8 \) 20  \( \text{c}2 \)

The bad knight on a3 continues to be a problem: White finally exchanges it, but lets the black rook get to the seventh rank.

20...\( \text{xc}2 \) 21  \( \text{xc}2 \) \( \text{e}2+ \) 22  \( \text{b}3 \)  \( \text{xc}3 \)

23  \( \text{bxc}3 \) b5

Black has targets across the board; it’s highly unlikely any human could draw this with White.

24  \( \text{cxb}5 \) cxb5 25 a3 \( \text{ae}8 \) 26 \( \text{ad}1 \) \( \text{c}6 \)

27  \( \text{d}5+ \) \( \text{b}6 \) 28 a4 \( \text{c}8 \) 29 \( \text{c}1 \) \( \text{d}2 \)

29...\( \text{xc}3 \) works right away.

30 \( \text{h}3 \) \( \text{xc}3! \)

He sees it! Black wins a clear pawn, for if 31 \( \text{xc}3 \) bxa4+.

31  \( \text{axb}5 \) \( \text{xb}5 \) 32 \( \text{b}1 \) \( \text{b}4 \) 33 \( \text{xb}4 \) \( \text{axb}4 \) 34 \( \text{e}1 \)

34 \( \text{b}2 \) avoids mate, but after 34...\( \text{xd}5 \) Black just takes an overextended pawn with a typical Alekhine ending crush.

34...\( \text{a}8 \) 0-1

Mate is inevitable.

White’s 6 \( \text{f}3 \) doesn’t do much: Black can easily meet it as here, or even allow White’s plan and then counter-attack against the rather airy white king.

**Game 45**

A. Leonenko-O. Sorochan

Ukrainian Junior Championship, Kiev 2000

1  \( \text{e}4 \) \( \text{f}6 \) 2 \( \text{e}5 \) \( \text{d}5 \) 3 \( \text{d}4 \) \( \text{d}6 \) 4 \( \text{c}4 \) \( \text{b}6 \) 5

exd6 exd6 6 a4

I became very interested in this rarely-played move when I discovered that, while there were only four games with it in the database, White won them all! How could such a non-developing move be so powerful? I found out it’s probably not all that powerful, but Black does need to play well, as we will see in the main game (with the other three losses referred to in the notes).
Exchange Variation: The Ox is not a Scary Animal

But before we get to all that, there is another non-developing move, 6 h3, that is sometimes played here. Usually this will transpose to 6 ćc3 ćc6 7 će2 će7 8 h3 covered in the notes to Game 42; but here’s another example, where White tries to suppress all of Black’s play ...and fails miserably! Let’s take a look: 6 h3 ćc6 (my all purpose move) 7 ćf3 ćf5 8 a3 (White tries to prevent everything, but Black gets board-wide Alekhine play anyway!) 8...a5 9 b3 (White has five pawns out and one piece!) 9...će7 10 ćd3 ćg6 11 ćc3 d5 (the typical break) 12 c5 ćc8 13 0-0 0-0 14 ćf4 ć8a7 37 će1 ćxb3 38 ćxe6 ćxa1 39 će8+ ćh7 (Black’s knight cannot be killed; White must resign) 0-1 D. Svidinovsky-A. Gnidenko, St Petersburg 2006.

The moral of this story is that White can’t smother an Alekhine player who has the true counter-attacking spirit!

Now back to the main game, where White has just played 6 a4, looking at a hundred percent score in the database...

6...a5

Best: Black stops the pawn advance and secures a good outpost square in White’s territory, namely b4.

The idea of White’s last is obviously to play a4-a5, push the black knight back, and gain a space advantage across the entire queenside – clearly it’s not good to allow this as we will see in the game below, where Black gets so cramped he loses a piece in the middle of the board!

6...g6 7 a5 ć6d7 8 ćf3 ćg7 9 će2 0-0 10 0-0 ćc6 11 ćc3 ćf6 12 d5 će7 13 će1 ćf5 14 ćd3 ćg4 15 ćg5 ćf6 16 ćxf6 ćxf6 17 ćxf5 ćxf5 18 ćd4
\[ \text{Alekhine Alert!} \]

\[ \text{\ ammunition}4 \text{cxd4 \dxc3} (19...\text{d7 is preferable, but White is still clearly better, with the a-pawn leading the charge: 20 a6 b6 21 \text{cxb5 \xf8c8 22 \text{e7 d5 23 f4}} \text{f8 24 \text{xd7 \xd7 25 \c6 \c5 26 \a3 \g7 27 \text{cxa7 \f8 28 b4 \e4 29 \c6 \fc8 30 a7 with a tremendous bind for the exchange, or just 22 f4!? and White has a space grind without complications) 20 b3 f5 21 \text{ed1 (decisive) 21...\text{xc4 (21...\text{e4 loses to 22 f3) 22}} bxc4 \text{e5 23 \text{e6 \fc8 24 \text{xc7 \xc4 25 \text{xa8 \xa8 26 \text{e1 \c8 27 f4 b6 28 axb6 axb6 29 \text{e7 \a5 30 \a4 \c4 31 \b7 1-0 F.Barrosso Martinez-R.Stout, correspondence 1999.}})}}}

So the a-pawn must be stopped!

7 \text{c3}

The other two games break away here – let’s see why Black loses:

a) 7 \text{d3 \c6 8 \e3}


\[ \text{\text{8...\text{e7?! (Black goes off the rails; while this move worked in the previous game, with the white queen misplaced on f3, here it’s just too extravagant – as the reader should know by now, 8...\b4 is correct, catching the light-}}}

\text{squared bishop with equality, as 9 \text{e2 allows 9...\text{f5 with advantage) 9 \text{e2 \f5 10 \text{c3 \b4 11 \text{c1 0-0-0 (and now Black “justifies” his early queen development by castling into an attack!) 12 \f3 \g4 13 b3 c5 14 0-0 g6 15 \text{e1 \g7 16 \b5 h6 17 \text{d2 \f8 18 h3 \xf3 19 \xf3 f5 20 g3 g5 21 \text{ed1 \g8 22 dxc5 \xc4 (desperation, in view of 22...\text{dxc5 23 \d6+ \b8 24 \text{xc5 \e5 25 \text{xb4 axb4 26 c5 with a winning attack) 23 \text{xc4 f4 24 \text{g4+ \b8 25 \xc6 fx3 26 \text{xe3 \c6 27 \text{b6 \f6 28 \f3 1-0 S.Svonevci-D.Siroky, Slovakian Ch., Trecianske Teplice 2005.}})}}}

b) 7 b3 (this looks inoffensive but White wins in 20 moves – how did that happen?) 7...\text{e7 8 \f3 \f5? (off the track: the queen’s bishop can go to f5 when combined with a knight raid to b4 that forces \a3, or when White has wasted time with h2-h3 – but neither of these applies here; instead Black should equalize with 8...\text{g4 and ...\c6 following Larsen) 9 \text{d3 \xd3 10 \text{xd3 0-0 11 \f6 12 \text{a2 \c6 13 \e2 \d7 (13...d5 is necessary, counter-attacking and holding e4 – one sees that Black’s play is too passive, not at all in Larsen or Alekhine style) 14 \c3 \fe8 15 \e4 \f8 16 \fe1 \f8 (better is 16...\f8 17 \text{d5 \b4 18 \text{d2 \d7 19 \a3 which only loses a pawn) 17 \text{e6! (this pretty tactical blow abruptly ends the game) 17...\text{d7 18 \text{xe8+ \text{xe8 19 \text{xe8+ \text{xe8 20 \text{xe8 \xe8 1-0 S.Hedenström-E.Näckholm, Skelleftea 1999.}})}}}}}

148
Black failed to put pressure on d4 (no ...\diamond g4) and then failed to equalize in the centre (no ...d6-d5) and that was too much!

7...\diamond c6 8 b3 \diamond e7 9 \diamond f3 \diamond g4

In this game Black has continued correctly with my recommended development and has fully equalized already, dead equal on the Fritz-meter. Yet Black loses! Where does he go wrong?

10 \diamond e2 0-0 11 0-0 \diamond e8 12 d5 \diamond xf3 13 \diamond xf3 \diamond e5 14 \diamond e2 \diamond ed7 15 \diamond b2 \diamond f6 16 \diamond c2 \diamond c5 17 \diamond ae1 \diamond d7 18 \diamond d3 \diamond xd3 19 \diamond xd3

Black has done everything right so far: he has exchanged two minor pieces and contested the e-file – and should have no problems. And yet here he makes a slight mistake, which very very slowly leads to the loss of the game. Correct is to continue simplifying with 19...\diamond xe1 20 \diamond xe1 \diamond e8 21 \diamond d2 h6 22 \diamond e2 (alternatives are no better: if 22 \diamond e4? \diamond xb2 23 \diamond xb2 f5 and Black wins; White can’t avoid the exchange of bishops either, since after 22 \diamond c1 \diamond g5 23 f4? \diamond xf4! 24 \diamond xe8+ \diamond xe8 25 \diamond xf4 \diamond e1+ 26 \diamond f1 \diamond xc3 Black emerges a pawn ahead, or if 23 \diamond d1 \diamond xe1+ 24 \diamond xe1 \diamond xc1 25 \diamond xc1 \diamond e7 26 \diamond b5 c6 with good play for Black) 22...\diamond xb2 23 \diamond xb2 \diamond e7 24 \diamond d2 \diamond d7 25 \diamond f1 \diamond c5 26 \diamond d4 \diamond xe1+ 27 \diamond xe1 \diamond xe1+ 28 \diamond xe1 and the knight ending should be drawn; e.g. 28...\diamond f8 29 \diamond e2 g6 30 \diamond e3 \diamond e7 31 f4 f5 with dead equality.

20 \diamond c1!

Here’s the difference: in all the above lines Black exchanged bishop for bishop (I feel like I’m back writing my Budapest Gambit book, where that was a key idea) and not bishop for knight. With his last move, White avoids the bishop/bishop exchange and soon ends up in a bishop vs. knight ending, creating a tiny pull that he squeezes all the way to victory in 93 moves!!

20...\diamond ae8 21 \diamond e4 \diamond f5 22 \diamond xf6+ \diamond xf6

Now a long plus equals grind sets in. Yes, Black should draw this, but it’s not easy, which just shows how difficult a game chess is – Black played a
perfect opening and early middlegame, then after one slip must struggle for hours; and even if he succeeds in that struggle, he will only get half a point!

\[ 23 \text{xe}3 \text{xe}3 24 \text{x}e3 \text{d}7 25 \text{wd}2 \text{b}6 26 \text{e}1 \text{h}6 27 \text{f}1 \text{f}8 28 \text{d}4 \]

\[ \text{e}7 \text{g}7 41 \text{xc}7 \text{a}1+. 35...\text{xe}2 36 \text{xe}2 \text{f}4 37 \text{e}3 \text{f}5 38 \text{d}1 \text{h}5 39 \text{e}2 \text{e}5 40 \text{d}4 \text{g}3 41 \text{f}1 \text{g}6 42 \text{d}1 \text{d}7 43 \text{f}2 \text{e}5 44 \text{d}4 \text{d}3+ 45 \text{e}3 \text{b}4 46 \text{f}2 \text{f}5 47 \text{e}2 \text{f}6 48 \text{f}2 \text{h}4 49 \text{e}2 \text{f}7 50 \text{f}1 \]

28...\text{g}6

I think Black should go in for the king and pawn ending, despite the doubled pawns, as I don’t see any way for White to break through after 28...\text{xd}4 29 \text{xd}4 \text{xe}1+ 30 \text{xe}1 \text{c}5 31 \text{xc}5 \text{dxc}5.

29 \text{c}3 \text{g}4 30 \text{h}3 \text{g}6 31 \text{e}2 \text{e}4 32 \text{c}2 \text{e}5 33 \text{b}2 \text{h}2

33...\text{xb}2 34 \text{xb}2 \text{e}5 looks like an easier draw – the exchange of queens is probably inevitable in the long run, so Black should try to do it under favourable circumstances. Instead, by avoiding the exchange, he gives White more and more chances.

34 \text{f}3 \text{f}6 35 \text{g}1

35 \text{xf}6! is an amazing tactical shot, but it looks like Black comes out okay after 35...\text{gxf}6 36 \text{h}xh6+ \text{g}8 37 \text{xe}8+ \text{h}7 38 \text{e}3 \text{g}3 39 \text{e}4 \text{f}5 40

50...\text{d}3+ 51 \text{xd}3 \text{xd}3 52 \text{e}3 \text{g}6

Still avoiding exchanges – 52...\text{c}5 looks drawn; but could Black have been playing for a win?

53 \text{e}2 \text{e}5 54 \text{f}2 \text{h}5 55 \text{e}1 \text{g}5 56 \text{c}3 \text{g}6 57 \text{e}3 \text{f}5 58 \text{e}1 \text{d}7 59 \text{b}4!

The bishop comes into its own, as White exchanges pawns, giving his cleric more room to manoeuvre – and Black’s ...\text{c}5 will no longer target b3.

59...\text{xb}4 60 \text{xb}4 \text{c}5 61 \text{a}5 \text{bxa}5 62 \text{xa}5 \text{a}6 63 \text{c}3 \text{g}6

Now White is clearly better with bishop vs. knight, play on both sides, and target pawns all over – and so grinds to victory.

64 \text{d}4 \text{b}8 65 \text{f}4 \text{f}5 66 \text{fxg}5 \text{fxg}5 67 \text{a}3 \text{a}6 68 \text{f}3 \text{c}5 69 \text{d}2 \text{b}3 70 \text{c}3 \text{a}1 71 \text{e}3 \text{a}6 72 \text{d}4 \text{b}4 73 \text{b}2 \text{a}6 74 \text{c}1 \text{c}5 75 \text{d}2 \text{b}3 76
\textbf{Exchange Variation: The Ox is not a Scary Animal}

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{c}
\texttt{e1 c5 77 a5 a6 78 f3 e5 79 g4 d4 80 xg5 xc4 81 xh4 xd5}
82 g5 c5 83 h4 e6 84 g6 b4 85 h5 d5 86 d2 e7+ \\
\texttt{91 g6+ g7 92 g5 d4 93 h6+ g8 94 f6 c3 95 h7+ h8 96 h6! 1-0}
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

Mate is inevitable: a classic bishop vs. helpless knight finale.

Generally speaking, we see that 6 a4 is not a threat to the Alekhine's defence, but good endgame skills are always required!

\textbf{Summary}

The Exchange Variation is one of those "nothing" lines that poses no threat to the Alekhine, but is having a vogue now due to the stubbornness of the "we must take back toward the centre" brigade, who are memorizing as fast as they can and still losing!

But if you play like Larsen (5...exd6!) and add a little bit of Taylor accuracy (usually that means 6...c6), you will have every chance to equalize quickly and then play for a win.

\begin{itemize}
\item 87 g5?!
\item Not quite a perfect grind: White should win with 87 g7!, as after the played move Black might escape with 87...d5! – but Black is too exhausted to see this counter-chance.
\item 87...f7 88 g4 d5 89 f4 c6 90 g5 c4
\end{itemize}
Chapter Six

The Four Pawns Attack – Fracture Him!

Our Hero: Vladimir Sergeev

The Four Pawns Attack is a direct attempt to refute Alekhine’s Defence, so one must be prepared. That massive pawn centre could lead to a quick mating attack!

On the other hand, the general feeling is that this particular attack is more show than bite (statistically White only scores 50%) and, as mentioned in the Introduction, I only faced it once in the eleven recent tournament games where I played the Alekhine. Although I’ve played the Alekhine off and on throughout my career, the last Four Pawns Attack I can recall before that was when I beat Bill Atkinson with Black in the money round of a Philadelphia tournament, circa 1975! In fact, just to get a little more experience with the line, I set up a training game (see note to Game 51) to make up for my lack of tournament experience.

So don’t expect to get this too often! But you do need to be prepared, and my recommendation is to follow this chapter’s hero, the Ukrainian GM Vladimir Sergeev, and play 1 e4 d6 2 e5 d5 3 c4 b6 4 d4 d6 5 f4 g6!

But there are other moves...

Lines I Don’t Like

Game 46
A.Grischuk-P.Svidler
Odessa (rapid) 2009

1 e4 d6

This high-level game attracted my attention when I saw that an
Alekhine’s Defence was featured in Joel Benjamin’s “Game of the Week” on ICC. GM Benjamin makes an interesting comment in his introduction to the game, when he says that in the Modern Line after 4 ɗf3 “White gets the advantage no matter what Black plays” which is true as far as it goes, but how far does it go? Yes, I agree that if White plays in solid, positional Anand style, he gets a plus – as White gets in many openings – but how big is this plus? As we’ve seen in Chapters Three and Four, if Black in turn plays circumspectly and accurately, that plus may only amount to a few percentage points on Fritz, and should be well within a human drawing range.

But note again the virtually unanimous agreement that the Modern Line is the key test of the Alekhine; the Four Pawns Attack may be a good surprise weapon, but shouldn’t do much of anything if Black is prepared.

2 e5 ɗd5 3 d4 d6 4 c4 ɓb6 5 f4

This is the basic position of the Four Pawns Attack. White has a large advantage in space and would have an almost perfect position if his e-pawn were on e4 rather than e5, when he would have two level duos controlling the whole centre. This is one reason why I think the Four Pawns Attack vs. the King’s Indian is much stronger than this version: King’s Indian players have to suffer against those double duos and must work very hard to break up the smooth line of White’s pawns – here White’s impetuous advance on move 2 already broke the line (“Not before the bloody others, not after the bloody others, but with the bloody others!” as Michael Caine would say).

In our position Black’s d-pawn already has something to bite on, and that raises the possibility of ...c7-c5, blowing up White’s whole centre.

As I see it, White’s weaknesses (e5, d4) are on the long dark diagonal, so it’s natural and best to fianchetto the dark-squared bishop with 5...g6, planning ...g7 and an eventual ...c7-c5, resulting in the aforementioned central demolition – this is the essential nature of Sergeev’s system.

Nevertheless, Black has tried other plans, none of which I like too much: the most popular is seen in the main game, and I also give the back of the hand to some alternatives noted below.

P.Bücker-T.Keibekus, Detmold 1983, features the interesting but overly risky 5...g5, when Black sets about undermining with no thought to his own kingside! This is advocated and played
by the German correspondence master Michael Schirmer, but I think the kingside weaknesses are too significant if White simply develops with 6 \( \text{c}3 \! \) and then:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{a) 6...gxf4 (as in Bükcer-Kebbekus) 7 xf4 dxe5 8 aex5 \text{g}8 9 d5 (White is already much better after only simple moves: White controls the centre and Black's kingside is full of self-inflicted holes) 9...c6 10 \text{f}3 \text{g}4 11 \text{d}3 e6 12 0-0 \text{c}5+ 13 \text{h}1 \text{xd}5 14 \text{xd}5 \text{d}8 \text{g}7 15 \text{g}3 e5 16 \text{h}7 \text{h}8 17 \text{d}3 \text{x}f3 18 \text{x}f3 \text{e}7 19 \text{xf}7! (it's all over) 19...\text{g}5 (no acceptance is possible: 19...\text{x}f7 20 \text{g}6 or 19...\text{x}f7 20 \text{g}6+ \text{f}8 21 \text{f}1+ and wins) 20 \text{e}4 \text{h}6 21 \text{af}1 \text{d}4 22 \text{f}6+! \text{xf}6 (again the rook is immune: 22...\text{x}f7 23 \text{g}8+ \text{g}7 24 \text{h}6 wins the queen) 23 \text{x}f6 \text{c}1+ 24 \text{f}1 \text{c}5 25 \text{h}4 \text{d}6 26 \text{g}6 \text{x}g6 27 \text{hg}6 \text{h}4 28 \text{g}7+ 1-0, since 28...\text{d}8 29 \text{f}8 is mate.}\n
b) 6...e6 (as played by Schirmer himself) 7 \text{e}4 (7 \text{exd}6 \text{cxd}6 8 \text{fxg}5 looks like a good plus pawn to me, but the game continuation is fine) 7...dxe5 8 fxe5 \text{e}7 9 \text{e}3 and Black had a terrible position, even though the variation's high priest finally won in F.Ammann-M.Schirmer, correspondence 1992.

c) 6...\text{g}7 7 \text{f}3 \text{gxf4} 8 \text{xf4} \text{g}4 and now 9 c5!, forcing Black back, is correct (instead of 9 \text{e}2, after which White lost his way and the game in D.Winter-R.Polzin, Goch 1995), when I see nothing good for the Schirmerite; e.g. 9...dxe5 10 dxe5 \text{d}6 11 h3 \text{h}5 (or 11...\text{xe}5 12 \text{xe}5 \text{xf}3 13 \text{xf}3 \text{xe}5 14 \text{xb}7 \text{bc}6 15 \text{b}5 0-0 16 \text{d}1 \text{b}8 17 \text{a}6 \text{c}8 18 \text{c}8 \text{fc}8 19 \text{c}6 \text{c}6 20 b3 and White can grind, Voronezh style, with his queenside majority and superior pawn structure) 12 \text{g}4 \text{g}6 13 \text{a}4 0-0 14 0-0-0 \text{e}8 15 \text{d}4 e6 16 \text{b}5 \text{c}6 17 \text{c}4 \text{e}7 18 \text{e}4 \text{xe}4 19 \text{xe}4 \text{xc}5 20 \text{wc}2 \text{f}6 21 \text{xf}6 \text{xf}6 22 \text{e}3 and White will at least win his pawn back with attack.

5...dxe5 6 fxe5 \text{c}6

A.Kislinsky-V.Shpagin, Kharkov 2009, showcases the plan of 6...c5 followed by ...e7-e6.

\begin{center}
\begin{figure}
\includegraphics{chess_board.png}
\end{figure}
\end{center}
Black opens up the a3-f8 diagonal for his king's bishop but gives White, at least for the moment, complete central control – risky at best! 7 d5 e6 8 \texttt{c3} exd5 9 cxd5 (I like the mobile pawn centre...for White!) 9...c4

10 d6 (slamming shut the bishop's diagonal that Black has just opened cuts straight across his idea; White has other options here of course: if you don't know the following famous and much analyzed game, you should take a look – it's a classic example of how a big centre can be translated into a kingside attack – watch how Bronstein sacs all his pieces and dances with his king, confident that his attack will prevail in the end – and it does: 10 \texttt{f3} \texttt{g4} 11 \texttt{wd4} \texttt{xf3} 12 gxf3 \texttt{b4} 13 \texttt{xc4} 0-0 14 \texttt{g1} g6 15 \texttt{g5} \texttt{c7} 16 \texttt{b3} \texttt{c5} 17 \texttt{w4} \texttt{xc1} 18 d6 \texttt{w8} 19 \texttt{e2} \texttt{c5} 20 \texttt{d4} \texttt{d7} 21 \texttt{xc1} \texttt{w6} 22 \texttt{xc5} \texttt{xc5} 23 \texttt{f6}+ \texttt{h8} 24 \texttt{wh4} \texttt{wb}+ 25 \texttt{e3} h5 26 \texttt{xh5} \texttt{xb3}+ 27 axb3 \texttt{d5}+ 28 \texttt{d4} \texttt{e6}+ 29 \texttt{xd5} \texttt{xg5} 30 \texttt{f6}+ \texttt{g7} 31 \texttt{wg5} \texttt{fd8} 32 e6 fxe6+ 33 \texttt{xe6} \texttt{f8} 34 d7 a5 35 \texttt{g4} \texttt{a6}+ 36 \texttt{e5} \texttt{f5}+ 37 \texttt{xg5} gxf5 38 \texttt{d8} \texttt{fxg4} 39 \texttt{wd7}+ \texttt{h6} 40 \texttt{xb7} \texttt{g6} 41 \texttt{f4} 1-0 D.Bronstein-L.Ljubojevic, Petropolis Interzonal 1973) 10...\texttt{c6} 11 \texttt{f4}.

Black's problem is that his king's bishop is blocked out of the action: radical solutions have been tried without great success – one recalls from the Introduction that GM Luther made a draw with a queen sacrifice in a similar position, but some other players have not been so lucky: 11...\texttt{g5} 12 \texttt{e4} \texttt{gxf4} 13 \texttt{f6}+ \texttt{xf6} (there it is – I wish I could recommend it, but I can't) 14 \texttt{exf6} \texttt{e6} 15 \texttt{wh5} \texttt{xd6} 16 0-0-0 0-0 17 \texttt{f3} (or 17...\texttt{e2} \texttt{h8} 18 \texttt{h3} \texttt{e5} 19 \texttt{xc3} \texttt{xc3} 20 \texttt{xd8+} \texttt{xd8} 21 \texttt{xc3} \texttt{g3} 22 \texttt{d2} \texttt{a4} 23 \texttt{e2} \texttt{xc3} 24 \texttt{f3} \texttt{xa2} 25 \texttt{xb1} c3+ 26 \texttt{d3} \texttt{c8} 27 \texttt{wb} 28 \texttt{xb7+} \texttt{d8} 29 \texttt{wa} 30 \texttt{b7}+ \texttt{d6} 31 \texttt{wa} 32 \texttt{b5} \texttt{xf3} 33 \texttt{gxf3} a5 34 \texttt{we} 35 \texttt{xe} 36 \texttt{e} 37 \texttt{xc4} 38 \texttt{xc} 39 \texttt{xe} 40 \texttt{wd8+} \texttt{xd8} 23 \texttt{we} 24 \texttt{bxc3}. 

155
Nd7 25 Ne2 Nc5 26 wC4 Qxf7 27 wB5 
Nd7 28 h4 a3+ 29 wc2 Nd6 30 wB3 
Nc5 31 wG4 wG6 32 f3 b6 33 h5 
Nh6 34 Nh4 Ne3 35 Ng4 Qdc4 36 wB4 
Nh8 37 wE7 1-0 A.Zude-S.Bücker, West German Ch., Bad Neuenahr 1987. There just doesn’t seem to be enough for the queen here, as long as White keeps his head.

Now back to Kislinisky-Shpagan where Black tries less radical methods – but doesn’t find time to make a 20th move! 11...wE6 12 wF3 wD7 13 wE2 0-0-0 14 wD2 f6 15 exf6 wXg6 (only now does Black develop the king’s bishop, but it’s already too late) 16 0-0-0 wXf4 17 wXf4 wF7 18 wG5 wXf6 19 wXf6 gxf6 20 wXe6 1-0 as White has won a piece. I love sharp play, but to me this line is beyond risky!

The high-powered game S.Movsesian-E.Francsics, Czech Team Championship 2005, features a similar plan, in that Black plays 6...c5,

but then follows with 7...g6. I don’t approve, for the white centre is no longer kept under Nimzowitschian restraint and can easily move forward. Also, because of the early exchange on e5, White’s dark-squared bishop has an open diagonal and a good post at f4: 6...c5 7 d5 g6 8 wF4 wG7 9 wC3 0-0 10 wD2 e6 11 0-0-0 exd5 12 cxd5 wG4 13 wC1 c4 14 h3 wF5 15 g4 (since retreating just gives White full central control and an easy development, Black tries to mix it up with a pawn sacrifice – but he fails to solve the problem of the white centre pawns) 15...Nd3? 16 Nxd3 cxd3 17 wXxd3 (Black is trying to attack, a pawn down, while giving up the whole centre; there may be some tactical justification, but my feeling is I’d love to have White – even though Black conjures up some play, White is never worse and finally scores the full point) 17...wA6 18 d6 wC8 19 wB1 wB4 20 wD1 wC4 21 wH2 wA5 22 wF3 wC5 23 wHe2 h6 24 wD4 wD5 25 wE4 wXf4 26 wB3 wB4 27 wXc5 wXe2 28 wXe2 
wXe5 29 wD5 b6 30 wD3 wXd3 31 wXd3 wD8 32 d7 (now that’s a far advanced centre pawn!) 32...wA4 33 wD2 wC6 34 wC1 a5 35 wE2 wF8 36 wD1 wE5 37 wE3 wB5? (Black has to play 37...wG7 and try to hang on) 38 wC3! (Black can’t eliminate the d-pawn with 38...wXc3 39 wXc3 wXd7, as after 40 wH8+ wE7 41 wE1+ wD6 42 wB8+ wC6 43 wC1+ wD5 44 wD1+ White wins at least a rook) 38...wC5 39 wXh6+ wG7 40 wD2 (now White is just a very big pawn up!) 40...wC6 41 wD3 wF6 42 wE4 wXd7 43 wXd7 wXe4+ 44 wD3 wG2 45 wD2 wH1+ 46 wD1 wG2 47 wB3 a4 48 wXb6
\( g7 \text{ 49 a3 } \text{wh3} \text{ 50 wb4 } \text{wg2} \text{ 51 xc1 } \text{we2} \text{ 52 xa2} \text{ g5} \text{ 53 xc5 } \text{g6} \text{ 54 xa5 } \text{xb2} \text{ 55 xb2 } \text{we6+} \text{ 56 a1} \text{ 1-0} \) (56...\text{We1+} is rather harshly met by 57 \text{wb1} check!).

I would hate to face that passed pawn for hours!

Now back to the ancient “main line”:

7 \text{xe3} \text{f5}

This system of defence was played in the earliest Four Pawns Attack game I can find, the following 1921 encounter featuring a future world champion, who would take up the defence himself (see Game 4). For the contemporary player, fighting the battle of the database, this means one very deep swamp: 88 years of theory!

Here is the historic game: 8 \text{xf3} \text{e6} \text{ 9 xd3 } \text{xd3} \text{ 10 xd3 } \text{wd7} \text{ 11 bbd2 } \text{b4} \text{ 12 we4 } \text{wc6} \text{ 13 xc6}+ \text{xc6} \text{ 14 b4} \text{ 15 ac1 } \text{xd2} \text{ 16 xd2 } \text{d8} \text{ 17 ef4 } \text{e7} \text{ 18 b3 } \text{fd7} \text{ 19 de4} \text{ 0-0} \text{ 20 cf1} \text{ c5} \text{ 21 xd6 cxd4} \text{ 22 xd4 } \text{xc6} \text{ 23 xb7} \text{ b8} \text{ 24 c5 } \text{xd4} \text{ 25 xd7 } \text{de2+} \text{ 26 h1 } \text{xf4} \text{ 27 xb8 } \text{d8} \text{ 28 c6 } \text{d2} \text{ 29 xa7 } \text{xa2} \text{ 30 xd1} \text{ g5} \text{ 31 xc6 } \text{xc2} \text{ 32 g1 } \text{xc1}+ \text{ 33 xg1 } \text{f8} \text{ 34 xf2 } \text{e8} \text{ 35 f3 } \text{d7} \text{ 36 d4 } \text{d3} \text{ 37 e4 } \text{f2+} \text{ 38 f3 } \text{d3} \text{ 39 e4 } \text{f2+} \text{ 40 f3 } \text{d3} \text{ 41 g4 } \text{xe5+} \text{ 42 xg5} \text{ f5} \text{ 43 c5} \text{ h6+} \text{ 44 xh6} \text{ g4+} \text{ 45 g5} \text{ xh2} \text{ 46 b4 } \text{g4} \text{ 47 b5 } \text{e5} \text{ 48 b6 } \text{c4} \text{ 49 xe6 } \text{xb6} \text{ 1/2-1/2} \) M.Euwe-B.Kostic, The Hague 1921.

8 \text{c3} \text{e6} \text{ 9 f3 } \text{e7} \text{ 10 d5}

The most popular and sharpest line – White scores a healthy 61% after this move (recall that in the Four Pawns Attack as a whole, White only scores 50%) which is recommended and extensively analyzed in *An Opening Repertoire for the Attacking Player* by Raymond Keene and David Levy. Black is put under tremendous pressure right away, and must walk a chess and memory tightrope to survive. If you defend this with Black, you also have to be prepared for White’s quiet alternative, 10 \text{e2}.

10...\text{exd5}

The game that inspired Keene and Levy was the following beautiful at-
tacking crush: 10...\(\Boxb4\) 11 \(\Boxc1\) f6 12 a3 
\(\Boxa6\) 13 g4!? \(\Boxxg4\) 14 \(\Boxg1\) f5 15 h3 
\(\Boxxf3\) 16 \(\Boxxf3\) 0-0 17 \(\Boxc2\) \(\Boxd7\) 18 \(\Boxd2\) 
\(\Boxae8\) 19 \(\Boxd\) cx\(d6\) 20 \(\Boxh5\) \(\Boxc8\) 21 c5 
\(\Boxxc5\) 22 \(\Boxxc5\) \(\Boxxc5\) 23 \(\Boxd5\) g2 g5 24 
\(\Boxb5\) \(\Boxd8\) 25 b4 \(\Boxcd7\) 26 exd6 \(\Boxf6\) 27 
\(\Boxe2\) \(\Boxe5\) 28 \(\Boxf4\) \(\Boxxd6\)? 29 \(\Boxxg5\) + \(\Boxh8\) 
30 \(\Boxxh7\) + (a lovely exclamation point!) 

**11 \(\Boxxd5\) \(\Boxb4\) 12 \(\Boxd4\) \(\Boxd7\)**

Not 12... \(\Boxg6\), as 13 \(\Boxb5\)+ forces the 
black king to move.

**13 e6**

If Black wants to play this line, he 
has to be prepared too for the follow-
ing dangerous option, as played by a 
rising young Cuban GM: 13 \(\Boxxf3\) c5 14 
dxc6 bxc6 15 \(\Boxe2\) 0-0 16 0-0 \(\Boxd4\) 17 
\(\Boxf2\) \(\Boxc7\) 18 \(\Boxg3\) \(\Boxxc3\) 19 bxc3 \(\Boxc8\) 20 
\(\Boxd3\) g6 21 \(\Boxe4\) \(\Boxg4\) 22 \(\Boxf2\) \(\Boxd5\) 23 c4 
\(\Boxc3\) 24 \(\Boxxc6\) \(\Boxxe4\) 25 \(\Boxxe7\)+ \(\Boxg7\) 26 
\(\Boxf4\) \(\Boxc5\)+ 27 \(\Boxf2\) \(\Boxf5\) 28 \(\Boxh4\) f6 29 
\(\Boxxf5\)+ \(\Boxgx5\) 30 \(\Boxxf5\) \(\Boxxe5\) 31 \(\Boxxe5\) 
\(\Boxxe5\) 32 \(\Boxxe5\) \(\Boxf4\) 33 \(\Boxg3\) \(\Boxc3\) 34 \(\Boxxe5\) 
\(\Boxxc4\) 35 \(\Boxf1\) \(\Boxxa2\) 36 \(\Boxe7\)+ \(\Boxg8\) 37 
\(\Boxff7\) \(\Boxg4\) 38 \(\Boxf6\) \(\Boxg6\) 39 \(\Boxg7\)+ \(\Boxxg7\) 40 
\(\Boxxg7\)+ \(\Boxf8\) 41 \(\Boxxh7\) \(\Boxe8\) 42 \(\Boxxa7\) \(\Boxe2\) 
43 \(\Boxb7\) \(\Boxc1\) 44 \(\Boxb2\) \(\Boxf7\) 45 \(\Boxh8\) \(\Boxe8\) 46 
\(\Boxf2\)+ \(\Boxg6\) 47 \(\Boxb2\) \(\Boxd3\) 48 \(\Boxd2\) \(\Boxe3\) 49 
\(\Boxd4\) \(\Boxf3\) 50 \(\Boxf2\) \(\Boxe5\) 51 \(\Boxg2\) \(\Boxf7\) 52 h3 
\(\Boxh7\) 53 g4 1-0 L.Dominguez-O.Almeida 
Quintana, Cuban Ch., Santa Clara 2005.

**13... \(\Boxxe6\)** 14 dxe6 \(\Boxc6\) 15 \(\Boxg4\) \(\Boxh4\)+

This is all theory, but is not a move 
you'd likely spot right away - Black 
gains material compensation for his 
severely threatened position.

**16 g3 0-0 17 0-0-0 \(\Boxxh1\) 18 \(\Boxxh4\)**

Benjamin calls this a "tabiya" for the variation. Can one believe this crazy, seemingly utterly irrational position can be a basic tabiya? There are indeed thirty-three games with it in the 
**MegaBase**!

**18... \(\Boxxf6\)** 19 \(\Boxb5\) c6 20 \(\Boxg5\) \(\Boxe5\) 21 e7 
\(\Boxfe8\)

**22 \(\Boxxh1\)?**

At this point Grischuk's memory ap-
parently failed him: correct is the previ-
ously played 22 \(\Boxf5\)! h5! (if 22... \(\Boxxb5\)? 23 
\(\Boxh6\)+! wins) 23 \(\Boxxb4\) \(\Boxxb5\) 24 \(\Boxd6\) \(\Boxc6\) 
25 \(\Boxb3\)+ \(\Boxc4\) 26 \(\Boxxc4\) \(\Boxxc4\) 27 \(\Boxxc4+\) 
\(\Boxh7\) 28 \(\Boxf7\) \(\Boxac8\) 29 \(\Boxxh5\)+ \(\Boxg8\) 30
\begin{itemize}
\item $\text{g}4 \text{c}7 31 \text{f}4 \text{xe}7 32 \text{xc}7 \text{xc}7 33 \text{g}3 \text{f}7 34 \text{a}3 1/2-1/2 \ V. \text{Dimitrov-S. Videki, Wiesbaden 1990. Black's strong bishop certainly compensates for White's extra doubled pawn.}$
\item \textbf{22...cxb}5 \textbf{23 f}3
\item $23 \text{f}5$ is too late now: $23...\text{d}3+ 24 \text{c}2 \text{f}2$ wins.
\end{itemize}

Now the position clarifies to Black's advantage.

\begin{itemize}
\item $26 \text{xd}6 \text{xe}4 27 \text{d}4 \text{f}6 28 \text{h}5 \text{xe}7$
\item $29 \text{h}6 \text{d}7 30 \text{xf}6 \text{xf}6 31 \text{g}4+ \text{f}7 32 \text{xb}5 \text{c}8+$
\item $33 \text{c}3 \text{g}8 34 \text{f}4 \text{d}5 0-1$
\end{itemize}

Let me recap: Both GMs remembered 21 moves of absurd-looking theory, reaching a chaotic position. Then White remembered wrong or misplayed with 22 $\text{xh}1$?, and Black remembered wrong or misplayed with 23...$\text{d}3$?, and then the game was over after the next move (essentially the first new move) when White went to the wrong square with his king and was immediately lost!! Is this chess?? I think not!

As in my recommended Larsen line from the previous chapter, I want the Alekhine player to be able to have a little fun and win the game due to his own efforts, rather than just follow memorization/computer lines – which, as we see, Grandmasters can't remember either!

The following game, though a King's Indian Defence, features the
same pawn structure and Black kingside fianchetto as in the coming main games – essentially, Fischer’s play and notes to this game (from My Sixty Memorable Games) provide the positional justification for the Sergeev line I will be recommending.

**Game 47**

R.Letelier Martner - R.J.Fischer
Leipzig Olympiad 1960

1 d4 ♞f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♞c3 ♞g7 4 e4 0-0 5 e5

“Weak” is Fischer’s one word sentence of death for this move.

Notice how White gets the identical pawn structure to the Alekhine Defence, while Black’s king’s knight saves one move but goes to a worse square (e8 instead of b6). But Fischer’s general strategy is a clear beacon of how to play such a position. Nibble with ...d7-d6, break with ...c7-c5, and don’t count the pawns!

5...♗e8 6 f4 d6 7 ♞e3 c5! 8 dxc5 ♞c6!

The key idea, which we will see in later games of this chapter: Black sacrifices to smash White’s centre.

9 cxd6 exd6 10 ♙e4 ♙f5 11 ♙g3

White’s only chance is to keep taking and hope for the best: after 11 ♙xd6 ♙xd6 12 ♙xd6 ♙xd6 13 exd6 ♙xb2 14 ♙d1 ♙ad8 (probably stronger than Fischer’s recommended 14...♗b4) 15 ♙f2 ♙a3 16 c5 ♙fe8 17 ♙c4 ♙xe3 18 ♙xe3 ♙xc5+ 19 ♙f3 ♙d4+ 20 ♙g3 ♙c2 21 ♙d2 ♙xd6 Black has a pawn and an excellent position for the exchange – I’d say roughly equal.

11...♗e6 12 ♙f3 ♙c7

Fritz’s number one is 12...dxe5 here, and it gives Black a clear advantage, but “I wanted to fracture him in the middle game!” says Fischer.

13 ♙b1 dxe5 14 f5 e4!

15 fxe6 ♙xf3 16 gxf3 f5 17 f4 ♙f6

Returning with a vengeance!

18 ♙e2 ♙fe8 19 ♙f2

If 19 0-0, Black plays 19... ♙xe6 20 ♙c5 b6 21 ♙a3 ♙d4 22 ♙f3 (22 ♙d3 ♙c6 also wins for Black) 22...♗xf3+ 23 ♙xf3 ♙g4 with a decisive attack.
19...\xe6
White’s centre pawns have perished, and his king will follow them shortly. It’s amusing that White can’t even get counterplay with 20 c5, as Black can ignore the “threat” – 20...\ae8! 21 \ac4 \dg4+ 22 \af3 \ae3 wins.
20 \xe1 \ae8 21 \af3 \xe3! 22 \xe3 \xe3 23 \xe3 \xf4+!! 0-1

It’s mate or Black gets two pieces for the rook and a decisive attack: 24 \xf4 (both 24 \ae2 \zd4+ and 24 \af2 \dg4+ 25 \g2 \ze3+ 26 \zd2 \zd4 are easy wins for Black) 24...\ah6 mate!

A brilliant win by Fischer, but the lasting value of the game is the strategical plan that informs Black’s play, and can be used in Alekhine’s Defence. As we’ll see in the next few games, Sergeev has definitely done his homework!

Sergeev’s line: our hero has scored five wins and two draws – with Black of course – against high-ranking opposition. But also give credit where it’s due: the first player to dare this fianchetto was the great innovator Richard Réti. Here’s a very modern-looking game from 1925! 6 \ae3 \dx5 7 \fxe5 \ag7 8 \zd2 c5 9 dx5 \zd6 10 e6 \fxe6 11 \wc2 \ac6 12 \gf3 \wa5 13 \ae2 \xc5 14 0-0 e5 15 \dh4 \zd4 16 \xd4 exd4 17 \zd4 18 \zd1 \zd4 19 \zd3 \zd3+ 20 c5 \xb4 21 \zb3 \zb2 22 \xg6 \xd1 23 \xh8 \xh8 24 \xd1 \zd4 25 \xd5 \zd8 26 \zf7+ \zd7 27 c6+ bxc6 28 h3 \ze6 29 \xbh7 \zd5 30 \zf5+ \zd7 31 \zd1 \zd6+ 32 \zd1 \zd3 looks like master of the chessboard to me! (0-1 K.Opocensky-R. Réti, Marienbad 1925).

6 \zf3

This and the following two games feature straightforward development by White, but as one sees, this does not challenge Black too much. The last two games of the chapter (Games 51 and 52) deal with the lines that are consid-
ered most dangerous, where White develops his queenside first (usually ałc3 and ałe3, avoiding 0-0 as he wants to have the option of h2-h4) and prepares either a direct kingside or central attack.

6...ąg7 7 ałc3 0-0 8 ałe3

8 h4 doesn’t make sense now in view of 8...ąg4. If White wants the h2-h4 attack, he should develop first with ałc3 and ałe3 as stated above.

8...ałe6

The bishop might also go to g4, often after an exchange of pawns on e5 – see the next game for this idea.

9 d5

Instead:

a) 9 b3 scores terribly for White, due to the Fischeresque tactical blow 9...c5! 10 dxc5 (10 d5 is seen by transposition in Game 51, note with 8 b3) 10...ałd6 11 cxd6 (instead 11 ałc1 dxe5 ½-½ (l) was A.Fedorov-V.Sergeev, Warsaw rapid 2004, but that looks like a courtesy draw to the higher rated player – if he had that position again I’m sure Sergeev would play on) 11...exd6 12 ałxd6

b) 9 ałb3 doesn’t do any better because of the following strong reply:

9...ała5! 10 ałg5 (or 10 a4 ała6 and Black can use the b4 hole) 10...ała6 11 ałxe6 axb3 12 ałxd8 ałxd8 13 a3 ałc6 14 0-0-0 ała5 15 c5 dxс5 16 dxс5 ałxd1+ 17 ałxd1 ałbc4 (Black is clearly better as White’s overextended pawns are weak
in the ending) 18 \text{d4} \text{d8} 19 \text{c3} \text{d5} 20 \text{b4} \text{g5} 21 \text{fxg5} \text{xe5} 22 \text{xc4} \text{xc4} 23 \text{e1} \text{e6} 24 \text{h4} \text{d5} 25 \text{e4} \text{e5} 26 \text{f2} \text{f8} 27 \text{c6} \text{xc6} 28 \text{xf8} \text{xf8} 29 \text{xc4} \text{d4} 30 \text{c3} \text{hx4} 31 \text{xb3} \text{a5} 32 \text{d3} \text{h2} 33 \text{g3} \text{g7} 34 \text{e4} \text{g6} 35 \text{b4} \text{c6} 36 \text{c5} \text{d4} 37 \text{g4} \text{e5} 38 \text{e4} \text{hxg2} 39 \text{xe5} \text{hxg5} 40 \text{hxg5}+ \text{hxg5} 0-1 Brener-A.Pushkin, USSR 1988.

\text{9...g4} 10 \text{w2}

No better is 10 \text{e2} \text{d7} and White’s centre collapses anyway; e.g. 11 \text{exd6} \text{xf3} 12 \text{xf3} \text{xc4} and White can’t get out of this mess without losing at least a pawn.

10...\text{c6!}

Black doesn’t rush to win material, but rather opens lines against White’s undeveloped position and uncastled king. 10...\text{xf3} 11 \text{gxf3} \text{d7} 12 0-0-0 \text{dxe5} 13 f5! gives White some play.

11 \text{c5}

If 11 \text{dxc6} \text{xc6} 12 \text{exd6} \text{exd6} and the open lines help Black, or 11 0-0-0 \text{cxd5} 12 \text{cxd5} \text{dxe5} 13 \text{fxe5} \text{d7} and the white centre collapses.

\text{11...xd5} 12 \text{xd5} \text{cxd5} 13 \text{xd5} \text{c6} 14 \text{xd6} 15 \text{gf3} 16 \text{c8}

We saw this same f4/e5/d6 pawn chain in Letelier-Fischer after White’s 9th move – and then it got smashed up just as it does here!

15...\text{exd6}

Just as in the previous note, Black’s heavy pieces are connected, White’s centre is disintegrating and his king is in trouble.

16 \text{b5}

If 16 \text{xd6} Black doesn’t exchange queens but plays 16...\text{h4+}! and “fracture him in the middlegame” like Fischer! One sees that both 17 \text{e2} \text{fd8} and 17 \text{f2} \text{xf4} are good for Black.

The other capture is also bad: 16 \text{exd6} \text{e8} 17 \text{f2} \text{e3!} (again like Fischer) 18 \text{e3} \text{b6}+ 19 \text{e2} \text{xb2}+ and wins.

16...\text{h4+} 17 \text{e2} \text{dxe5} 18 \text{fxe5} \text{e5}
White has no centre and no king safety: this was a perfect strategical game by Sergeev, although Fischer might also deserve a credit!

19 \text{\texttt{f}}d1 a6 20 \text{\texttt{d}}d7
\text{\texttt{f}}d3 \text{\texttt{x}}d3 21 \text{\texttt{x}}d3 \text{\texttt{f}}e8 wins.

20...\text{\texttt{f}}d8 0-1
White resigns, for if 21 \text{\texttt{w}}xb7 \text{\texttt{w}}c4+ 22 \text{\texttt{g}}f2 \text{\texttt{w}}ab8 23 \text{\texttt{w}}a7 \text{\texttt{x}}b2+ 24 \text{\texttt{g}}g3 \text{\texttt{w}}e2 and Black has a winning attack.

Which win was more fun: Svidler’s memory marathon or this creative attacking game?

From an opening point of view, one should note that White’s simple development not only failed to achieve anything, but led to a central collapse. Black was already better and halfway to victory on move 10!

This move order (\text{\texttt{e}}e2 then \text{\texttt{f}}f3 on the next move) makes no significant difference, as Black can play ...\text{\texttt{g}}g4 later if he wants to.

If White wants no inconveniences, he can play 6 h3 now to stop any such pin, but then he falls behind in development. In yet another Sergeev win, Vlad uses his active pieces to sac early and impale his foe on the long dark diagonal: 6 h3 \text{\texttt{g}}7 7 \text{\texttt{f}}f3 0-0 (in some lines Black should wait to see which side White is going to castle on, but here one sees that h2-h3 and \text{\texttt{f}}f3 don’t go with an attacking h2-h4 plan!) 8 \text{\texttt{e}}e2 \text{\texttt{e}}6 9 d5 \text{\texttt{c}}c8 10 \text{\texttt{c}}c3 c6 11 0-0 \text{\texttt{x}}d5 12 \text{\texttt{x}}d5 \text{\texttt{d}}d7 13 \text{\texttt{w}}d4 (White is determined to maintain his centre, but this exposed queen invites tactics) 13...\text{\texttt{d}}xe5 14 fxe5 \text{\texttt{d}}xe5! (demolition!)

15 \text{\texttt{d}}xe5 \text{\texttt{c}}c6 (Black can win his piece back without drama by playing 15...\text{\texttt{w}}d6 here; instead he goes for a piquant double pin reminiscent of the Two Knights Defence) 16 \text{\texttt{w}}h4 (it might be best to give up the queen for three pieces: 16 \text{\texttt{x}}c6!? \text{\texttt{x}}d4+ 17 \text{\texttt{x}}d4 \text{\texttt{w}}b6
18 ...e3!?? wb2 19 ...f1 w6 with an extremely double-edged game, while 18 ...d1 d7 is about even; this might be an argument for the more solid 15...wd6) 16...dx5 (now Black is just a pawn up and Sergeev converts stylishly) 17 ...e3 (if 17 ...h6, 17...wb6+ 18 ...h1 ...xh6 19 ...xh6 ...f5 is very good for Black) 17...a6 18 ...d1 ...d7 19 ...e4 ...f5 20 ...g3 ...d7 21 ...e4 ...f5 22 ...g3 ...c2! (no drawl) 23 ...d2 ...c8 24 ...h2 (not 24 ...c1 ...f5 25 ...xf5? ...xc1+ 26 ...h2 gx5 and Black wins easily, or if 25 ...xc8 ...xc8! and Black saves his bishop and keeps his pawn) 24...wd6 25 ...h1 ...c7 26 a3 ...c8 27 ...d4 f5 28 ...c3 ...b3 29 ...b4 ...f6 30 ...f4 ...c4 31 d6 exd6 32 ...xd6 ...f7 33 ...f1 h6 34 ...xc4 ...xc4 35 ...d2 f4 36 ...d8+ ...xd8 37 ...xd8+ ...h7 38 ...f1 f3 39 g3 f2 40 ...d5 ...f5 41 ...g2 ...c7 42 ...e3 ...c8 43 ...f1 ...d7 44 ...e4 ...d3 45 ...g4 ...c7 46 ...xf2 ...d4 47 ...e7 ...c6+ 48 ...h2 ...xb4 49 axb4 ...d2 50 ...g1 ...f3 51 ...c7 ...xb2 52 ...d6 ...e2 53 ...c7 h5 54 ...f4 ...xf4 55 ...xf4 ...d4 56 ...g2 ...xf2+ 57 ...xf2 ...xf2 58 ...xf2 b6 59 ...e3 ...g7 60 ...d4 ...f6 61 ...d5 ...f5 62 ...c6 a5! 0-1 V.Mrva-V.Sergeev, Bardejov 1996.

As we saw in some of the Exchange Variation lines, it's impossible to completely suppress Black's Alekhine counter-attack. Another point worth noting is that White's centre, threatened through the middle by the g7-bishop, is usually quite unstable.

6...g7 7 ...f3 0-0 8 ...e3

If White castles here, Black has two good continuations: 8...e6 trying to force b2-b3 and so weakening the long dark diagonal, or 8...dx5 and ...g4 with pressure on d4 and c4. The fact that Black has two good lines is a sign of the strength of Sergeev's 5...g6. Black can pretty much just play and make his own plans, rather than have to memorize an extremely precise long sequence, where any deviation can mean death, as for example in the first game of this chapter.

Let's take a quick look at these two variations – 8 0-0 and now:

![Chess board diagram](image)

a) 8...e6 9 b3 c5 10 dx5 dx5! (another tactical blow on the long diagonal: Black smashes the white centre and leaves a piece en prise in view of his threats to exposed rook at a1) 11 ...xd8 ...xd8 12 cxb6? (12 fxe5 is necessary, when White is only a little worse after 12...d6) 12...exf4 13 ...xf4 ...xa1 14 ...c7 ...c8 0-1. A.Daude Puvilla-S.Beltran Rueda, Sitges 1995. White has no compensation for the exchange.

Sergeev faced 9 ...bd2, avoiding b2-b3, but he still found a way to wind up with a nice queen sacrifice! 9...a6 10
a3 c5 11 d5 \(\text{c}8\)?! (actually 11...\(\text{f}5\) is more accurate, preventing White's next with equality) 12 \(\text{e}4\) \(\text{f}5\) 13 \(\text{f}2\) \(\text{c}8\) 14 b3 e6 15 dx\(\text{e}6\) \(\text{xe}6\) 16 \(\text{b}2\) d5 17 \(\text{wc}2\) \(\text{wc}7\) 18 g4 f5 19 g5? (the same sort of mistake that Fernandez made against Petrosian in Game 8 – rather than closing the position, which gives Black time to counter-attack, White could have obtained the advantage here with 19 \(\text{g}5\) 19...\(\text{fd}8\) 20 \(\text{d}2\) \(\text{ac}8\) 21 \(\text{fd}1\) \(\text{w}7\) 22 \(\text{ac}1\) \(\text{b}8\) 23 \(\text{f}3\) \(\text{c}6\) 24 \(\text{d}2\) \(\text{f}8\) 25 \(\text{h}1\) a5 26 a4 \(\text{d}4\) 27 \(\text{xd}4\) \(\text{xd}4\) 28 \(\text{f}2\) \(\text{a}3\) 29 \(\text{a}1\) \(\text{b}4\) 30 \(\text{dc}1\) \(\text{xc}4\) 31 \(\text{xc}4\) \(\text{d}5\) 32 \(\text{wd}1\) \(\text{xf}4\) 33 \(\text{d}6\) \(\text{xc}1\) 34 \(\text{xc}1\) \(\text{we}7\) 35 \(\text{c}4\) \(\text{xc}4\) 36 \(\text{g}4\) d3 37 \(\text{f}1\) \(\text{fxg}4\) 38 \(\text{e}4\) \(\text{h}4\) 39 \(\text{f}6+\) \(\text{h}8\) 40 \(\text{g}1\) \(\text{c}5+\) 41 \(\text{h}1\) \(\text{xf}6!\) and there’s the queen offer – White resigned in view of the coming mate, 0-1 A.Chistiakov-V.Sergeev, Kiev 2002.

b) 8...dx\(\text{e}5\) 9 fx\(\text{e}5\) \(\text{g}4\) 10 \(\text{bd}2\) c5 11 \(\text{b}3\) \(\text{xd}4\) 12 \(\text{fxd}4\) \(\text{xe}2\) 13 \(\text{xe}2\) \(\text{wc}7\) 14 c5 \(\text{d}5\) 15 e6 f5 16 \(\text{b}5\) \(\text{wc}6\) 17 \(\text{h}1\) \(\text{a}6\) 18 \(\text{d}5\) \(\text{wa}4\) 19 \(\text{b}5\) \(\text{xb}5\) 20 \(\text{xb}5\) \(\text{fd}8\)

White's centre is in pieces and his development is incomplete; the following desperate pawn sacrifice doesn't help matters) 21 \(\text{g}5\) \(\text{xb}2\) 22 \(\text{ad}1\) \(\text{f}6\) and Black held on to his extra material and won in W. Bernardo-J. Szmetan, Mar del Plata 1996.

White's centre also collapsed after 10 \(\text{c}3\) c5 11 dx\(\text{c}5\) \(\text{d}6\) 12 \(\text{wd}4\) \(\text{dx}5\)! (we've seen this tactic before! White's centralized queen proves to be prematurely developed) 13 \(\text{xd}8\) \(\text{xd}8\) 14 \(\text{e}3\) \(\text{xf}3\) 15 \(\text{gxf}3\) \(\text{bc}6\) 16 \(\text{fd}1\) \(\text{a}5\) 17 \(\text{g}5\) \(\text{dxc}4\) 18 \(\text{xe}7\) \(\text{xe}8\) 19 \(\text{d}5\) \(\text{xb}2\) 20 \(\text{dc}1\) \(\text{c}6\) 21 \(\text{b}5\) \(\text{xe}7\) 22 \(\text{xe}8\) \(\text{xe}8\) 23 \(\text{xe}7+\) \(\text{xe}7\) 24 c6 \(\text{xc}6\) h6 26 \(\text{f}1\) \(\text{c}4\) 27 \(\text{d}1\) \(\text{e}3+\) 0-1 H.Dittmann-C. Hamann, Büsum 1999.

8...dx\(\text{e}5\) One could play even more sharply: 8...\(\text{a}6\) 9 0-0 c5 10 d5 \(\text{d}7\) and White must sacrifice something as, once again, his centre is collapsing – though the situation is not completely clear after 11 e6, when one of many complicated variations is 11...\(\text{fxe}6\) 12 dx\(\text{e}6\) \(\text{eb}6\) 13 \(\text{g}5\) \(\text{c}7\) (13...\(\text{xb}2\)?) 14 \(\text{f}7\) \(\text{we}8\) 15 f5 \(\text{gf}5\) 16 \(\text{h}6+\) \(\text{xe}6\) 17 \(\text{xe}6\) \(\text{xe}6\) 18 \(\text{xf}8\) \(\text{xf}8\) and Black has good compensation for the exchange.

9 fx\(\text{e}5\) 9 dx\(\text{e}5\) \(\text{xd}1+\) 10 \(\text{xd}1\) (forced because of the weakness at c4) is clearly good for Black in view of White’s exposed king; while 9 \(\text{xe}5\) c5 transposes into a kind of Kengis Variation that is fine for Black – see the next game for
this pawn structure.

9...\text{g}4

Now both c4 and d4 are at least indirectly pressured.

10 \text{b}d2 c5

I like this immediate break, though Sergeev took his time here: 10...e6?! 11 0-0 \text{d}8d7 12 h3 \text{xf}3 13 \text{xf}3 \text{w}e7 14 \text{w}e1 c5 15 \text{w}f2 (better is 15 \text{dxc}5, which prevents Black’s coming reorganization) 15...\text{xd}4 16 \text{xd}4 \text{mac}8 17 b3 \text{db}8! 18 \text{fe}1 \text{d}6d7 19 \text{f}1 \text{c}6 (now Sergeev has everything the way he likes it: White’s advanced e-pawn is under severe pressure from two Alekhine knights, and the defensive task proves too much for his opponent) 20 \text{c}3 \text{ff}d8 21 \text{h}1 a5 22 \text{ad}1 \text{c}5 23 \text{wb}2 \text{xd}1 24 \text{xd}1 \text{d}8 25 \text{e}1 \text{b}4 26 \text{wb}1 \text{d}7 27 \text{d}4 \text{c}6 28 \text{f}2 h6 29 a3 \text{d}8 30 b4 axb4 31 axb4 \text{d}7 32 \text{wb}2 \text{xb}4 33 \text{b}1 \text{c}6 (now Black is just a pawn up, since 34 \text{wb}7? loses to 34...\text{bb}8) 34 \text{h}4 g5 35 \text{g}3 \text{c}5 36 \text{h}2 h5 37 g4 h\text{g}4 38 h\text{g}4 \text{d}7 39 \text{c}2 \text{d}4 40 \text{xd}4 \text{xd}4 41 \text{e}2 \text{c}7 42 \text{c}1 \text{c}6+ 43 \text{g}1 \text{e}4 44 \text{a}1 \text{ad}2 45 \text{a}8+ \text{f}8

46 \text{w}a3 \text{b}6+ 47 \text{h}1 \text{b}1+ 48 \text{g}1 \text{g}3+ 49 \text{w}xg3 \text{xe}2 50 \text{f}3 \text{h}7+! 0-1 H.Nagy-V.Sergeev, Szombathely 2003.

11 \text{dxc}5

Once again the white centre collapses, but if 11 d5 \text{d}8d7 12 0-0 \text{w}c7 13 \text{f}4 \text{xf}3 14 \text{xf}3 \text{xe}5 and White doesn’t have enough for the pawn.

11...\text{d}6d7 12 0-0 \text{w}c7 13 \text{e}1 \text{c}6 14 \text{w}h4 \text{xf}3 15 \text{xf}3 \text{cxe}5 16 \text{g}5

16 \text{w}xe7 just opens the e-file to dangerous effect: 16...\text{fe}8 17 \text{wh}4 (if 17 \text{w}d6?, 17...\text{xd}6 18 \text{xd}6 \text{g}4 wins a piece) 17...\text{xc}5 and Black’s active pieces give him a clear advantage.

16...\text{h}6 17 \text{e}4 \text{f}5 18 \text{c}3 \text{g}5!

White made a gesture toward attacking the black king, but it’s Black’s counter-attack that really matters.

19 \text{wh}3 \text{e}6 20 \text{b}5 \text{d}8 21 \text{ad}1 \text{w}e7

22 \text{d}6 b6 23 \text{cxb}6

23 b4 maintains the knight but allows counterplay on the b-file after 23...\text{xc}5 24 \text{xc}5 \text{ab}8.

23...\text{xa}6 24 a3 \text{g}4 25 \text{g}3 \text{h}5 26 \text{w}e1 \text{g}6

Black prepares ...f5-f4 and the fur-
ther advance of his kingside pawns, so White tries for something on the queenside – but gets a shock!
27 \(\text{b}4 \text{c}5\)!

\[
\begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|c|c|c|}
\hline
\text{r} & \text{r} & \text{b} & \text{q} & \text{q} & \text{b} & \text{r} \\
\hline
\text{b} & \text{b} & \text{b} & \text{b} & \text{b} & \text{b} & \text{b} \\
\hline
\text{q} & \text{q} & \text{q} & \text{q} & \text{q} & \text{q} & \text{q} \\
\hline
\text{b} & \text{b} & \text{b} & \text{b} & \text{b} & \text{b} & \text{b} \\
\hline
\end{array}
\]

A truly startling Alekhine counter-blow: if White accepts the offered pawn in either of two ways, he loses his b-pawn in return and so weakens his remaining queenside pawns.

**28 \(\text{d}2\)?**

White is so stunned he commits a fatal error: he has to take despite the consequences. Correct is 28 \(\text{xb}6 \text{a}4\) 29 \(\text{b}3 \text{fb}8\) 30 \(\text{b}5 \text{xb}2\) 31 \(\text{d}2 \text{a}4\) with approximate equality; even 28 \(\text{xc}5 \text{bxc}5\) 29 \(\text{xc}5 \text{xb}2\) is only a little worse for White.

**28...\(\text{fd}8\)**

Just like that, Black is winning: the pin is decisive.

29 \(\text{xc}5\)

If 29 \(\text{b}4 \text{e}4\) wins immediately.

29...\(\text{bxc}5\) 30 \(\text{h}1 \text{f}8\)

Accurate and conclusive; no doubt White was hoping to turn the tables after 30...\(\text{a}6\)? 31 \(\text{xf}5\), but his hope was not realized.

31 \(\text{e}3 \text{xd}6\) 32 \(\text{xd}6 \text{d}6\) 33 \(\text{g}5 \text{g}7\) 34 \(\text{d}1 \text{e}7\) 35 \(\text{d}2 \text{h}7\) 36 \(\text{d}3 \text{g}7\) 37 \(\text{c}2 \text{b}8\) 38 \(\text{b}3 \text{f}6\) 39 \(\text{b}1 \text{c}3\) 40 \(\text{xf}5 \text{exf}5\) 0-1

White resigns, as Black wins without difficulty; e.g. 41 \(\text{xf}5 \text{h}6\) 42 \(\text{xc}5 \text{d}4\) 43 \(\text{f}5 \text{xb}3\) 44 \(\text{a}4 \text{xb}1+\) 45 \(\text{xb}1 \text{xc}4\) 46 \(\text{a}5 \text{f}4\) 47 \(\text{d}1 \text{h}3!\) 48 \(\text{gx}h3 \text{d}5+\) and mates.

Black had no special problems in the game, but it was important that he always had his eye out for Alekhine-style counter-attack (18...\(\text{g}5\), 27...\(\text{c}5\)) rather than just defence.

---

**Game 50**

H.Gretarsson-R.Polaczek

Reykjavik 1990

1 \(\text{e}4 \text{f}6\) 2 \(\text{e}5 \text{d}5\) 3 \(\text{d}4 \text{d}6\) 4 \(\text{c}4 \text{b}6\) 5 \(\text{f}4 \text{g}6\) 6 \(\text{f}3 \text{g}7\) 7 \(\text{e}3 \text{e}0-0\) 8 \(\text{e}2 \text{dxe}5\)

One of the simplest ways to play, as in the previous game: all White recaptures have their drawbacks. Of course Black can also play 8...\(\text{e}6\) or 8...\(\text{a}6\).

9 \(\text{xe}5\)

If 9 \(\text{fxe}5 \text{g}4\) and Black should be fine, à la Darga; while 9 \(\text{dx}e5 \text{xd}1+\) is a favourable queen exchange as White must take back with the king.

9...\(\text{c}5\)

This position is basically a Kengis, similar to some lines we saw in Game 23 – again, even if you want to play like Magnus with the hot 5...\(\text{c}6\), you need to know the Kengis, since everything, even the Four Pawns Attack, may transpose.
to it. Here Black has the standard Ken-
gis plan of softening the long dark di-
goal with ...c5.

In the game he plays it immediately
as a pawn sacrifice, though the more
solid 9...d6d7 is also perfectly playable,
the only disadvantage being that
White can go in for a very drawish line
if he wants: 9...d6d7 10 c3 c5 11 0-0?
(a mistake; 11 cxd7 cxd7 12 dxc5 a5
13 d2 cxc5 14 d5 bxd2+ 15 bxd2
a4 gives Black good counterplay, but
12 0-0 cxd4 13 bxd4 e5 14 fxe5 dxe5
15 c5 e8 16 bxd8 bxd8 17 ad1 is
about a dead a draw as you can get by
way of the Four Pawns Attack!)
11...cxd4 12 b4 dxe5 13 bxe5 dxe5
14 bxd8 bxd8 15 fxe5 (White has a
weak pawn) 15...c6 16 d5 g7 17
fe1 dxe5 18 dxe7 e6 19 b3 d7 20
d5 c5 21 cxd5 bxd5, when Black
offered pawn and runs into worse
trouble. Best is 10 dxc5 bxd1+ 11 cxd1
(not 11 cxd1 dxe5 12 fxe5 xc4 and
Black will soon win a pawn) 11...d6d7
12 c3 c6 13 c3 d8 14 c2 d4
and Black’s central play gives him good
compensation for the pawn. Black also
gets interesting counterplay with
11...a4!? 12 c2 (12 b3 c6 is an-
other combination based on the weak
long diagonal, a theme throughout the
Sergeev Variation) 12...d7 13 d3 e5
again with compensation.

10...b8d7

Now Black has opened the Kengis
long diagonal without cost.

11 b7d7 bxd7

But not the impetuous 11...xb2?
12 xb6 axb6 13 d2 and White
emerges with two pieces for the rook.

12 c3 c7 13 0-0 c8

The knight finds its ideal blockading
square on d6 – Black is slightly better
as he is able continually to improve his
position, while White has no play as his
advanced pawns (d5, f4) are immobile.

14 c1 a5 15 d2 d6 16 d3 c8
Alekhine Alert!

17 \(\text{w}e2\) a6 18 \(\text{d}d2\) \(\text{w}d8\) 19 b3 \(\text{e}e8\) 20 \(\text{e}e4\) \(\text{f}f5\) 21 \(\text{c}c3\) \(\text{d}d4\)

Now an even “more ideal” square!

22 \(\text{xd}d4?!\)

The computer wants to leave the knight there (just play 22 \(\text{w}f2\)), and the machine is right, for the consequence of the capture is that Black gets the two bishops and a significant advantage — but I sympathize with the human who wanted to get that terrible knight off the board!

22...\(\text{xd}d4+\) 23 \(\text{h}h1\) \(\text{w}b6\) 24 \(\text{w}f3\) \(\text{f}f8\) 25 \(\text{g}g3\) \(\text{f}5\) 26 \(\text{e}e1\) \(\text{e}e8\) 27 \(\text{e}e2\) \(\text{g}g7\) 28 \(\text{g}g3\) e6 29 dxe6 \(\text{xe}6\)

Black has destroyed the white center and stands better; the two bishops are even stronger now that the board has opened. Note that Black’s set-up — rook on e6, ready to double, and kingside pawns at f5/g6/h7 is identical to the later stages of Letelier-Fischer. I would advise readers to study that game (the one non-Alekhine in the chapter!) thoroughly, because the ideas repeat over and over, as we have seen.

30 \(\text{g}g1\) \(\text{fe}8\) 31 \(\text{f}f3\) \(\text{e}e3\) 32 \(\text{c}c2\) \(\text{w}a5\) 33 \(\text{xe}3\) \(\text{xe}3\) 34 \(\text{w}f2\) \(\text{w}e8\) 35 \(\text{b}b1\) \(\text{c}c6\) 36 h3 \(\text{w}c3!\)

Black sacrifices a pawn to penetrate into White’s position.

37 \(\text{w}x\text{c}5\) \(\text{xf}3!\) 38 \(\text{g}x\text{f}3\)

White has to destroy his own pawn structure, for if 38 \(\text{w}x\text{f}3\) \(\text{w}e1+\) 39 \(\text{w}g1\) \(\text{w}xg1+\) 40 \(\text{w}xg1\) \(\text{w}e1+\) 41 \(\text{f}f1\) \(\text{d}d4+\) wins.

38...\(\text{h}h8\) 39 \(\text{f}f2\)

Letting the black pieces in, but while the move seems like a blunder, when you try to find something better — there doesn’t seem to be anything! After the logical-looking centralization 39 \(\text{w}d5\) Black plays 39...\(\text{w}e3\) and White cannot take on b7 (if 40 \(\text{w}x\text{b}7?\) \(\text{w}e2\) wins); but even after the careful 40 \(\text{w}d7\) Black should win with 40...\(\text{d}d4\), intending \(\text{e}e7,\) ...\(\text{g}7,\) and a sort of moving bind that will eventually overrun the kingside — while the sole surviving white bishop is a helpless spectator.

39...\(\text{e}e3\) 40 \(\text{g}g3\)

40 \(\text{g}2,\) not ceding the seventh rank, is White’s last chance to hold.
Black’s bind is so strong that he has a decisive advantage despite being a pawn down.

42 $g2$ $d4$ 43 $xh2$ $exe2$ $xe2$ 44 $g5$ $g7$

44...$we1+$, 45 $h2$ $wd2+$, 46 $h1$ $wc1+$, 47 $h2$ $wb2+$ is quicker.

45 $xf5$ $xf3+$ 46 $h2$ $ff2+$ 47 $h1$ $wf1+$ 48 $h2$ $wf2+$ 49 $h1$ $we1+$ 50 $h2$

White is restricted to $h2$ and $h1$, for if 50 $g2$ (danger zone!) 50...$g1+$ 51 $f3$ $xg5$ wins a piece.

Therefore Black can walk all the way over and take the a-pawn with check!

50...$d2+$, 51 $h1$ $c1+$, 52 $h2$ $b2+$, 53 $h1$ $a1+$, 54 $h2$ $xa2+$, 55 $h1$ $a1+$

And now walk all the way back!

56 $h2$ $b2+$, 57 $h1$ $c1+$, 58 $h2$ $d2+$, 59 $h1$ $we1+$, 60 $h2$ $wf2+$, 61 $h1$ $bf1+$, 62 $h2$ $we2+$, 63 $h1$ $we1+$, 64 $h2$ $wf2+$, 65 $h1$ $wf1+$, 66 $h2$ $g1+$! 67 $xg1$

White must take, since 67 $h1$ $e3+$ wins the queen, while 67 $g3$ $f2+$ leads to mate.

Black emerges with a good extra pawn, and converts: slowly!

69 $d4+$ $f7$ 70 $e3$ $d7$ 71 $g2$ $f6$

72 $f4+$ $e6$ 73 $g4+$ $e7$ 74 $g5+$ $d6$ 75 $g3+$ $c5$ 76 $c3$ $c6+$ 77 $g1$

78 $b4$ $a7$ 79 $f2$ $e4$ 80 $b5$ $f5+$ 81 $g2$ $g5+$ 82 $f3$ $xb5$ 83 $a5+$

84 $cxb5$ $d5+$ 85 $g3$ $e5+$ 86 $f3$

87 $c8$ 88 $a8+$ $c7$ 89 $a5+$

90 $d2+$ $e6$ 90 $a5$ $d5+$ 91 $g3$ $f5$ 92

$b6$ $e4$ 93 $a5$ $d3$ 94 $a3+$ $c4$ 95

$a2+$ $c5$ 96 $a5$ $d3+$ 97 $h2$ $d6+$ 98 $g2$ $b6$ 99 $c3+$ $xb5$ 100 $b3+$

$a6$ 101 $a4+$ $a5$ 102 $c4+$ $b5$ 103

$a2+$ $b6$ 104 $f2+$ $c5$ 105 $b2+$ $c6$

106 $f6+$ $d6$ 107 $c3+$ $d7$ 108 $g7+$

$e7$ 109 $d4+$ $e6$ 110 $c4+$ $f6$

111 $d4+$ $f7$ 112 $c4+$

$g7$ 113 $d4+$ $h6$ 114 $h4$ $g5+$ 115 $b6+$ $h5$ 116

$hxg5$ $e4+$ 117 $g3$ $e5+$ 118 $h3$

$xf5+$ 119 $h2$ $xf4+$ 120 $h3$ $h4+$ 121

$g2$ $xg5+$ 122 $h3$ $xf5+$ 123 $h2$

$xe4$ 124 $c5+$ $g4$ 125 $c8+$ $f3$ 126

$wh3+$ $f2$ 127 $g3+$ $e2$ 128 $c7$ $b5$

129 $wb6$ $f3$ 130 $xb5$ $wh4+$ 0-1

White resigns in view of the mate in
two – tremendous technique!

We see from this and the last two games that “normal” development doesn’t give White a thing. In the next two games White plays the only challenging line against the Sergeev Variation: the attacking sequence 6 Qc3 and 7 Ke3.

**Game 51**

**D.Kotek-V.Sergeev**

**Czech League 1997**

1 e4 Qf6 2 e5 Qd5 3 d4 d6 4 c4 Qb6 5 f4 g6 6 Qc3 Kg7

Before we continue with the main game’s correct 7 Ke3, I should mention that my one recent Four Pawns game saw 7 c5, which is clearly premature. Black equalizes easily and has chances for the advantage in view of White’s misplaced king after 7...dxc5 8 dxc5 Qxd1+ 9 Qxd1 (if 9 Qxd1 Qd5 and Black is already better with his lead in development and centralized knight) 9...Qg4+ and then:

![Chess Diagram](image)

a) 10 Qf3 Qd7 11 Ke3 (White’s best chance to equalize is 11 Qd5 Qd8, when both sides are somewhat compromised) and now, instead of my slow 11...Qxf3+ 12 gxf3 e6 with an approximately equal game and an eventual draw in R.Akopian-T.Taylor, Los Angeles (rapid) 2009, better is 11...Qc6, when Black has a harmonious position while White is still struggling to organize; e.g. 12 Ke2 0-0 0 13 Ke1 Qb4 14 Qc1 Qxf3 (only now, after Black has completed his development) 15 gxf3 g5! 16 e6 fxe6 17 fxg5 Qe5 with a clear advantage to Black, who has a real pair of Petrosonian Knights!

b) 10 Ke1 is even weaker, when Black took over the advantage in Larsen style:

10...Qd7 11 Ke3 Qc6 12 Qc4 g5 13 g3 gxf4 14 gxf4 Qh6 15 Qf2 0-0 0 16 h3 Ke6! (Black is already better) 17 Qb5 (opening the f-file helps Black: 17 Qxe6 fxe6 18 Qf3 Qhf8 19 Qg3 Qdxe5l or 19 Qe2 Qb4 with advantage) 17...Qb4 18 Qc1 c6 19 Qe2 Qf8 20 a3 Qd3+ 21 Qxd3 Qxd3 (Black advantage
grows: he has the two bishops, while White's pawns are loose) 22 \(\text{Qc}2\) \(\text{Qg}6\) 23 \(\text{Qf}3\) \(\text{Qhd}8\) 24 \(\text{Qc}3\) \(\text{Qxc}3\) 25 \(\text{bxc}3\) \(\text{Qc}4\) 26 \(\text{f}5\) \(\text{Qxe}3\) 27 \(\text{Qxe}3\) \(\text{Qd}3+\) 28 \(\text{Qe}4\) \(\text{Qxf}3\) 29 \(\text{Qxf}3\) \(\text{Qd}5+\) 30 \(\text{Qe}3\) \(\text{Qxh}1\) 31 \(\text{fxg}6\) \(\text{hxg}6\) and Black converted the extra pawn into a full point in B.Gikas-J.Haakert, German League 1988.

7 \(\text{Qe}3\)

Critical. By playing this precise move order White has created two threats: one is an early h2-h4 with a kingside attack and the white king castling long; the second is to play c4-c5, driving the black knight back. Note that, although Black can exchange queens in the second line, this is no real help as White can take back with the rook (instead of the king as above) – another point of the early queenside piece development. I believe Black has only one good move in this position (much like the last chapter’s key early \(\text{Qc}6\)) and that is Sergeev’s 7...\(\text{Qe}6\)!. The point is that Black can now meet 8 c5 with the centralization 8...\(\text{Qd}5\).

8...\(\text{Qd}7\) (exchanging queens brings no relief; Black is cramped unto death after 8...\(\text{dxc}5\) 9 \(\text{dxc}5\) \(\text{Qxd}1+\) 10 \(\text{Qxd}1\) \(\text{Qd}6\) 11 \(\text{Qd}5\) and losing material tool) 9 \(\text{Qf}3\) (or the immediate 9 h4 as in ‘b’ and ‘c’ below) 9...\(\text{b}6\) 10 \(\text{cxd}6\) \(\text{cxd}6\) 11 h4 \(\text{Qb}7\) 12 h5 \(\text{dxe}5\) 13 \(\text{fxe}5\) \(\text{Qc}6\) 14 \(\text{hxg}6\) \(\text{hxg}6\) 15 \(\text{Qd}2\) \(\text{Qxe}5\) (faced with a mating attack – \(\text{Qh}6\) is coming, followed by the heavy pieces – the high-rated GM could find nothing better than sac and pray!) 16 \(\text{dxe}5\) \(\text{Qxe}5\) 17 \(\text{Qxe}5\) \(\text{Qxd}2+\) 18 \(\text{Qxd}2\) \(\text{Qxe}5\) 19 0-0-0 \(\text{ac}8\) 20 \(\text{Qe}1\) \(\text{Qf}6\) 21 \(\text{h}3\) \(\text{Qd}8\) 22 g4 \(\text{c}5\) 23 g5! (White has a deci-
sive advantage) 23...\[xg5 24 \[xg5 \[xg5 25 \[xe7 \[g1 26 \[xb7 \[xf1+ 27 \[c2 \[f2+ 28 \[b3 \[dd2 29 \[xa7? (exchanging pawns a piece up is contrary to the basic rules of endings; after the correct 29 \[a4 White should win fairly easily) 29...\[xb2+ 30 \[a3 \[g7 31 \[a4 g5 32 \[g3 \[g6 33 \[d4 f5 34 \[d8 g4 35 \[gd3 b5 36 \[g8+ \[f7 37 \[b8 b4+ 38 \[xb4 \[xb4 39 \[xb4 f4 40 \[d5 g3 41 \[xf4 \[xf4+ 1/2-1/2 J.Fernandez Garcia-O.Korneev, Elgoibar 1996 – a very fortunate draw!

b) 7...0-0? 8 c5! \[d6 9 h4 \[c6 10 h5 \[xe5 11 dxe5 \[db8 12 h[=6 hxg6 h[=6 13 \[f3 \[xd1+ (Black gets the queens off but is severely cramped in the endgame) 14 \[xd1 \[g4 15 \[f2 e6 16 \[d2 \[xf3 17 \[xf3 \[e7 18 g4 \[bc6 19 \[b5 \[ad8 20 \[hd1 a6 21 \[a4 \[xd2 22 \[xd2 \[d8 23 \[xd8+ \[xd8 24 g5! (Black should have tried to break with...g6-g5 before White slammed the door: now Black’s cramp is fatal) 24...\[dc6 25 a3 \[a5 26 b4 \[c4 27 \[c1 \[d5 28 \[xd5 exd5 29 \[d7 b6 30 cxb6 cxb6 31 \[c8 a5 32 \[b7 axb4 33 axb4 b5 34 \[xd5 \[b6 35 \[e4 \[f8 36 \[d2 \[e7 37 \[e1 \[f8 38 \[c6 \[c4 39 \[xb5 \[a3 40 \[d3 1-0 V.Dimitrov-E.Janev, Plovdiv 1988.

c) 7...0-0? 8 c5! \[d6 9 h4 e6 10 cxd6 cxd6 11 h5 \[c6 12 hxg6 fxg6 13 d5 \[dxes (if 13...\[exd5 14 \[xd5+ \[h8 15 \[xd6 White is a pawn up and threatening \[xg6, so Black tries another desperation sac – but is not fortunate this time) 14 dxc6 \[xc6 15 \[b5 \[e7 16 \[ge2 a6 17 \[a4 b5 18 \[b3 \[f5 19 \[f2 b4 20 \[a4 \[b8 21 \[c1 \[h8

22 \[d3 e5 23 fxe5 \[g5 24 \[h3 \[h6 25 \[d1 \[b7 26 \[h2 \[be8 27 e6 \[c8 28 g4 \[xe6 (even more desperation) 29 \[xe6 \[xe6 30 gxf5 \[xf5 31 \[d4+ \[g8 32 \[wh6 \[xe2+ 33 \[xe2 \[g4+ 34 \[e1 \[g3+ 35 \[f2 \[g1+ 36 \[d2! and Black resigns as 36...\[xf2+ 37 \[c1! wins the queen in view of the mate threat, 1-0 C.Bauer-W.Hug, Swiss Team Ch. 2001.

8 \[b3

Strictly speaking the c-pawn does not have to be protected yet, as after taking twice White will have \[a4+ (if Black is not castled). Once Black castles the threat will be real, so here White protects immediately.

The sharp central push 8 d5 will be covered in the next and final game of this chapter. Meanwhile, besides the queen move, White has several, mostly untried, alternatives:

a) 8 c5 \[d5 is Black’s point: with a centralized knight (or bishop, if White exchanges) he has nothing to fear.

b) 8 exd6 exd6 gives Black a good Exchange Variation, as the f4-pawn hinders White.
c) 8 b3 was tried in a training game between my friend Joe Cepiel and myself: 8...O-O (8...dxe5 9 fxe5 0-0 10 f3 c5 11 d5 g4 12 xc5 Qd7 13 d4 Qxe5 is also good for Black) 9 f3 c5! (the typical break) 10 d5 (if White takes, one recalls the thematic combination cited in Game 48, note to White’s 9th move: 10 dxc5 Qd6 11 cxd6 exd6 12 Qxd6 Qxe5! with advantage to Black) 10...g4 11 c1 Qd7 (now White sacrifices a pawn, since 12 exd6 exd6 gives Black a good game with...Qe8 coming and the white king doesn’t have time to get castled) 12 e2 Qxf3 13 Qxf3 dxe5 14 0-0 exf4 15 Qxf4 Qe5 16 e4 Qbd7 17 Qg5 Qxf3+ 18 Qxf3 and now:

![Chess Diagram]

c1) 18...Qe8 leaves White with little or nothing for the pawn, as the following variations show: 19 d6 (if 19 d6 Qd4+ 20 Qh1 f6 21 Qe8 fxg5 and Black will emerge with a decisive material advantage of two pieces for a rook; or 19 We2 Wc7 20 Wc1 f5 21 c3 e5 22 dxe6 Qe5 23 Qe3 Qg4 24 f4 Wc6 25 Qef3 Qxe6 with the winning Fischer bind we’ve seen a few times before – instructive, though 24...Wa5 winning material may be even stronger) 19...Qd4+ 20 Qh1 f6 21 Qe3 (if 21 dxe7? Wxe7 wins a piece) 21...e5 22 g4 Qe6 and Black will soon sac an exchange on d6, getting two pawns for it and a dominating position.

The actual game took a less smooth course:

c2) 18...Qe5 19 Qh3 b6 20 We1 f6 21 Qf4 – here I blundered with 21...Qg4? (21...Qf7 is correct, when Black is defensive but maintains the extra pawn), but Joe missed 22 Qxc5!, recovering the pawn with some advantage, and played 22 Wf4?, after which I consolidated, soon counter-attacked and won: 22...h5 23 Qd3 e5 24 h3 Qh6 25 Qd2 f5 26 Wf2 Qd6! (instead of going to the obvious d4-square, Black destroys the blockade on e4 and ends White’s last hope) 27 Qc3 f5 28 Qg3 Qh7 29 Qg5 Qd7 30 Wh4 f4 31 g4 fxg3! 32 Qxg3 e4 33 Qdd1 Qf3 0-1 J.Cepiel-T.Taylor, training game, Los Angeles 2009.

The key to this whole variation is that White can’t hold his centre together after the strong break 9...c5!.

d) 8 h4 – we saw this was very strong in the variation 7...0-0 8 c5 Qd6 7 9 h4!, but here the black knight is in play, threatening c4. While that pawn is at least partially protected by Wa4+ at the moment, it seems that Black can ignore White’s attack and play the rather daring 8...0-0! Then as 9 h5 is destroyed by 9...Qxc4 and Black’s play is much faster, White has to ven-
tature 9 d5 c8 with an untried, very
double-edged position, in which Black
has good counterplay: I think White’s
centre will collapse before he can set
up a mating attack – but you will need
strong nerves to play this way, and re-
member, this is all new territory!

e) 8 f3 is much quieter. With no
danger of attack, Black can now calmly
play 8...0-0, when we are back in Bauer-
Sergeev, Game 48, which was good for
Black.

f) 8 e2 could lead to some fast and
furious variations; for instance 8...0-0 9
d5 f5 10 g4 d7 11 h4 dxe5 12 h5
exf4 13 xf4 a6 and I don’t think
White has enough attack for the pawn.

But almost none of this has been
tried: you don’t have to memorize in
these lines, you have to think.

Now back to our main game, where
you might have forgotten that White
just protected the c-pawn with 8 b3.

8...a5

White goes onto the defensive and
creates a hole at b4 – this is not the
way to meet Black’s sharp play. Also
ineffective are 9 f3 a4 10 c2 xc4
when Black snags a pawn, and 9 e4
d5 when Black equalizes immediately.

To me the consistent move is to em-
brace the sharp position with 9 d5. We
are in virgin territory here and I can only
suggest a few ideas: 9...c8! looks best,
defending b7 so as to free the Alekhine
knight. If then 10 c5 d6d7 11 f3 dxe5
12 fx e5 xe5 13 xe5 e5 and Black
is a pawn ahead, though White may
have compensation with his mobile
pawns and lead in development.

There’s a lot to explore here!

9...a6 10 d1 b4

Hole in one.

11 f3 d5!

Hole in two!

12 cxd5

Weak is 12 c5 d4, as the black
knights have come strongly behind
White’s overextended pawns.

12...xd5 13 xd5 xd5 14 c2
xf3 15 gxf3 d5

Black immediately fights back with
an Alekhine/Larsen counter-attack!

9 a4

176
A wonderful position for Black after just 15 moves! White has doubled pawns and two holes (at b4 and d5). The black queen or bishop might eye b4 or h4; in general Black is better all over the board.

Black wins speedily from here: only 79 moves, instead of the 130 of the previous game!

16 c1 e6 17 g1 h4+ 18 f2 e7 19 d2 d7 20 b5 c6 21 e2 h6 22 g4 f8 23 f1 b4

Black’s good bishop probes weaknesses across the board.

24 c1

If 24 x b4 ax b4 25 b3 White has a new hole at c3 and Black a potential knight outpost far into White’s territory.

24...0-0-0 25 g2 f5 26 g3 b8 27 h1 e7 28 g2 d7 29 c4 b6 30 b3 hd8 31 e3 d5 32 d3 e8 33 g1 d8 34 gd1 b6 35 g2 ed8 36 h1 a8 37 c1 f8 38 c4 b4 39 g2 a7 40 h1 e8 41 g2 b6 42 b3 f8 43 c4 d8 44 h1 h6

White cracks under the pressure. It’s hard to tell if Black wins after the solid defence 45 wg3, but it’s also hard to imagine White defending perfectly for the next hundred moves!

45...xd5 46 e3 f8 47 c1 b4 48 c4 b6 49 b3 ed8 50 g1 wa6 51 c2 e7 52 bc3 ad7 53 c4 b8 54 we1 wa7 55 f2 wa6 56 we1 wb6 57 f2 wd8 58 g3 wf8 59 we1 d8 60 g3 we7 61 zd2 b6 62 wf2 wf8 63 f1 wd8

Black sets up the ideal position: note that due to the mistaken exchange on d5, Black has enough space to triple on the d-file.

64 e1 a7 65 d1 h6 66 c2 g5!

Black attacks on both wings; White is doomed.

67 fxg5 hxg5 68 f4 g4 69 c1 b6 70 c2 h7 71 g1 h3 72 c3

If 72 g2 d7 73 b1 dh7 74 cc2 wd5 with decisive penetration.

72...xe3!

Crunch!

73 xe3 xd4 74 w2 xc3 75 xd5 wxd5 76 xc3
Black is a pawn ahead, and White’s early advanced pawns are very weak. In general White needs to win in the middlegame with the Four Pawns Attack, as those eagerly pushed pawns are usually just targets in the endgame.

76...\textit{Wc5+} 77 \textit{\textit{Wd3}}

77 \textit{\textit{Wb3}} \textit{\textit{Wb4+}} 78 \textit{a2} \textit{\textit{Wxa4+}} might prolong the game several moves without changing the result.

77...\textit{\textit{Wb4}} 78 \textit{\textit{Wf2}}

78 \textit{\textit{Wc2}} allows an easy win in the king and pawn ending: 78...\textit{\textit{We4+}} 79 \textit{\textit{Wc3}} \textit{\textit{Wxc2+}} 80 \textit{\textit{Wxc2}} b5 81 axb5 (if 81 b3 \textit{\textit{Wb7}} 82 \textit{\textit{Wc3}} \textit{\textit{Wb6}} 83 \textit{\textit{Wd4}} c5+ 84 \textit{\textit{Wc3}} \textit{\textit{Wc6}} 85 \textit{\textit{Wd3}} bxa4 86 bxa4 \textit{\textit{Wd5}} 87 \textit{\textit{Wc4}} and queenings is not far off, or 81 \textit{\textit{Wb3}} \textit{\textit{Wb7}} 82 \textit{\textit{Wc3}} \textit{\textit{Wb6}} 83 \textit{\textit{Wd4}} bxa4 84 \textit{\textit{Wc4}} c5 85 \textit{\textit{Wc3}} \textit{\textit{Wb5}} 86 \textit{\textit{Wd3}} \textit{\textit{Wb4}} 87 \textit{\textit{Wc2}} c4 88 \textit{\textit{Wb1}} \textit{\textit{Wb3}} 89 \textit{\textit{Wa1}} a3 and Black wins easily with two extra pawns) 81...\textit{\textit{Wxb5}} 82 \textit{\textit{Wc3}} \textit{\textit{Wc7}} 83 \textit{\textit{Wd4}} \textit{\textit{Wc6}} 84 \textit{\textit{Wc3}} \textit{\textit{Wc5}} 85 b3 a4 and the outside passed pawn ending is routine.

78...\textit{\textit{Wb3+}} 79 \textit{\textit{Wd4}} \textit{\textit{Wb6+}} 0-1

The queen goes.

Just remember: play 7...\textit{\textit{We6}}!

\textit{Game 52}

\textit{M. Petr-V. Sergeev}

\textit{Usti nad Orlici 2006}

1 e4 \textit{\textit{Wf6}} 2 e5 \textit{\textit{\textit{Wd5}}} 3 d4 d6 4 c4 \textit{\textit{Wb6}} 5 f4 \textit{\textit{g6}} 6 \textit{\textit{\textit{\textit{Wg7}}} 7 \textit{\textit{\textit{\textit{Wc3}}}} 8 \textit{\textit{\textit{\textit{We6}}}!} 8 d5

This blunt attempt to push Black back is the last serious test of the Sergeev Variation. I should note once more that you are almost out of book here (on move 81!) and there is much to discover. My feeling, based on my analysis, is that Black is fine, though you will have to think with your own head and play accurately.

For example, right now: where should the queen’s bishop go? 8...\textit{\textit{Wf5}} looks logical, but there are no games in the database with it.

\textit{8...\textit{\textit{\textit{\textit{Wc8}}}}}

Sergeev plays cautiously, but since we don’t have to fear being mated on the board (if \textit{\textit{\textit{\textit{Fritz}}}} mutes me in analysis, all I have to do is hit the back arrow!), let’s take a look at the more complicated 8...\textit{\textit{\textit{Wf5}}}.

One of the great things about playing this line of the Alekhine is that we might find an improvement on move 8 — as opposed to move 21 or so in the old main line of the Four Pawns Attack, or somewhere around move 30 in the Voronezh.

We know that the bishop on f5 is stronger than on c8, but the first question is, can it be trapped? Let’s try some
lines and consult the fearless Fritz: 8...\texttt{f5} 9 e6!? fxe6 10 g4 \texttt{xc3}+ 11 bxc3 \texttt{e4} 12 \texttt{wd4} exd5! 13 \texttt{wxh8+} \texttt{d7} and Black, having only sacrificed a rook, looks good to me (White will have to toss material in turn) – the Fritz-ter optimistically says Black already has equals over plus!

If there’s no trap, White might just develop with 9 \texttt{f3}, but then Black can simply play 9...\texttt{0-0} with approximate equality. So it’s very possible one can improve right here.

\textbf{9 \texttt{f3}}

Very risky is 9 e6 fxe6 10 h4 exd5 11 cxd5 e6 12 d4 \texttt{e7} 13 xg7 \texttt{wxg7} 14 dxe6 \texttt{c6} 15 \texttt{f3} \texttt{xe6} 16 g5 \texttt{f5} 17 g4 \texttt{d7} 18 \texttt{we2+} \texttt{we7} and White had nothing for the pawn in D.Flores-G.Llanos, Buenos Aires 1998.

\textbf{9...\texttt{c6}}

Black chips away at the centre and neutralizes White’s positional threat of c4-c5, which would now be met strongly by \texttt{xd5}. So the text move certainly seems best, but given the lack of experience with this position, one can hardly know for sure. For example, 9...\texttt{g4} looks playable, even though Black (with three moves for his queen’s bishop) is now a tempo down on Game 48. But can White use that extra tempo?

\textbf{10 \texttt{e2}}

Fritz offers the curious 10 \texttt{f2} here, which it is very hard to imagine a human opponent playing. I think Black could just castle.

\textbf{10...\texttt{0-0} 11 \texttt{0-0} \texttt{g4}}

Better than 11...\texttt{cxd5} 12 cxd5 \texttt{d7} 13 d4, when White holds his centre.

\textbf{11 \texttt{d2}}

The game is sharp and critical for both sides: if 12 \texttt{b3} cxd5 13 cxd5 dxe5 14 \texttt{xe5} (after 14 fxe5 \texttt{xf3} 15 \texttt{xf3} \texttt{xe5} 16 \texttt{ac1} \texttt{d7} White doesn’t have enough for the pawn) 14...\texttt{xe2} 15 \texttt{xe2} \texttt{d7} and White’s centre is destroyed, leaving only weaknesses at d5 and f4 – but Black must not take prematurely! 15...\texttt{xd5?} loses to 16 \texttt{xb6} \texttt{xb3} 17 axb3 and White wins a piece.

\textbf{12...\texttt{xf3} 13 \texttt{xf3} cxd5 14 cxd5 dxe5}

179
14...\(\text{Nd}7\) is also possible, increasing the tension to breaking point, with a razor sharp and unclear position. One wild variation I found (for illustration only – the position cannot be firmly evaluated yet) is 15 exd6 exd6 16 \(\text{Nh3 f5}\) 17 \(\text{Nb5 f6}\) 18 \(\text{Cc1 e4}\) 19 \(\text{Bb4}\) \(\text{Nd7}\) 20 \(\text{Cc7 c8}\) 21 \(\text{De6 xc1+}\) 22 \(\text{xc1 wc8}\) 23 \(\text{e3 e8}\) 24 \(\text{d3 df6}\) 25 \(\text{b3 e7}\) 26 \(\text{xa7? b6}\) 27 \(\text{xb6 wc1+}\) 28 \(\text{f1 dd2}\) 29 \(\text{wd3 xd5!}\) and Black wins, but there were many possible side trips on the way! 15 fxe5 \(\text{xe5}\) 16 \(\text{h6}\)

If 17 \(\text{Nh3 e8}\) 18 \(\text{f4 xf4}\) 19 \(\text{xf4}\) \(\text{wb8}\) 20 \(\text{wh6 xf8}\) holds, while 17 \(\text{Af1}\) is met by 17...\(\text{wc7}\). 17...\(\text{xf8}\) 18 \(\text{e4}\) \(\text{g7}\)

Black has a pawn for the exchange and a great position, but not one that can be translated into a win. 19 \(\text{Af1}\) \(\text{f6}\) 20 \(\text{xf6+ exf6}\)

The invulnerable dark-squared bishop holds Black’s position together.

21 d6 \(\text{Id8}\) 22 \(\text{Id3 c4}\) 23 \(\text{Bb4 xd6}\) 24 \(\text{fd1 wh6}\) 25 \(\text{g3}\)

25 \(\text{xd6?}\) would be a big mistake: 25...\(\text{xh2+}\) 26 \(\text{f1 xd6}\) and wins.

25...\(\text{w8 f8}\) 26 \(\text{f3 we7}\) 27 \(\text{g2}\)

Not 27 \(\text{xb7?}\) \(\text{b8}\) 28 \(\text{xd6}\) \(\text{xd6}\).
29 \textit{Exd6 Exd6 30 \textit{Exd6 Exb7 31 \textit{Exf6 Exb2 32 a6 Eb7 and Black winds up with an extra pawn in the endgame.}}}

\textbf{27...g7 28 a4 b6 29 b3 h5 30 \textit{Ed2 \textit{\frac{1}{2}}-\textit{\frac{1}{2}}}}

One sees that White refused any offers and, given his circumspect play, Black cannot make progress.

Can Black play for a win by very riskily keeping the pawn and not sacrificing the exchange on move 16? We'll have to leave that question for future games – but one should note that, much earlier, 8...\textit{f5 might be an important improvement.}

\textbf{Summary}

Sergeev's logical kingside fianchetto, informed by Fischer's ideas, seems to give Black a game full of chances in unexplored positions. White's idea of a quick attack, seen in Games 51 and 52, is so far the only challenging line, but if Black plays precisely (7...\textit{e6!}) he has nothing to fear and can play for a win in uncharted waters.
Chapter Seven

The Chase Variation – Back to the Centre

Our Hero: Viktor Korchnoi

I am far from the only chess author who finds it hard to wrap my mind around the Chase Variation, which comes about after the moves 1 e4 d6 2 e5 d5 3 c4 b6 4 c5 d5. White drives the Alekhine knight from its relatively poor place on b6 to a fine central square on d5, from where it cannot be driven by a pawn, due to White’s self inflicted hole there. Meanwhile, the advanced white c-pawn has become weak, and is usually lost or exchanged to Black’s advantage. Finkel writes, “There are many ways to meet the Alekhine Defence, but this one is definitely not the best.” And Cox bluntly says, “4 c5 is really an ugly move!” And yet, one must note that many strong GMs play this move (GM Evgeny Sveshnikov plays it exclusively against the Alekhine, and does quite well) and, overall, the database tells us that White scores 52% with the Chase – not exactly overwhelming, but better than the Four Pawns Attack!

As far as my personal experience goes, in the last few years when I’ve played the Alekhine quite a bit, I didn’t get a single Chase. About 30 years ago I did get one, and won easily using the counter-attack developed by this chapter’s hero, Viktor “the Terrible” Korchnoi!

In general, this variation is not dangerous to the Alekhine player who is at all prepared, and should give you excellent chances to play for a win – but one should not assume that the anti-positional nature of the line should automatically give you a win!
Game 53
A. Jerez Perez-H. Westerinen
Saragossa 1995

1 e4 d6

I’m not going to have a “Lines I Don’t Like” in this chapter”, but I’ll just point out the one “reef” that Black should avoid. Most players who play the Chase, such as the aforementioned GM Sveshnikov, also play the Alapin Sicilian (2 c3) and there are many transpositions from one to the other – but these are not forced! While sometimes (as we’ll see in the next chapter) it’s good to transpose from the Alekhine to another opening, here I think the pure Alekhine Chase lines are at least equal for Black – so there is absolutely no reason to transpose to the c3 Sicilian where your opponent might be better prepared – see the note to Black’s 6th move below.

2 e5 d5 3 c4 b6 4 c5 d5

This variation has scored remarkably poorly for White (only 43%) and is very easy to meet, so I will only spend one game on it and then move on to the main lines with 5 c3 or 5 c4, both of which attack Black’s knight again and prevent the immediate equalization seen here. In both cases I recommend that Black simply defend the centralized knight with 5...e6, a move which also attacks the white c-pawn.

I will cover the popular gambit 5 c3 e6 6 c4 (White’s moves can also come in the reverse order) in Games 54-57. Then 5 c3 e6 without 6 c4 will be seen in Game 58; and lastly, 5 c4 e6 without 6 c3 will be covered in Game 59.

5...d6

Under no threat, Black immediately takes the opportunity to break up White’s pawns.

6 cxd6

White has no choice, for if 6 f3 dxc5 7 dxc5 e6 there is no convenient way to defend the c5-pawn.
Alekhine Alert!

6...exd6!

Alekhine! The one trick of the Chase is seen if Black captures towards the centre (often a mistake in our opening – one recalls Chapter Five) with 6...cxd6, when 7 f3 is an exact transposition to a main line Alapin Sicilian, even though the move number is higher (1 e4 c5 2 c3 f6 3 e5 d5 4 d4 cxd4 5 cxd4 d6 6 f3 is the more efficient Sicilian order).

8 dxe5

8 fxe5 is weaker: Black has free development and already has a blockader (note the great knight that was forced to go to d5) in front of the isolated d-pawn. White did not even get out of the opening alive in the following game: 8...b4+ (Fritz puts Black ahead already, and I agree: White can’t play the natural c3 and so must exchange bishops, while Black leads in development and the e-file is open) 9 d2 xdx2+ 10 xdx2 0-0 11 c4 f6! 12 b3 c6 13 d3 e8+ (White has a terrible game, but the agony was not greatly prolonged) 14 f1 h8 15 xd5 cxd5 16 f4 c6 17 xd5 xd4 18 e1?! (18 xd8 xd8 is White’s only hope, albeit a slim one, in view of Black’s lead.

184
in development and superior minor pieces) 18...d7 19 xe8+ xe8 20 f3 
we3 21 xd7 xf4 22 e1 we3+ 23 
d1 e8 24 b3 h6 25 f4 e6 26 wc8+ 
h7 27 wc4 b5 28 wb4 wd3 and there
is no good way to stop the mate in one,
so 0-1 R.Espinosa Flores-J.Boudy, Sagua
8...b4+
This and the following moves need
no real comment, as Black develops
rapidly with an even game.
9 d2 0-0 10 c4 c6 11 0-0 g4

Now it’s too late for White to equalize: it’s difficult to fight in an open po-
sition without full development, and
here the sleeping queen’s knight poi-
sons White’s entire game.
15 xf7+
If 15 xf3 (15 xf3 xe5 16 xf7+ 
h8 transposes to the game) 15...xe5
16 wc3 (after 16 xe5 xe5 Black has a
decisive material advantage) 16...c2!
exploits the back rank, e.g. 17 xc2
f3+! 18 xf3 xe1+ 19 g2 g5+ 20 
h3 g1 and wins.
15...h8 16 xf3
If 16 xf3 xe5 is too strong, or 16 
xe8 d5 17 g3 xe8 and Black
should win with two pieces for
the rook.
16...xe5

12 e1
Preferable is 12 h3 xf3 13 xf3 
xd2 14 xd2 (if 14 xd5, 14...f4 is
slightly better for Black) 14...xe5 15 
xd5 xd5 16 xd5 ad8 17 xb7 
xd2 and Black’s strong rook balances
White’s superior minor piece, with a
draw being the most likely result.
12...e8 13 xb4
Again, better is 13 h3 xf3 14 xf3 
xd2 15 xd2 e5 16 e5 xe5 17 
xd5 xd5 18 xd5 ad8 with a likely
draw as before.
13...dxb4 14 b3 xf3!

White has no compensation for his
shattered kingside; he had to go for the
level endings earlier.
17 c3 d3 18 xe5 xe5 19 e4
No better is 19 d5 g5+ 20 f1 
f4 with a winning attack.
19...h4 20 e6 xf3+ 21 f1 xh2+ 0-1
Black mates or wins the queen.

This 5 d4 line gives White absolutely nothing: a draw would be all he could hope for – unless of course Black slips up, obeys the rules, takes toward the centre, and wakes up in a strange Sicilian landscape!

\[1 \text{ e4 } \text{f6} 2 \text{ e5 } \text{d5} 3 \text{ c4 } \text{b6} 4 \text{ c5 } \text{d5} 5 \text{ c4 } \text{e6}\]

I see no reason to investigate other moves such as 5...c6 when the text is so evidently simple and strong, and scores so well. Black maintains either knight or pawn in the centre, and immediately attacks White’s overextended c-pawn.

6 \text{ c3}

A popular (an astonishing 676 games in the database!) if rather doubtful sacrifice, which will be seen in this and the following three games. For the quieter 6 d4, see Game 59.

6...\text{xc3}

Again, there are other moves such as 6...c6, which is playable despite the appearance of a hole on d6 – but why? For a repertoire, the text move is simple and strong, so I see no reason to learn a bunch of different lines for a variation you will face so rarely.

7 \text{ bxc3}

Usually White takes the other way (the subject of our next three games), but in my opinion both versions of the sac are dubious, so it doesn’t matter too much. Note that after 7 dxc3 Black usually throws in 7...\text{c6} before taking on c5, whereas here this wouldn’t work, as White would play 8 d4.

7...\text{xc5}

I can’t see any reason why Black shouldn’t take.

8 \text{ d4}

Much weaker is 8 \text{g4} which doesn’t interfere with Black’s development. Black simply answers 8...0-0 (but certainly not 8...\text{f8}?) when a world champion demonstrates long-term compensation: 9 d4 \text{e7} 10 \text{h4} \text{h5} 11
The Chase Variation – Back to the Centre

\[ \text{f4 f5 12 exf6 xf6 13 f3 c6 14 e5 e7 15 d3 e8 16 f3 g8 17 h3 xex5 18 dxe5 b8 19 g3 f7 20 f6 d5 21 d8+ f8 22 xg7+! xg7 23 g5+ f7 24 g6+ e7 25 g5+ f6 26 xf6+ xf6 27 xf6+ e8 28 g6 mate! 1-0 Em.Lasker-Buchholtz, Copenhagen simul 1927) 9 d4 f5 and then:} \\

\[ \text{9 g4} \\

The best try, at least pinning Black down on the kingside for a while.

If 9 h4 d5 10 d3 c5 11 h5 cxd4 12 cxd4 c6 and it's clear that White has nothing to show for his pawn: 13 e2 f6 14 f4 b4+ 15 f2 0-0 (Black now wins comfortably) 16 g3 d7 17 c2 f5 18 a3 e7 19 h3 a6 20 h2 b5 21 g4 c8 22 b1 h8 23 gx5 exf5 24 e3 e6 25 a2 a5 26 g1 c4 27 c1 f7 28 b1 a5 29 xg3 xf8 30 c3 b7 31 ag2 xa3 32 xa3 xa3 33 h3 xxb1 34 xxb1 b4 35 d2 c3 36 f3 xf3! (beginning the decisive attack) 37 xf3 xh4+ 38 xh3 xxf4+ 39 xh1 c7 40 f2 fe4+ 41 g2 f4 42 xh4 h6 43 f2 xh7 44 xh2 a4 45 xg6 xg1 46 b3 47 xex6 b2 48 x6 a3 x8 50 e6 a2 51 xf7 b1+ 52 xxb1 axb1 w+ 53 g2 f5 54 xf4 xxf4 0-1 M.Bogorads-W.Breustedt, Bad Bevensen 2001.

9...d5 10 d3

Black aims for the type of French seen in the variation which starts 1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 c3 b4 4 e5 b6 5 g4 f8.
Alekhine Alert!

10...b6

After gaining a tempo on the bishop, Black goes over to the aforementioned solid, slow, French system — but with a nice bonus pawn!

11 g5 d7

12 h3

Or 12 e2 a6 13 axa6 axa6 14 0-0 h5 15 f3 e7 16 xe7 xe7 17 wd3 b8 18 a4 c6 19 b5 d7 20 f4 a5 (after a few accurate moves, White’s attack has once again run out of gas; Black now patiently converts the extra pawn) 21 we2 g6 22 wd3 c4 23 fb1 a5 24 a2 e7 25 f3 d8 26 d1 g5 27 h3 g4 28 d3 xf3 29 xf3 g8 30 g5 g7 31 h4 e7 32 f1 d7 33 e2 c6 34 f4 d8 35 f3 c7 36 d2 xd2 37 xd2 b7 38 a1 a6 39 g4 hxg4 40 xg4 h7 41 h1 b5 42 axb5+ cxb5 43 h5 xh5 44 xh5 gxh5 45 h4 b4 46 cxb4 axb4 47 exh5 b5 48 h8 c4 49 e3 c7 50 b8 c3 51 f4 0-1 M.Bosbach-W.Skulener, German League 1995.

12...a6 13 axa6 axa6 14 0-0 h6 15 h4 c6 16 f4 g6 17 f6 g8 18 wh4 c5 19 h1 c8 20 g1 wa4

We can now say, from the point of view of opening evaluation, that White has nothing real for the pawn. I concur with Fritz’s +1 (one full pawn, no compensation) evaluation. However, I put this game in to show that Black does not have a simple walkover in the Chase Variation: yes, Black now has a “theoretically won position” but the White player who dares this opening probably enjoys risky attacking play. Care is required, and it may be easier to play White, despite the theoretical evaluation: White just has to throw everything at the uncastled enemy king, as otherwise he will surely lose — so his play is simple. Black, on the other hand, must safeguard his king (which can never castle), try to connect his rooks, and set up a passed pawn. Black must multitask, to use a trendy word, while White must only attack. The young Sergeev (our favourite from the last chapter, at the time of this game still a long way from his GM title) is unable to keep all his plates spinning and loses a game he should have won.

21 f3 cxd4 22 cxd4 c2 23 a3 b8 24 g3 c6

Black has rearranged his pieces perfectly and now threatens to take the d4-pawn. Since the defence 25 fd1 a2 leads to favourable exchanges, White (whose task, as I mentioned, is simple) just throws another pawn at the black king and hopes for confusion or, at the very least, time consumption!
25 f5!? d7

Black has a hard choice, while his clock is ticking: take the sacrificed f-pawn or take the already attacked d-pawn, or decline both?

25...exf5 is possible, and after 26 e6 (necessary, as 26 h4 xd4 27 f4 c4 is an easy win for Black) 26...fxe6 27 c7 e7 I can't find an attacking line for White.

But I think it is even better to cold-bloodedly but consistently take the centre pawn: 25...xd4! 26 xd4 (26 wf4 c4 gets White nowhere) 26...xd4 and I don't see any compensation for two pawns, especially as Black now has a protected passed centre pawn. A sample continuation is 27 fxe6 fxe6 28 ac1 c4 29 we3 (not 29 xc2? wf1 mate!) 29...g5 and Black gradually consolidates with two extra pawns.

But cold-blooded defence requires experience and confidence!

26 fxe6+ fxe6 27 wf4

Now Black is only one pawn up, not two, and White has some sort of attacking position. Of course Black is still better, but it's not so easy.

34 wc2

Black can win with 34 a5 35 c5 g7 36 h5 df5, when White's attack is gone and Black's pawn majority is running.

35 d2 g7 36 wf6 g6 37 wf7 g7 38 wh5

White plays for a win against his inexperienced and probably time-pressured opponent, though objectively White should repeat the position.

38 df5

Again a forceful counter-attack should win for Black: 38 g4 39 b3 g5 40 wh4 (if 40 wf7?, 40...df5 wins immediately) 40...f5 41 we1 g3 and Black's kingside pressure plus the extra pawn should be decisive.

39 b3 xb4 40 axb4 c4?
The fatal and no doubt rushed 40th move; even now Black would be fine with 40...\text{e}3! (the key Alekhine idea is always counter-attack, not defence) 41 \text{xf}7+ (probably better is 41 \text{f}3 \text{xf}1 42 \text{xf}1 \text{f}5 43 \text{d}1 \text{g}6 44 \text{c}5+ \text{xc}5 45 \text{dxc}5 \text{f}7, when White has some drawing chances despite the minus pawn) 41...\text{d}8 42 \text{g}1 \text{xf}7 43 \text{xf}7 \text{xb}3 and Black wins.

41 \text{c}5+

41...\text{xc}5

Now it's too late for Sergeev: if 41...\text{e}7 42 \text{a}1 and there are too many highways into Black's position.

42 \text{dxc}5 \text{e}7 43 \text{h}3 \text{h}4 44 \text{fc}1 \text{e}4 45 \text{e}1 \text{c}2 46 \text{a}1 \text{d}2 47 \text{ed}1 \text{xb}4 48 \text{xa}6 \text{xc}5 49 \text{d}6+ \text{e}8 50 \text{xe}6 \text{f}2 51 \text{f}6 \text{c}2 52 \text{df}1 1-0

Black has no real defence to \text{f}8+.

But Black was winning! Maybe once, twice, thrice, or five times – but White was attacking and the defence was not so easy. So even if you pick up a more or less clear pawn in the opening of the Chase, remember there is still a middlegame to come!

Of course, from an opening standpoint, White's pawn sacrifice must be objectively evaluated in Black's favour.

\textbf{Game 55}

E.Vasiukov-V.Korchnoi

Minsk 1953

1 e4 \text{f}6 2 e5 \text{d}5 3 c4 \text{b}6 4 c5 \text{d}5 5 \text{c}4 e6 6 \text{c}3 \text{xc}3 7 \text{dxc}3

This move, opening the diagonal of the c1-bishop, is the more popular recapture – and means that Black must wait a move before taking the c-pawn, as White gets compensation after 7...\text{xc}5 8 \text{g}4 \text{f}8 or 8...\text{g}6, and even wins after 8...0-0? 9 \text{h}6.

7...\text{c}6 8 \text{f}4

Forced, since if 8 \text{f}3? \text{xc}5 and White has exactly nothing for the pawn, as he can't get his queen to g4.

8...\text{xc}5

This is the old main line, tried and tested for over 50 years, and White has been unable to do anything with it (in fact, from 1950 to the present, White
has only managed to score 42%!). As mentioned in the introduction to this chapter, I faced the Chase Variation about 30 years ago, and played this line, followed with Korchnoi’s counter-attack, sac’ed the exchange for a couple of pawns and won so easily I wondered why my opponent played this line at all! Unfortunately I no longer have the scoresheet to this game, but neither have I faced another Chase Variation in the last 30 years, and don’t know when I’ll see another one.

Therefore, given its rarity, I see no reason for the reader to memorize Suba’s trendy and complicated new line, which is also quite good: 8...\textit{Wh}4!? – the point is the following tactic: if White defends the f4-bishop in a normal manner, there is a trick based on the fact that the black queen and both white bishops are on the same rank; e.g. 9 \textit{Wf}3 \textit{Db}xe5! 10 \textit{Dxe}5 \textit{Wxc}4 and Black wins. Therefore, the weakening 9 g3 is forced, with the following continuation: 9...\textit{We}7 10 \textit{Df}3 (Cox suggests 10 b4 g5 11 \textit{Dc}3 \textit{Db}xe5 12 \textit{Dd}4, when White may have some compensation), and now Black can simply take on c5 (Sergeev) or play for a positional advantage with 10...b6 (Cox).

But all those queen moves are too complicated for me – especially since White has failed to find anything in the last 50 years to counter Korchnoi’s idea, and I doubt anything much will come up now.

9 \textit{Wg}4

White attacks, but the theme of Alekhine’s Defence is counter-attack, and that is our hero Korchnoi’s specialty.

9...g5!

A bold move to play in the USSR Trade Unions Team Championship!

I should point out that 9...g5 is not the only move: Black can also retreat and defend, similar to the previous game, when it’s not at all clear that White has enough for the pawn; e.g. 9...\textit{Df}8 10 \textit{Df}3 d5 11 0–0–0 \textit{Wc}7 12 \textit{Dd}3 \textit{Dh}7 13 \textit{Dg}5 \textit{h}6 14 \textit{Dh}7 0–0–0 15 \textit{Dg}3 f5 16 exf6 gxf6 17 \textit{Dxf}8 \textit{Dxf}8 18 \textit{Db}3 e5 19 \textit{Db}5 \textit{Dg}8 20 \textit{Dh}3 \textit{Dxf}5 21 \textit{Wxf}5+ \textit{Dd}8 22 \textit{Db}1 \textit{Wf}7 23 f4 e4 24 c4 \textit{Dc}7 25 \textit{Wh}3 f5 26 cxd5 \textit{Dxd}5 27 \textit{Dh}4 \textit{Dd}6 28 \textit{Df}3 \textit{Dg}8 29 \textit{Dc}1 \textit{Db}4 30 \textit{Dh}3 \textit{Dh}6 31 \textit{Db}d1 \textit{Dc}3 32 \textit{Wh}3 \textit{Dxb}3 33 \textit{Dx}b3 \textit{Dg}8 34 \textit{Dd}2 \textit{Dxf}4 35 \textit{Dc}d2 \textit{Dd}3 36 g3 \textit{Dd}6 37 \textit{Dc}3 h5 38 \textit{Db}1 \textit{Dd}5 39 \textit{Dc}2 \textit{Db}8 40 \textit{Dd}2 \textit{Dd}7 41 \textit{Dc}3 \textit{Dg}6 42 \textit{Dg}2 \textit{Dc}6 43 \textit{Dc}2 a5 44 h3 \textit{Db}4+ 45 \textit{Db}1 b6 46 \textit{Dd}1 \textit{Dd}3 47 g4 \textit{hx}g4 48 \textit{hx}g4 \textit{Dx}g4 0–1 O.Knudsen-M.Rohde, World Junior Ch., Innsbruck 1977.

191
On the other hand, Korchnoi's sharp counter is more fun to play, as Black immediately takes the initiative and White must play exactly to equalize – if he can of course!

10 $\text{Ng}5$

The only move to keep White in the game – the alternatives are much worse, as can be seen:

a) 10 $\text{Nd}2$ $\text{Qxe}5$ and Black is up two good pawns.

b) 10 $\text{Ng}3$? $\text{h}5$ 11 $\text{We}2$ $\text{h}4$ wins a piece.

c) 10 $\text{Wxg}5$ $\text{Wxg}5$ 11 $\text{Ng}5$ $\text{Qxe}5$ 12 $\text{Nf}6$ $\text{Qxc}4$! (this type of exchange sacrifice is a common theme of Korchnoi's counter-attack – of the seven games in the database that reached this position, Black won six and lost one, and that from a winning position) 13 $\text{Nh}8$ $\text{Qxb}2$ (I recall that I got so far in that long ago Chase game, but beyond this my memory fails me – except that I don't think I had any more difficulties in winning the two pawns for the exchange ending than Popov does here) 14 $\text{Nd}4$ $\text{Qe}7$ 15 $\text{Qf}3$ $\text{f}6$ 16 $\text{Bb}1$ $\text{Qc}4$ 17 $\text{Qd}2$ $\text{Qxd}2$ 18 $\text{Qxd}2$ $\text{c}5$ 19 $\text{Qe}3$ $\text{d}5$ 20 $\text{a}4$ $\text{e}5$ 21 $\text{f}3$ $\text{d}4$ (Black wins by straightforward advance: there's nothing to do against the pawn avalanche) 22 $\text{Qf}2$ $\text{Qd}8$ 23 $\text{Bb}5$ $\text{b}6$ 24 $\text{cxd}4$ $\text{exd}4$ 25 $\text{Qe}1+$ $\text{Qf}7$ 26 $\text{a}1$ $\text{Qd}7$ 27 $\text{Bb}2$ $\text{Qe}6$ 28 $\text{Qe}1$ $\text{Qd}5$ 29 $\text{Qd}2$ $\text{f}5$ 30 $\text{Qb}1$ $\text{Qf}6$ 31 $\text{Qa}2$ $\text{Qe}8+$ 32 $\text{Qd}1$ $\text{c}4$ 33 $\text{Qb}4$ $\text{Qe}7$ 34 $\text{Qb}1$ $\text{c}3$ 35 $\text{Qc}2$ $\text{Qc}5$ 36 $\text{Qb}3$ $\text{Qc}6$ 37 $\text{Qa}1$ $\text{Qe}2$ 38 $\text{Qxd}4$ (since if 38 $\text{Qf}1$ $\text{Qe}6$ mate) 38...$\text{Qxd}4$ 39 $\text{Qc}4$ 36 $\text{Qf}6$ 0-1 E.Paoli-L.Popov, Dortmund 1973.

10...$\text{Qg}8$

A powerful pin: Black is close to winning on the spot, and White is struggling to survive.

11 $\text{Qh}3$

For 11 $\text{h}4$ see the next game; and for 11 $\text{Qxd}8$ see Game 57.

The natural 11 $\text{Qf}3$?? just loses a piece to 11...$\text{h}6$, as the $\text{c}4$-bishop won't be able to retreat with tempo: 12 $\text{Qxd}8$ (if 12 $\text{h}4$ $\text{Qxg}5$ 13 $\text{hxg}5$ $\text{Qe}7$ 14 $\text{Qh}7$ $\text{d}6$ White has nothing real for the piece) 12...$\text{Qxg}4$ and both white bishops are hanging.

Another loser is 11 $\text{f}4$ $\text{Qxe}5$! 12 $\text{Wxh}4$ $\text{Qxg}5$ (ox sacs are thematic) 13 $\text{fxg}5$ $\text{Qxc}4$ 14 $\text{Wxc}4$ $\text{Wxg}5$ and Black should win easily as in the Popov game above.

11...$\text{Qe}7$

The point of putting the white knight on $\text{h}3$ is seen after 11...$\text{h}6$ 12 $\text{Qxd}8$ $\text{Qxg}4$ 13 $\text{Qe}2$, when the bishop saves itself with tempo. Maybe White is minutely better after 13...$\text{Qxd}8$ 14 $\text{Qxg}4$ $\text{Qxe}5$ 15 $\text{Qe}2$ $\text{d}5$ – Black has a great position, but only one pawn for the exchange.
12 f4

If 12 exf7+ Bxf7 13 Bg4 14 Bxd8 Bxc4 (stronger than 13...Bxd8 14 f4 Bg2 15 0-0-0 Bf7 16 Bdg1 Bxg1+ 17 Bxg1 d6 18 Bxd6+ cxd6 19 Be7 when White has some hope of a draw) 14 Bxc7 Bxe5! (a clever tactic that leaves Black with the superior minor piece in the ending) 15 Bxe5 (White can't afford 15 Bg6 Bc3+ 16 Bd2 Bxb2) 15...Bxe4+ 16 Bd2 Bxe5 17 Be1 Bxe1 18 Bxe1 Bb6 19 Bg5 Bb7 20 g3 Be7 21 f4 f6 22 Bc4 Bg8 23 Bf2 h5 24 Be3 Bd5 25 b3 a5 26 c4 Be6 27 Bc3 d6 28 a3 e5 29 Bd3 h4 (Black has an easy game; White, a desperate struggle to draw) 30 Bf4 hxg3 31 hxg3 Bg7 32 fxg5 dxe5 33 c5 Bxb4+ 34 axb4 b5 35 Bf2 Be6 36 Bd3 Bd5 37 Bb2 f5 38 Bb3? (White, under pressure, commits a fatal mistake and Black alertly takes advantage; correct was 38 Be3 with a continuing small plus for Black) 38...f4! (with the idea 39 gxf4 Bg2 winning the knight) 39 Bf4+ Bf7 40 Bf7+ Bd8 41 g4 (White can't get rid of all the pawns – if 41 gxf4 Bg2 42 fxe5 Bxf2+ 43 Bc3 Bf4 and Black should win) 41...e4

12...Bxe5

This game is historically important for the variation, and this is a great flashy move; but the modern player should probably improve with the computer-approved and easier 12...Bxg5, when White has no good reply, as the following variations show:

a) 13 Bxg5 h6 and it's impossible to believe White has enough for the piece.

b) 13 fxg5 Bxe5 14 Be4 Bxc4 15 Bxc4 d6 (15...d5? 16 Bf4 Bg7 is also good for Black and might be simpler) 16 Bf1 Bg7 17 0-0-0 e5 (Black is a pawn up and White has no real compensation; when White works hard to get it back, he allows a powerful counter-attack) 18 Bd6 Be7 19 Bf5 Bb8 20 Be4 Be6 21 Baa4+? (now Black takes over, but otherwise he will consolidate his extra pawn) 21...Bd7 22 Bxa7 Bc8 23 Baa4+ (necessary, since if 23 a3? Bb3 24 Be1 Bb6! traps the queen) 23...B5 24 Bf4 (the last hope is 24 Bxc2, though Black has a
very strong attack after 24...b4) 24...\texttt{\textit{L}}xa2 (now Black has a pawn again and an attack) 25 \texttt{\textit{W}}h6 \texttt{\textit{Q}}f8 26 g6 \texttt{\textit{Q}}g8 27 gxh7+ (White can't find counterplay; if 27...\texttt{\textit{Q}}g5 fxg6 or 27 qxh7+ \texttt{\textit{Q}}xf7 28 \texttt{\textit{Q}}xf7 \texttt{\textit{Q}}xf7) 27...\texttt{\textit{Q}}h8 28 \texttt{\textit{Q}}d1 \texttt{\textit{W}}g4! (it's over) 29 \texttt{\textit{W}}e3 \texttt{\textit{Q}}b3 30 \texttt{\textit{Q}}f2 \texttt{\textit{A}}a8 31 \texttt{\textit{Q}}d2 \texttt{\textit{A}}a2 32 \texttt{\textit{Q}}b1 \texttt{\textit{A}}xb2+ 0-1 P.Corbat-D.Ghysens, correspondence 2001.

c) 13 0-0 \texttt{\textit{D}}xe5 14 \texttt{\textit{W}}h5 \texttt{\textit{D}}xc4 15 \texttt{\textit{W}}xh7 \texttt{\textit{Q}}f8 (White conjures up amazing counterplay and finally draws after this natural move: it seems that the counter-intuitive 15...\texttt{\textit{Q}}f6!! is best, which lets a rook go with check but ends White's attack; e.g. 16 \texttt{\textit{Q}}xg8+ \texttt{\textit{Q}}e7 17 \texttt{\textit{Q}}g3 d5 and Black has a decisive advantage) 16 fxg5 \texttt{\textit{D}}e5 17 \texttt{\textit{Q}}f6 \texttt{\textit{W}}e7 18 \texttt{\textit{Q}}af1 d6 19 g6! (the attack keeps coming; one sees now it would have been better to donate the rook and win with the two pieces!) 19...\texttt{\textit{Q}}xg6 20 \texttt{\textit{Q}}xf7 \texttt{\textit{Q}}xf7 21 \texttt{\textit{Q}}xg6 \texttt{\textit{Q}}f8 22 \texttt{\textit{Q}}g5 \texttt{\textit{Q}}xf1+ 23 \texttt{\textit{Q}}xf1 \texttt{\textit{W}}e8 24 \texttt{\textit{Q}}h7+ \texttt{\textit{Q}}e7 25 \texttt{\textit{Q}}g5+ \texttt{\textit{Q}}f7 26 \texttt{\textit{W}}h5+ \texttt{\textit{Q}}e7 27 \texttt{\textit{Q}}g5+ \texttt{\textit{Q}}f7 28 \texttt{\textit{W}}h5+ 1/2-1/2 L.Tegzes-B.McLaren, Vancouver 2005. 13 fxe5 \texttt{\textit{Q}}xg5 14 \texttt{\textit{W}}h5

14...b5?!

This leads to a draw in the main game, but White could even try for an advantage.

The alternative is 14...\texttt{\textit{Q}}g7, when Black plays for a win, but must face some attack – here's a recent example: 15 0-0 \texttt{\textit{W}}e7 16 \texttt{\textit{Q}}h1 b6 17 \texttt{\textit{D}}e2 \texttt{\textit{Q}}b7 18 \texttt{\textit{Q}}f3 \texttt{\textit{Q}}xf3 19 \texttt{\textit{Q}}xf3 0-0-0 20 a4 \texttt{\textit{Q}}f6?! (20...f5, avoiding the following sac, gives Black the better game) 21 \texttt{\textit{Q}}xf6! \texttt{\textit{Q}}xf6 (missing the point; necessary is 21...\texttt{\textit{Q}}dg8 with equality) 22 \texttt{\textit{W}}f3! (winning a piece due to the mate threat) 22...d5 23 exf6 \texttt{\textit{Q}}f7 24 fxg7 \texttt{\textit{Q}}xg7 25 a5 \texttt{\textit{Q}}f8 26 \texttt{\textit{W}}e2 \texttt{\textit{Q}}f6 27 axb6 cxb6 28 \texttt{\textit{W}}b5 \texttt{\textit{Q}}c7 29 \texttt{\textit{D}}g5 \texttt{\textit{Q}}b7 30 \texttt{\textit{W}}e8 \texttt{\textit{Q}}h6 31 h3 e5 32 \texttt{\textit{D}}e6 \texttt{\textit{W}}b8 33 \texttt{\textit{W}}d7+ \texttt{\textit{Q}}a8 34 \texttt{\textit{D}}c7+ 1-0 P.Corbat-P.Benyovszki, correspondence 2000.

15 \texttt{\textit{W}}xh7 \texttt{\textit{Q}}f8 16 0-0?!

16 \texttt{\textit{D}}d3 looks better for White, who has recovered his material and still has attacking chances.

Instead, Vasiukov plays it safe and forces the draw.

16...bxc4 17 \texttt{\textit{Q}}xf7 \texttt{\textit{Q}}e3+ 18 \texttt{\textit{Q}}h1 \texttt{\textit{Q}}xf7 19 \texttt{\textit{W}}h8+ 1/2-1/2

It's perpetual check.

White survived here and even had chances for advantage at one point – but none of that would have happened after 12...\texttt{\textit{Q}}xg5, when Black wins a piece or a pawn and White has no real compensation. With Vasiukov's line discredited, Chase players have tried other moves to rehabilitate their gambit...
Game 56
J.Pachow-V.Bagirov
Berlin 1995

1 e4 d6 2 e5 d5 3 c4 b6 4 c5 dxc5 5 c3 e6 6 c4 bxc3 7 dxc3 c6 8 f4 xc5 9 w g4 g5 10 xg5 g8

We saw in the previous game that 11 f3 and 11 f4 failed, and that Vasiukov’s 11 h3 should have led to a Black advantage after 11...e7 12 f4 xg5!.

Here White tries to improve by protecting the bishop with the h-pawn; while in the next game he just breaks the pin at once with the queen exchange 11 xe4 xg4.

11 h4 h6

12 f3

This piece sacrifice turns out to be unsound on various levels, so 12 xd8 xg4 13 e2 xg2 14 xc7 was preferable, although it’s not clear that White can equalize here either after 14...b5!.

But not 14...b6?! 15 b4 xf2+ (or 15...e7 16 f3 g8 17 b5 and White wins; Black needs to block the key b5-square and keep b6 for his bishop – the pawn itself is not important) 16 f1 xg1+ 17 xf2 xa1 18 xa1 b7 19 g1 and White was better in J.Rojo Gomez-F.Pacorro, Spanish Team Ch. 1993.

Also inferior is 14 xf2 15 b4 e3 16 h3! g2 (forced, but now White gets Black’s important dark-squared bishop) 17 xe3 xg1+ 18 f1 and White’s two bishops give him compensation for the pawn.

Returning to the critical position after 14...b5!, White has three plausible replies:

a) 15 xb5 b7 (White’s motley position is difficult to hold) 16 h3 (not 16 b4? xf2+ 17 f1 e7 and Black has a decisive advantage) 16...g4 17 g1 e4+ 18 f1 xe5 19 d1 a6 20 e2 (the black bishops rule after 20 xe5 axb5) 20...d5 with some advantage to Black due to his greater central control.

b) 15 b4 b6 16 d6 (or 16 xb6
Alekhone Alert!

axb6 17 .setTimeout(20, x3 18 d2 xf2 19 hg1 e7 and White's position is coming apart) 16...b7 17 h3 a5 18 xb5 axb4 19 xc6 (if 19 cxb4 d4 20 d3 g4 and the h1-rook is in trouble) 19...xc6 20 xb4 a4 with a clear plus for Black in view of White's ragged pawns that will soon start dropping off the board.

c) 15 h3 b7 16 f4 g8 (not 16...xf2? 17 d3) 17 d2 (17 xb5?! xe5 discovers on White's rook) 17...e7 18 hg1 and White can hope for a draw, but probably unsuccessfully after 18...xg1 19 xg1 xf2.

In short, one sees that the ending is not very promising for White – but I think the piece sacrifice, as played, is worse!

12...hxg5 13 hxg5

With that "enviable consistency" Black has reached the technical endgame of his dreams: extra pawn + better minor piece + GM technique = 0-1.

13 xe5

This and the next few moves show the Grandmaster avoiding all "complications" and aiming for a simple, technical, pawn up ending. However, I see nothing wrong with keeping the piece, and can't find a serious attack if Black just develops with the idea of castling long; e.g. 13...e7 14 h7 d6 15 0-0-0 (or 15 g6 xg6 16 h8+ d7 and Black walks away) 15...d7 16 g6 0-0-0 with a decisive advantage.

14 xe5 xe5 15 we2 d6 16 f3 f6

16...xg2 is quite playable, but Black doesn't want to allow any counterchances and is in no hurry to win!

17 d2 d5 18 xd5 xf2+ 19 xf2 xf2+ 20 xf2 exd5

The four rook ending after 24 xe6 fxe6 25 h6 Ag8 doesn't look like a draw.

24 Ag8 25 g3 c5 26 e2 Ag5 27 a3 a5 28 fa4 d6 29 h7 f5 30 f3 b5 31 xe6 xf3+ 32 xf3 xe6 33 g4 a4 34 fa4 g6 35 g5 d4 36 h8 d5 37 d8+ d6 38 c8 d7 39 f3 e7 40 fa4 e2 41 d8+ c4 42 f3 xb2 43 d7 b1 44 g2 b4 0-1
There may be simpler wins, but I like this pawn advance – a precise winning method that contains two motifs. One, Black creates two passed pawns that cannot both be stopped, and thus will win a rook at least. Two, in any pawn race Black will queen first, while White will queen on the same file as his king, allowing a devastating skewer.

White has to play 45 cxb4 (as 45 axb4 a3 46 a7 dxc3 wins immediately using the separated pawns theme, and 45 xf7 loses to the skewering theme: 45...bxa3 46 g6 a2 47 g7 a1w 48 g8w a1w+ and wins) 45...cxb4 46 c7+ (again 46 axb4 a3 47 a7 d3 shows the separated pawns going through) 46...b3, and after these forced moves White now has four tries that, alas, all lose:

a) 47 axb4 a3 and the a-pawn costs White a rook.

b) 47 xf7 bxa3 48 g6 (if 48 b7+ c2 49 c7+ d3 50 a7 a2 wins a rook) 48...a2 and Black wins with either the previously seen skewer or a fork: 49 g7 a1w 50 g8w a1w+ is the basic skewer, and 49 b7+ c2 50 g7 a1w 51

\[ \text{Game 57} \]

D.Mason-J.Menadue
British Championship, Swansea 1995

1 e4 f6 2 e5 d5 3 c4 b6 4 c5 d5 5 c4 e6 6 c3 xc3 7 dxc3 c6 8 f4
Alekhine Alert!

\( \text{xc} 5 \text{g} 4 \text{g} 5 \text{10 \text{c}xg5 \text{g} 8 \text{11 \text{c}x}d 8 \) 

The last gasp of the \( \text{c} 4/\text{c} 3 \) gambit: White’s ambitions have dwindled to hoping to draw the endgame!

11...\text{xe} 4 12 \text{e} 2 \text{xe} 2

13 \text{xe} 7

After 13 \text{h} 4 \text{g} 8 14 \text{f} 3 \text{e} 7 15 \text{g} 3 \text{b} 6 16 0-0-0 \text{b} 7 17 \text{h} 4 0-0-0, Black consolidated his extra pawn and won smoothly: 18 \text{he} 1 \text{d} 6 19 \text{ex} d 6 \text{xd} 6 20 \text{xd} 6 \text{xd} 6 21 \text{g} 5 \text{g} 7 22 \text{ex} d 6 \text{cd} 6 23 \text{f} 4 \text{c} 7 24 \text{f} 6 \text{d} 8 25 \text{d} 3 \text{e} 5 26 \text{ex} h 7 \text{e} 7 27 \text{g} 8+ \text{xe} 8 28 \text{xe} 8 \text{d} 3+ 29 \text{f} 2 \text{xe} 1 30 \text{f} 1 \text{e} 4 31 \text{f} 3 \text{f} 5 0-1 \) M.Cristobal-C.Godoy, Argentine Ch., Buenos Aires 2004.

13...\text{xf} 2

Best. Weaker is 13...\text{b} 6 (as noted in the previous game, \text{b} 7-\text{b} 6 is a mistake in similar positions as White is able to take over the dark squares – see the position after 19 \text{d} 6) 14 \text{b} 4 \text{xf} 2+ 15 \text{g} 1 \text{xg} 1+ 16 \text{xf} 2 \text{h} 1 17 \text{xe} 8 18 \text{g} 1 \text{e} 7 19 \text{d} 6 \text{g} 6 20 \text{h} 4 \text{f} 6 21 \text{e} 6 \text{f} 7 22 \text{h} 5 \text{h} 4 23 \text{g} 7+ \text{xf} 6 24 \text{xd} 7 \text{f} 5 25 \text{f} 4 \text{e} 4 26 \text{ex} h 7 \text{e} 5 27 \text{d} 2 \text{d} 8 28 \text{e} 1 \text{g} 7 29 \text{e} 3 \text{e} 7 30 \text{h} 4+ \text{e} 6 31 \text{xd} 8 \text{b} 1 32 \text{a} 4 \text{f} 7 33 \text{a} 5 \text{bx} a 5 34 \text{bx} a 5 \text{f} 5+ 35 \text{d} 2 \text{e} 4 36 \text{c} 4+ \text{g} 7 37 \text{g} 5 \text{g} 3 38 \text{h} 6+ \text{h} 7 39 \text{e} 3 \text{f} 5 40 \text{xa} 7 1-0 \) I.Alonso Aranza- 

In the previous game the variation 11 \text{h} 4 \text{h} 6 12 \text{xd} 8 \text{xe} 4 13 \text{xe} 2 \text{d} 4 14 \text{xc} 7 \text{b} 5! was discussed, and I pointed out that 14...\text{xf} 2 15 \text{b} 4 \text{e} 3 16 \text{h} 3! was not so good for Black, who had to exchange off his important dark-squared bishop. However, this only happened because White had \text{h} 3 to attack said bishop – since in this game that move is impossible, there is no reason not to take the pawn.

14 \text{h} 3

Black doesn’t have to worry if White tries to divert the c5-bishop: 14 \text{d} 6 \text{xe} 5 16 \text{f} 3 \text{g} 4+ 17 \text{e} 1 \text{f} 5 18 \text{d} 4 \text{b} 6 19 \text{b} 5 \text{e} 5 and Black reaches a typically favourable counter-sac position. Black
actually has what I would call material advantage: exchange down, but with two extra pawns. This type of line occurs over and over in Korchnoi's anti-Chase.

As noted above, 14 b4 is not to be feared without h2-h4 and ...h7-h6 inserted: Black plays 14...e3 and if White tries 15 h4 he is too slow: 15...e7 16 h3 g2 17 xe3 xg1+ 18 f1 d5 and wins.

14...f5 15 g4 xe5+! 16 xe5 xe5

Not a sac, but a favourable trade.

17 h5

17...e3?!

Losing time; the simple 17...e7, preparing his pieces out, should win for Black; e.g. 18 g5 (on the quiet 18 0-0-0 d6 19 he1 d7 Black will win mechanically with his extra pawns) 18...d5 19 xh7 d7 20 g5 g8 21 h4 f6 22 h3 (if 22 f3 d3+ 23 d2 f4 wins the bishop) 22...d3+ 23 d2 g2+ 24 e2 (not 24 xd3? b5+ 25 c4 xc4+ 26 c3 b5 and mates) 24...xb2 25 ab1 b5 26 f4 c4+ 27 e1 f2+ 28 d1 (White can end it all with 28 f1 e3 mate) 28...a4+ 29 b3 g3 30 h5 e3 and Black wins.

18 e2 h6 19 g1 g6 20 f3 b8

Black finally develops! 21...xg5? would be a mistake because 22 xg5 d5 23 e3 f8 (or 23...d7 24 h5 with the initiative) 24 h4 is strong – Black should not lightly exchange his key dark-squared bishop.

22 xh7 e7 23 h4

23 g5 immediately is safer, escaping the danger zone.

23...e5 24 h3 a6+ 25 d1

25 d3?

Black misses a forced win: 25...h8

26 g5 f6 27 e4 xf3 28 xf3 b7 and wins; e.g. 29 e1 f5 30 xf5 exf5 31 c5+ e4 etc.

26 g5 f6 27 e4 fxg5 28 xd3 g4 29 hg3 f4 ½-½

Now best play is 30 xg4 xg4 (but not 30...xd3? 31 c2 e3 32 g7+ d8 33 h3 e1+ 34 d1 f2 35 h3 c7 36 f7 when White should win) 31 xg4 e5 with a dead draw.
Despite the drawn result, Black had two major chances to get a winning advantage. It turns out that the best White can get out of the \( \text{c3, c4} \) gambit (if Black is armed with Korchnoi counterplay) is a somewhat worse ending.

Black needs to remember that exchange sacrifices are standard in this variation, and will usually be extremely favourable, especially if you can pick up two extra pawns.

**Game 58**

**V.Sveshnikov-A.Shabalov**

Liepaya (rapid) 2004

\[
1 \text{e4} \text{f6} 2 \text{e5} \text{d5} 3 \text{c4} \text{b6} 4 \text{c5} \text{d5} 5 \text{c3} \text{e6} 6 \text{d4}
\]

Since the gambit (with 6 \( \text{c4} \)) that we've been examining falls short, Chase players, led by 4 c5 aficionado GM Evgeny Sveshnikov, have turned to this move (note that the White player here is Vladimir Sveshnikov, not GM Evgeny Sveshnikov, though two of Evgeny's games will be featured in the notes).

All the same, Black's opening difficulties are essentially nil, as he can immediately attack the advanced c-pawn and force a favourable Larsen-style exchange (Black moves towards the centre!).

Note that the alternate move order 6 \( \text{xd5} \) exd5 7 d4 makes no difference, as Black transposes to the main game with the thematic 7...b6.

\[
6...\text{b6} 7 \text{xd5}
\]

7 \( \text{cxb6} \) axb6 improves Black's position due to the aforementioned Larsen-style exchange and the half open a-file as well. Following are a couple of typical Black wins where his queenside pressure is a strong factor:

\[
\]

a) 8 \( \text{c4} \) \( \text{xc3} \) 9 bxc3 (Black isolates the a-pawn, but the white d-pawn is unexpectedly the first to drop!) 9...d5 10 exd6 cxd6 11 \( \text{f3} \) \( \text{e7} \) 12 0-0 \( \text{a6} \) 13 \( \text{xa6} \) \( \text{xa6} \) 14 a4 0-0 15 \( \text{e3} \) \( \text{d7} \) 16 \( \text{b3} \) \( \text{a8} \) 17 \( \text{a2} \)! (White can hope to draw with 17 \( \text{c4} \), when his weak pawns have a little potential mobility) 17...d5
(but now they’re fixed targets) 18 \f4 exd5 19 \d2 \xc6 20 \xc1 \xa8 21 \xa1 \h6 22 \h3 \xa8a7 23 \h1 \xf6 24 \xb4 \xf8 25 \xd6 \g6 26 \xb3 \a8 27 \d2 \xc8 28 \xc1 (an oversight, though I doubt that other moves would hold in the long run) 28...\x38xd4! 29 c4 \xc8 30 \xb3 \xf6 31 a5 \bxa5 32 \xa5 \xa5 33 \xa5 \xa5 34 \xa5 \xd6 35 \a8+ \h7 36 \xd5 exd5 37 \xd1 d4 38 \we8 \xd5 39 f3 \e5 40 \g1 d3 41 \xc8 \e4 42 \wa6 0-1 M.Palek-P.Freisler, Plzen 2000.

b) 8 \xd5 exd5 9 \f3 \e7 10 \e2 a6 11 0-0 0-0 12 \f4 \xc8 13 a3 \xc6 14 \xc1 \xe2 15 \we2 \xa6 16 \xa6 \xa6 17 \e6 fxe6 18 \xe7 \e6 19 \fd1 \xc8 20 \d6 \xa8 21 \f1 b5 22 \e5 \a4 23 g4 b4 24 \d6 bxa3 25 bxa3 \f7 26 \h3 \e7 27 \xe5+ \xe5 28 \xe5 \xa3 – the weak a-pawn finally drops off the board and Black went on to win in I.Werner-L.Krizsany, Bern 1998.

White also has another possible 7th move: I should not fail to mention the zany 7 \wg4 \bxc5 8 \xd5 exd5 9 \a5 \d6! (now that’s a true Alekhine counter-blow!) 10 \xd8 \xg4 11 \xc7 \xe5 12 \xe5 c4 (Black has emerged with the better centre and better endgame) 13 f3 \b4 14 \d1 \xe6 15 a3 \c5 16 \e2 \d7 17 \xb8 \x8b 18 \c2 \f5+ 19 \d1 \xb2 20 \c3 \e3 21 g4 \e6 22 \a4 \d2+ 23 \e1 \b8 24 \h3 \e7 25 \g1 \d7 26 \c5 \xc5 0-1 A.Franck-C.Rivaud, Geneva 1991.

7...exd5 8 \e3 bxc5

I think this is best, as Black forces a white pawn away from the centre and secures a protected passed pawn for himself, though GM Sveshnikov could make no impression against the quieter 8...\xa6 either: he tried 9 \xa6 \xa6 10 \xa4, but ended up slightly worse as his advanced pawns were weaker than Black’s compact structure: 10...\xc8 11 b4 c6 12 \e2 \c7 13 \d1 \e7 14 0-0 0-0 15 f4 f5 16 g4 g6 17 \g3 \e8 18 a4 \e6 19 gxf5 \xf5 20 a5 b5 21 \xa2 \h8 22 \g2 \f7 23 \d3 \h4 24 \e2 \g8 25 \f2 \xg2+ 26 \xg2 \a8+ ½-½ E.Sveshnikov-E.Miroshnichenko, Bled 1999.

9 \xc5 c6

10 \xd2

10 \f3 would transpose to A.Hennings-V.Bagirov, Polanica Zdroj 1969, where Bagirov scored another of his great technical wins: 10...\a5+ 11 \d2 \xd2+ 12 \xd2 a5 13 \d3 \a6 14 \c2 \b7 15 \d3 \a6 16 \xa6 \xa6 17 \ac1 \b8 18 b3 \e7 19 \d4 g6 20 f4 f6 21 e6 \xc8 22 \xd7+ \xd7 23 f5 \he8 24 \he1 \b8 25 g4 \f8 26 \e6 \b4 27 \g1 \e4 28 \ce1 a4 29 \c3 \e7 30 \d4 \e2 31 h3 \xa8 32 b4
Alekhine Alert!

27...\texttt{\texttt{b}8}? (the ever-annoying Fritz points out that this logical-seeming move that attacks White's loose knight is a horrible blunder, while the less flashy 27...\texttt{e}6 just wins, since Black's kingside is protected and the extra pawn is good enough) 28 h5! (White gets a huge attack from nowhere, as both 28...g5 29 \texttt{xf}6 and 28...\texttt{xb}5 29 h\texttt{x}g6 allow kingside breakthroughs – of course with the queen on e6, 28 h5 would have been meaningless in view of the stolid reply 28...g5, and f6 is held) 28...\texttt{xc}6 29 h\texttt{x}g6 \texttt{b}7 30 \texttt{d}6!! \texttt{g}7 (if 30...\texttt{xd}6, 31 \texttt{c}8+! wins) 31 g\texttt{xh}7+ \texttt{h}7 32 \texttt{xf}6 \texttt{xc}1 33 \texttt{d}8+ \texttt{g}7 34 \texttt{e}7+ \texttt{g}6 35 \texttt{e}6+ \texttt{h}5 36 \texttt{xe}5+ \texttt{g}6 37 \texttt{f}5+ \texttt{h}6 38 \texttt{f}6+ \texttt{h}5 39 \texttt{f}5 \texttt{d}3 40 \texttt{g}7+ 1-0 E.Sveshnikov-A.Beletsky, Togliatti 2003.

As in Sergeev's loss (Game 54) White comes up with a tremendous final attack from an objectively lost position – I repeat, don't relax just because you're a good pawn up in the Chase: your opponent is most likely a speculative attacking player, so you must be accurate to the end!

10...\texttt{e}7

10...a5 is more precise: Black might use this pawn as a battering ram if White goes long; Black also gains space on the queenside. Let's take a look at the critical line: 11 \texttt{d}3 (if White plays more quietly with 11 \texttt{f}3, then 11...\texttt{a}6 12 0-0-0 \texttt{e}7 is equal much like the game) 11...\texttt{a}6 12 \texttt{c}2 \texttt{e}7 13 0-0-0 0-0 14 \texttt{f}3 a4! (one sees the dif-
ference the unblocked a-pawn makes; Black is threatening ....c4 whether or not White takes the pawn) 15 axa4 c4 16 b3 xa4! 17 bxa4 a6 and Black has a tremendous attack.

11 f3 0-0 12 d3 a6 13 0-0

Now White could preserve his bishop and play for an attack himself: 13 c2!, followed by queenside castling, looks surprisingly dangerous despite the seemingly exposed white king. The problem is Black’s light-squared bishop which is in the way of his own knight and a-pawn as well. The following variations show the dangers Black faces, and why 10...a5 was correct: 13...f6 (13...c4 14 b3 a6 15 0-0-0 b7 is too slow: 16 h4! a5 17 h5 a4 18 d3 g6 19 xg6 fxg6 20 xh7l and White wins) 14 0-0-0 fxe5 15 xex5 h6 (not 15...d6? 16 xc6l) 16 g4 and White has a strong attack while Black still has not managed to connect his rooks.

13...xd3 14 xd3 a5

Now Black has his proper set-up and has no difficulties, given his protected passed pawn in the centre and safe king. He will strengthen his position by manoeuvring his knight to the strong post at e6.

15 ac1 a6 16 d4 c7 17 g3 wb8 18 h4 wb5

19 we3

White should accept the roughly even ending and play 19 xb5 xb5, as there is no attack for White without his light-squared bishop.

19...e6 20 h5 h6 21 ac2 ab8 22 g2 wa4 23 b3 wb4 24 fc1

An oversight, though of course Black is better with ...a5-a4 coming. One sees how crucial this little pawn is to Black’s counterplay, and how his game suffers when it’s blocked, as could have happened had White played 13 c2.

24 g5 25 wd3

25 xg5 is better, limiting the damage to one pawn, though it’s still a clear advantage to Black after 25...xd4 26 a3 xa3 27 xd4 hxg5 28 wg4 xb3 29 xg5 (or 29 xd7 wb7 30 f5 we7 also with an extra button) 29...f6 and Black counter-attacks while keeping his material.
25...\textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{xc1}}} 26 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{xc1}}} a4!

The a-pawn prises open the queen-side files; Black is winning.

27 bx\textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{a4}}} \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{xa4}}} 28 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{d1}}} \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{xa2}}} 29 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{f5}}} \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{b3}}} 30 g4 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{e2}}} 0-1

White resigns, since 31 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{a1}}} \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{xf3}}} 32 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{xf3}}} \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{xf3}}}+ 33 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{xf3}}} \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{xd4}}}+ leaves Black a piece up.

Neither Vladimir Sveshnikov nor GM Sveshnikov could get anything against this line — when Black plays correctly! Remember to be accurate and play ...a7-a5 before ...\textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{a6}}}.

Game 59
D.De Vreugt-P.Egeli
Pardubice 2001

1 e4 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{f6}}} 2 e5 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{d5}}} 3 c4 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{b6}}} 4 c5 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{d5}}} 5 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{c4}}} e6 6 d4

We see almost the same picture as in the last game, except that White has a bishop on c4 instead of a knight on c3. Evidently this is only a cosmetic difference: once again Black breaks with ...b7-b6 against the overextended c5-
pawn and, at the very least, equalizes the game.

6...b6

7 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{g4}}}

The Dutch GM attempts a wild attack — but can only last to move 20, with White, against a much lower rated opponent!

The unambitious 7 cxb6 is the most popular move and probably also the best, though White only scores 47%, and after 7...axb6 Black obtains a wonderful single island pawn structure and the open a-file;

e.g. 8 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{c3}}} (or 8 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{f3}}} \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{a6}}} 9 b3 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{b4+}}} 10 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{d2}}} \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{c6}}} 11 0-0 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{xd2}}} 12 \textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{xd2}}}
\( \text{ce7} \) and Black was already better with his lock on d5; the reader will not be surprised that Bagirov scored another fine technical win from this position, but not quickly! — eventually 0-1, A.Machulsky-V.Bagirov, Kishovabad 1973) \( 8...\text{xc3} 9 \text{bx} 3 \text{d} 5 10 \text{d} 3 \text{a} 6 11 \text{axa6} \text{xa6} \) (Black's typical development in this variation: the white a-pawn is a long-term target) \( 12 \text{g} 4 \text{d} 7 13 \text{e} 2 \text{c} 6 14 0-0 \text{d} 8 \) (Black intends a king walk to b7, followed by ...g7-g6, ...e7, and ...\text{ha} 8 with a great positional advantage; rather than wait for all that World Champion candidate Adorjan throws everything at the black king — but doesn't get through) \( 15 \text{f} 4 \text{g} 6 16 \text{c} 4 \text{dxc} 4 17 \text{d} 5 \text{exd} 5 18 \text{e} 6 \text{fxe} 6 19 \text{xe} 6+ \text{c} 8 20 \text{b} 2 \text{g} 8 21 \text{fe} 1 \text{b} 4 22 \text{e} 3 \text{d} 8 23 \text{h} 3 \text{b} 5 ! \) — the a6-rook enters play and forces the queen exchange, after which Black is just two pawns up. White gave up on his attack and the game: 0-1 A.Adorjan-D.Marovic, Pula 1971.

\( 7...\text{bx} c 5 \)

As usual in the Chase, Black has no reason not to take the offered c-pawn.

\( 8 \text{g} 5 \)

\( 8 \text{dxc5} \text{e} 7 \) wins a pawn for not much, while \( 8 \text{xd} 5 \text{exd} 5 9 \text{g} 5 \text{d} 6 ! \) is a typical Alekhine counter-attack — we saw a version of it in the notes to White's 7th move in the previous game. After \( 10 \text{g} 3 \text{f} 6 11 \text{exf} 6 \text{gxf} 6 12 \text{e} 3 \text{cx} d 4 13 \text{xd} 4 \text{c} 5 \) Black's extra pawn and central control outweigh his slightly breezy king.

\( 8...\text{xe} 7 \)

Simpler is \( 8...\text{f} 5 9 \text{ex} f 6 \) (or \( 9 \text{g} 3 \text{e} 7 \) and Black is just a clean pawn up) \( 9...\text{xf} 6 \) and again White has nothing for the pawn.

\( 9 \text{dxc5} \)

White restores the material balance but allows Black to seize the initiative; better is \( 9 \text{f} 3 \text{cx} d 4 10 \text{xd} 4 \), when White has some development compensation for the pawn.

\( 9...\text{bc} 6 10 \text{f} 3 \text{h} 6 11 \text{wh} 5 \)

It's better just to retreat the bishop with a slightly worse game; e.g. \( 11 \text{e} 3 \text{b} 8 12 \text{b} 3 \text{b} 4 \) (Black can also play simply: \( 12...\text{g} 6 13 \text{g} 3 \text{e} 7 \) with
equality) 13 a3 f5 14 0-0 xe3 15 fxe3, when White has counterplay on the kingside which compensates somewhat for his ragged pawns.

11...b8

Black is now attacking across the board, and White has too many obligations to defend effectively.

12 c3 hxg5!!

Rather like the famous game E.Geller-M.Euwe, Zürich Candidates 1953, Black offers a rook to lure the white queen away from the main battle; she will never escape her distant corner.

Here's another look at that brilliant game: 1 d4 f6 2 c4 e6 3 c3 b4 4 e3 c5 5 a3 xc3+ 6 bxc3 b6 7 d3 b7 8 f3 c6 9 e2 0-0 10 0-0 a5 11 e4 e8 12 g3 cxd4 13 cxd4 c8 14 f4 xc4 15 f5 f6 16 xf4 b5 17 h4 w6 18 e5 xe5 19 fxe6 xd3 20 xd3 xe6 21 wxe7+ f7 22 h6 h8 (a rook is offered just to divert the queen!) 23 w8 c2 24 c1 xg2+ 25 f1 w3 26 e1 w3 0-1 E.Geller-M.Euwe, Zürich 1953.

13 xh8 g4 14 g5 xe5

The white centre collapses under a typical Alekhine knight attack.

15 ce4

White might as well try the amusing but primitive trap 15 h7!? g6 (trapping the queen) 16 e4, hoping for 16...h8?? 17 hf6+ xf6 18 xf6 mate! But Black would undoubtedly have found 16...f5, making luft and winning a piece.

15...7g6 16 g8

The queen can't get back: if 16 wh5 f4 17 wh8 (forced) 17 xc4 18 h7 we7 and Black is a piece up.

16...we7 17 b3 f5!
Now White's artificial position must collapse.

18 0-0 fxe4 19 dxe4 Wh4 20 fe1 e7 0-1

The "attacking" white queen is trapped and lost.

So one can beat a GM with Black in 20 moves with Alekhine's Defence — but probably not against the rather better 4 f3!.

**Summary**

The Chase Variation remains dodgy, to put it mildly. The statistics are poor, Fritz is unimpressed, and it's easy to play against. As much as there is a main line, it appears that White doesn't have anything better than the old pawn sacrifice seen in Games 54-57 (one recalls that White won one of those four games, drew two, and lost one for an even score). Although White doesn't get much of anything from a theoretical standpoint, he does have practical chances, as Sergeev found out to his misfortune, and Black must not assume that one pawn up automatically equals victory.

The Alekhine player should familiarize himself with Korchnoi's counter-attack and the ...b7-b6 break seen in the last two games. With that basic knowledge, you can face the Chase without fear.
Chapter Eight

Fourth or Fifth Move Sidelines

Our Hero: Rafael Vaganian

In this chapter we’ll cover a few “almost a variation” lines, in the sense that “if it’s almost a sport, it’s on the ocho!” These occur on move 4 or 5 when White doesn’t know or want to know a main line – or else he thinks, “Why play something good, I can beat this Alekhine junk with anything!”

In reality none of these should cause the slightest problem, as long as one is prepared! We’ll look at (after 1 e4 ∆f6 2 e5 ∆d5 3 d4 d6):

a) 4 ∆c4 (Games 60 and 61). The first of these games brings back our favourite “Lines I Don’t Like”, while the second shows the correct way to battle this innocuous system – think outside the box! Think outside Alekhine’s Defence! Yes, this chapter’s hero, Rafael Vaganian, will show you an excellent transposition to the French! After all, as Joseph Heller said, “Consistency is an overrated virtue!”

b) 4 ∆e2 (Game 62). This hardly deserves a special game as it basically transposes to Chapter Two; nonetheless I give a quick review and a look at this particular move order.

c) 4 f4 (Game 63). Tal demolished this in Game 7, but I’ll show how White might approach equality with a better move order.

d) 4 c4 ∆b6 5 ∆f3 (Game 64). This introduces a gambit that Alekhine played with success against his own defence, but it’s much simpler to stick within our repertoire and completely avoid such tricks – I’ll show you how to defuse this gambit, Kengis style.

And now, without further ado:
Lines I Don’t Like

Game 60
A.Kislinsky-R.Ivanukh
Kharkov 2009

1 e4 c5 2 e5 d6 3 d4 d6 4 c4

Another deviation is 4 exd6 exd6, most likely with a transposition to Chapter Five, which shouldn’t terrify anyone – but Black even has extra options here, as his centralized knight can retreat to f6 instead of b6.

4...b6

Natural and best; 4...dxe5 5 dxe5 b6 6 xf7+ is very possibly worse for Black.

5 b3

Black must now make a critical decision. All five of my Alekhine books give either 5...dxe5 or 5...f5 as the main move. Indeed, these are the “Alekhine Defence” moves – but they are also, in my opinion, objectively inferior. In both cases White gets a terrific attack and scores very high in the database. I don’t like the main game with 5...dxe5 because, as we’ll see, White gets a powerful attacking position right out of the opening with 6 h5, and indeed scores 59% after that move.

I don’t like 5...f5 any better: the Icelandic GM Thorhallsson has had great success with the obstructive sac e5-e6 here (so often strong vs. the Alekhine) and I see no reason to submit to such a painful defence. Note also that a check of the database after 6 e6 reveals that White scores 63%! Here are a couple of discouraging looks at Thorhallsson wins with 6 e6 fxe6 and then:

a) 7 a4 a5 8 f3 c6 9 0-0 d7 10 e1 0-0 11 g5 (White is already clearly better: Black sacs the exchange to keep e6 from collapsing, but never gets sufficient compensation) 11...d5

12 f7 g8 13 xd8 xd8 14 c3 g5 15 c2 g4 16 f4 c4 17 a3 d6 18 b5 b8 19 d3 g7 20 xd6 cxd6 21 xf5 exf5 22 b3 c6 23 e6 (the fatal square!) 1-0 T.Thorhallsson-S.Schneider, Copenhagen 1995.
b) An earlier game led to the following dramatic bind: 7 .gf3  wd7 8 0-0
d.c6 9 a4  da5 10 a2  dxa4 11 d.g5 d5
d.b3  dxb3 13 cxb3  d.b6 14  f.f4 h6
d.f3  g.g4 16  d.d3  dxf3 17  dxf3  c.c8
d.e1  d.d6 19  h5+  d.d8 20  g.g6  d.f5
d.d2  dxd4 22  d.f3  dxf3+ 23 gxf3 e5
d.xe5 a5 25 d.e6 c6 26 b4 a4 27 e.e3
d.a6 28 c.c1 (Black is two pawns up, but
still can't free himself from the blockade at e6, the epicentre of the obstructive sac) 28...d4 29 d.d1 dxe3 30 d.xd7+
d.xd7 31 dxe3 c5 32 d.d3+  c.c7 33  d.e8
d.d6 34 c.c3 d.d1+ 35  g.g2 e6 36 bxc5 g5
37 c6 1-0 T.Thorhallsson-G.Sigurjonsson, Icelandic Team Ch. 1994.

Black does have another move: safe, objectively sound, and White can't even manage 50% against it – see the next game for the solution.

5...dxe5 6  h.h5

This zwischenzug is White's point, forcing Black over to a painful defence.

6...e6

6...g6 7  dxe5 f6 8  d.e3 is also unpleasant.

7 dxe5

This is the kind of pawn wedge position we discussed in Chapter Two. If White can get this attacking set-up without any opposing counterplay, he stands better, as here.

7...a5 8 a4  d.a6

The idea of this manoeuvre is to exchange the b3-bishop and weaken White's pawn structure, but this doesn't help if you get mated in the meantime!

I'm not saying Black loses by force here; it's just that White's game is so easy to play (look at his next three moves: all logical development that prepares an attack), while Black must resort to convoluted manoeuvres just to stay in the game.

9 d.c3  d.c5 10  d.g5  d.e7 11  d.d1  d.d7 12  d.e3  d.xb3 13 cxb3 0-0 14  f.f3  d.c8 15  d.g5

15...xg5?!

Bringing the white knight into the attack can't be right. Black had two better tries: 15...f6 16 exf6  dxf6 and 15...d.e8 16  d.h4  xg5 17  xg5 h6 18  d.ge4. White gets a plus equals from
Mr. Fritz in both cases, but given what happens in the game, Black should be delighted to be slightly worse!

16...\textcircled{1}xg5

It’s possible that even now Black may not be completely lost.

16...\textcircled{h}6 17 \textcircled{c}e4 \textcircled{c}c6?

Black also loses by force after 17...\textcircled{w}d8? 18 \textcircled{f}f6+! gxf6 19 \textcircled{e}e4 f5 20 \textcircled{d}d3 fxe4 21 \textcircled{g}g3+ \textcircled{w}g5 (or 21...\textcircled{h}h7 22 \textcircled{h}h3 and mates) 22 \textcircled{w}xh6! \textcircled{w}g6 (if 22...\textcircled{w}xg3 23 hxg3 and mate next move) 23 \textcircled{x}xg6+ fxg6 24 \textcircled{x}xg6+ \textcircled{h}h8 25 h4 and White has a winning attack.

But there is a defence! 17...\textcircled{a}d5! (the only move) 18 \textcircled{f}f6+ \textcircled{x}xf6! (but not 18...gxf6? 19 \textcircled{w}xh6 fxg5 20 \textcircled{x}xg5+ \textcircled{h}h8 21 \textcircled{d}d4 and mates) 19 exf6 e5 20 fxg7 \textcircled{x}xg7 21 \textcircled{f}f3 and Black is only a little worse – success!

18 \textcircled{f}f6+!

If 18...\textcircled{h}h8 19 \textcircled{w}xf7! wins, as neither the queen nor either knight can be taken, and White threatens both 20 \textcircled{w}g6 and 20 \textcircled{w}g8+!.

19 exf6 1-0

Black resigns short of move 20, as after 19...\textcircled{a}d5 20 \textcircled{x}xd5 exd5 21 \textcircled{w}xh6 \textcircled{e}e8+ 22 \textcircled{f}f1 Black has no more good checks, and will soon run out of bad ones; e.g. 22...\textcircled{b}b5+ 23 axb5 \textcircled{e}e1+ 24 \textcircled{x}xe1 \textcircled{w}e8+ 25 \textcircled{d}d2 \textcircled{w}e2+ 26 \textcircled{e}e2 \textcircled{e}e8+ 27 \textcircled{d}d2 \textcircled{e}e2+ 28 \textcircled{e}e2 and mate follows.

Maybe Black could have held the plus equals position he could have reached on move 15, but I just can’t see the allure of that course, when there is something so much simpler and better...

The white e-pawn wedge supports the decisive attack, while Black’s sole bishop (on light squares) has no defensive value as the attack takes place on the dark squares.

18...gxf6

\textbf{Game 61}

R.Messa-R.Vaganian

Reggio Emilia 1981/82

1 e4 \textcircled{f}f6 2 e5 \textcircled{d}d5 3 d4 d6 4 \textcircled{c}c4 \textcircled{b}6 5 \textcircled{b}3 d5!
Correct! White only scores 48% against this.

When White played 4 \( \text{d} \text{c}4 \), he clearly aimed at a direct kingside attack – but now the bishop is in a ridiculous position, while the black knight is ready for French queenside play. There are many reasons to go French: Leslie Caron, Brigitte Bardot and Catherine Deneuve to name a few, and now Vaganian gives us one more!

6 \( \text{a} \text{d}2 \)

White has other tries here, but nothing scary: Black’s solid French structure and the misplaced bishop on b3 show that Black is already equal. Here are a few examples:

a) 6 a4 (this threatens nothing) 6...e6 7 \( \text{d} \text{f}3 \) (if 7 a5 \( \text{d} \text{d}7 \) 8 c3 c5 9 \( \text{d} \text{f}3 \) \( \text{c} \text{c}6 \) and Black has normal French play, while the white a-pawn is now a weakness) 7...c5 8 c3 \( \text{c} \text{c}6 \) 9 0-0 cxd4 10 cxd4 \( \text{e} \text{e}7 \) 11 \( \text{c} \text{c}3 \) \( \text{b} \text{b}4 \) 12 \( \text{w} \text{e}2 \) a6 13 \( \text{a} \text{f}4 \) \( \text{d} \text{d}7 \) 14 \( \text{d} \text{d}1 \) \( \text{c} \text{c}8 \) 15 \( \text{d} \text{d}2 \) h5 16 \( \text{f} \text{f}3 \) \( \text{a} \text{a}7 \) 17 \( \text{d} \text{d}2 \) \( \text{a} \text{a}6 \) (Black cements his grip on the weak b4-square) 18 \( \text{g} \text{g}5 \) f6 19 exf6 gxf6 20 \( \text{h} \text{h}4 \) \( \text{w} \text{b}6 \) 21 \( \text{e} \text{e}3 \) 0-0 22 \( \text{f} \text{f}1 \) \( \text{b} \text{b}8 \) 23 \( \text{d} \text{d}1 \) (White finally tries to do something with his lightsquared bishop, but only spends more moves to exchange it without affecting the position) 23...\( \text{a} \text{a}8 \) 24 \( \text{c} \text{c}3 \) \( \text{d} \text{d}8 \) 25 h3 \( \text{d} \text{d}8 \) 26 \( \text{e} \text{e}2 \) \( \text{w} \text{f}8 \) 27 \( \text{h} \text{h}1 \) \( \text{d} \text{d}6 \) 28 \( \text{b} \text{b}5 \) \( \text{b} \text{b}8 \) 29 \( \text{x} \text{c}6 \) \( \text{x} \text{c}6 \) 30 \( \text{f} \text{f}1 \) \( \text{a} \text{a}8 \) 31 \( \text{b} \text{b}3 \) (White has run out of gas on the queenside; now it’s time for the kingside counter-attack) 31...\( \text{w} \text{g}7 \) 32 \( \text{e} \text{e}1 \) f5 33 \( \text{d} \text{d}1 \) f4 34 g3 \( \text{e} \text{e}7 \) 35 \( \text{d} \text{d} \text{e}7 \) \( \text{w} \text{e}7 \) 36 \( \text{a} \text{a}1 \) \( \text{f} \text{f}3 \) 37 \( \text{f} \text{g}3 \) e5 38 dxe5 \( \text{w} \text{e}5 \) 39 \( \text{f} \text{f}3 \) \( \text{w} \text{f}5 \) 40 \( \text{g} \text{g}1 \) d4! (Black’s bishops are unleashed) 41 \( \text{f} \text{f}3 \) \( \text{c} \text{c}6 \) 42 \( \text{w} \text{g}2 \) \( \text{w} \text{d}7 \) 0-1 J.Hickl-K.Bischoff, Dortmund 1987.

b) 6 \( \text{e} \text{e}2 \) e6 7 0-0 c5 8 c3 \( \text{d} \text{d}7 \) 9 a4 \( \text{c} \text{c}6 \) 10 \( \text{h} \text{h}1 \) cxd4 11 cxd4 \( \text{b} \text{b}4 \) 12 \( \text{c} \text{c}3 \) \( \text{c} \text{c}4 \) 13 f4 \( \text{a} \text{a}5 \) (White’s next looks threatening, but Shamkovich keeps his cool) 14 f5 (or 14 \( \text{e} \text{e}3 \) \( \text{x} \text{b}3 \) 15 \( \text{b} \text{b}3 \) g6 with equality) 14...\( \text{x} \text{b}3 \) 15 fxe6 (15 \( \text{b} \text{b}3 \) exf5 16 \( \text{x} \text{d}5 \) \( \text{e} \text{e}6 \) wins for Black) 15...\( \text{x} \text{e}6 \) 16 \( \text{x} \text{b}3 \) \( \text{e} \text{e}7 \) 17 \( \text{f} \text{f}4 \) 0-0 18 \( \text{e} \text{e}3 \) \( \text{c} \text{c}8 \) 19 \( \text{f} \text{f}2 \) \( \text{w} \text{d}7 \) 20 \( \text{a} \text{a}1 \) a6 21 h3 f6 (Black has counterplay) 22 \( \text{w} \text{x} \text{e}6 \) \( \text{w} \text{x} \text{e}6 \) 23 exf6 (23 \( \text{f} \text{f}4 \) is easier, with approximate equality) 23...\( \text{w} \text{x} \text{e}3 \) 24 \( \text{e} \text{e}2 \)? (24 \( \text{f} \text{f}3 \) is correct)

24...\( \text{x} \text{c}3 \)! (a great counterblow!) 25 \( \text{x} \text{e}3 \) \( \text{x} \text{b}3 \) 26 \( \text{x} \text{b}3 \) (if 26 fxe7 \( \text{x} \text{f}1+ \) 27 \( \text{h} \text{h}2 \) \( \text{x} \text{e}3 \) and there is no new queen!) 26...\( \text{x} \text{f}6 \) 27 \( \text{e} \text{e}1 \) \( \text{d} \text{d}6 \) 28 g4 \( \text{f} \text{f}7 \) 29 \( \text{g} \text{g}2 \) g5! (Black has consolidated his position and wins technically) 30 \( \text{e} \text{e}3 \) a5 31 \( \text{f} \text{f}3 \) \( \text{f} \text{f}4 \) 32 \( \text{f} \text{f}3 \) \( \text{e} \text{e}6 \) 33 \( \text{c} \text{c}5 \) b6 34 \( \text{c} \text{c}8 \) \( \text{e} \text{e}2+ \) 35 \( \text{f} \text{f}1 \) \( \text{d} \text{d}2 \) 36 \( \text{h} \text{h}8 \) \( \text{g} \text{g}7 \) 37 \( \text{e} \text{e}8 \) \( \text{x} \text{d}4 \) 38 \( \text{e} \text{e}6 \) \( \text{d} \text{d}1+ \) 39
\( \text{c2 d2+ 40 f1 d4 41 xxb6 e3 0-1} \)


\( \text{c) 6 c3 e6 7 f3 c5 8 g5} \)

\( \text{xf6 xf6 37 b6 g7 38 xe6 xc3} \)

\( \text{f5 xd4+ (this looks like a winning Kengis as Black crashes through on the long dark diagonal!) 40 h1} \)

\( \text{We5 41 xxe5 xe5 42 f2 d8 43 e7} \)

\( \text{d4 44 c2 e8 45 bc8+ b8 46 c1 xc8 47 xc8 xc8 48 h3 d7 49 hgx4} \)

\( \text{hxg4 0-1 G.Sturc-J.Janos, Tatranske Matliare 2007.} \)

\( \text{6...e6} \)

6...f5 is possible, but I prefer Vaganian’s solid French set-up, completely blunting the white bishop, which now wonders why it ever wandered to b3!

\( \text{7 e2} \)

If White tries to free his light-squared bishop with 7 c4 dxc4 8 xc4 xc4 9 xc4, he has to give up castling after 9...b4+ 10 f1, as 10 d2 xd4 picks off a pawn.

\( \text{7...c5 8 c3 d7 9 f3} \)

\( \text{9 0-0 b5! is similar: 10 f3 c6 11 e1 xe2 12 xe2 xd4 13 xd4 e7} \)

\( \text{14 c2 g5? 15 e3 c4 16 b3 xe3 17 fxe3 wb6 18 ac1 a3 19 cd1 h6 20} \)

\( \text{f1 0-0-0 21 d2 df8 22 b1 e7 23} \)

213
c3 b8 24 a4 b4, and after all this sharp play, with Black about to break with ...f7-f6 – a draw was agreed, ½-½ E.Liitiainen-P.Pakarinen, Tampere 1998.

9...b5

Very rare in the French, but here Black’s “bad” light-squared bishop is stronger than White’s “good” one!

Of course the simple 9...c6 is also possible: Black has a good game with his queenside knights, while White’s light-squared bishop is still not playing.

10 h4 c6 11 h5 h6 12 a4 a6

13 dxc5

13 0-0 cxd4 14 cxd4 e7 is slightly better for Black, as White has weaknesses on both wings and no attack.

13...d7 14 f4 xc5 15 c2

The errant bishop finally reaches a reasonable square!

15...b6 16 ed4 xd4 17 xd4

This looks unsound to me, but White is trying to generate some play. On the natural 17 cxd4 wb6 18 wd2, Black doesn’t need to take the b-pawn (though that is possible) but can get a larger positional advantage with

18...c8. Black’s queenside play increases, while White has nothing much on the other wing.

17...xc5 18 b5 0-0 19 h3 f6 20 d2 fc8 21 b3 xxb5 22 axb5 c5 23 g3

Now Black can just play the solid 23...h8, when it’s hard to see any compensation for White’s missing pawn – but Vaganian has something much more imaginative in mind.

23...ed3+! 24 xd3 xb3

Black transforms his material advantage of one plain pawn up into rook + two pawns vs. two bishops. I remember losing a similar position to GM Walter Browne years ago: the problem White has (I couldn’t solve it either) is that the two bishops can’t cooperate to defend any single square, so it’s hard to blockade the black pawns.

25 wb2 xa1 26 d2 e5+ 27 e2 h8 28 xa1 a6 29 wc1

29 bxa6 xa6 is better, even though it activates the black rook, since Vaganian would then have to work to create passed pawns.
29...d4!

This is precisely calculated: Vaganian allows, then refutes, the coming sac.

30 hxh6 c3 31 xc3

White has no choice, for if 31 xg7+? wg7 32 xg7 xc1+ and Black emerges with an extra exchange and an easily winning ending – but now Black gets a passed pawn on the sixth.

31...dxc3 32 f4 wd4 33 e3 wb4 34 h6

Losing quickly, but even after 34 bxa6 bxa6 35 f1 a5 it’s impossible to see how White stops the onrushing pawns.

34...axb5 35 hxg7+ gd8 36 f3 wb2 37 f2

If 37 wb2 cxb2 and one sees the “bishop non-cooperation” in a nutshell: only one bishop can control the queening square, and that one will be quickly picked off by the black rook.

37...a1 0-1

White resigns in view of 38 wb2 cxb2 39 d3 d1 40 e4 g7 41 e2 b1 wb 42 b1 b1 and Black comes out an exchange and two pawns to the good.

This line is so simple and clear that little discussion is needed: just shift to a French with a bad white king’s bishop!

Game 62

O. Romanishin-S. Palatnik
Kislovodsk 1982

1 e4 f6 2 e5 d5 3 d4 d6 4 e2

Basically leading to Chapter Two – but for completeness I will show one game featuring this move order. Romanishin has played this line with some success, though such quiet development is harmless against reasonable play.

4...dxe5

With the white bishop so passively placed there is no reason not to take, as here (unlike in Game 60) Black has a quick counter-attack against e5.

5 dx e5 c6
6 \( \text{D}f3 \)

6 f4 is a solid defence to the e-pawn, but White falls way behind in development. After 6...\( \text{D}f5 \) 7 a3 \( \text{D}b6 \) 8 \( \text{D}f3 \) \( \text{W}xd1+ \) 9 \( \text{D}xd1 \) e6 Black already had a sizeable advantage in A.Pajer-J.Jambrich, Bratislava 1995.

6 c4 \( \text{D}db4 \) is also good for Black, as in Game 12.

6...\( \text{D}g4 \)

In a note to Game 12 (reached by the move order \( 4 \text{D}f3 \) dxe5 5 dxe5 \( \text{D}g4 \)), I point out that "Black should have no problems against the mild 6 \( \text{D}e2 \)" – and he doesn’t!

7 \( \text{h}3 \)

Romanishin has also tried 7 c3 \( \text{D}b6 \) 8 \( \text{D}bd2 \) e6 9 0-0 \( \text{D}e7 \) 10 a4 a5 11 \( \text{D}e1 \) 0-0 12 \( \text{W}b3 \) \( \text{W}d5 \) but Black easily equalized; and then after 13 \( \text{W}b5 \) \( \text{D}fd8 \) 14 \( \text{D}f1 \), instead of the adventurous 14...\( \text{W}e4 \) of O.Romanishin-G.Agzamov, Frunze 1985, Black could have obtained a comfortable position with 14...\( \text{D}a7 \) forcing a favourable queen exchange, as the white e-pawn is somewhat weak and there is no compensating attack once the queens are gone.

7...\( \text{D}xf3 \) 8 \( \text{x}f3 \) e6 9 0-0 \( \text{D}c5 \)

Not 9...\( \text{D}xe5?? \) 10 \( \text{D}xd5 \) exd5 (10...\( \text{W}xd5 \) 11 \( \text{W}xd5 \) exd5 12 \( \text{D}e1 \) is the same) 11 \( \text{D}e1 \) f6 12 f4 and White wins a piece.

10 \( \text{c}3 \)

Now Black threatens to take the e-pawn, and because of the pin on the a7-g1 diagonal, White will not have f2-f4 when he needs it. Since all the defences of the pawn have their drawbacks, Romanishin sacs it – but just barely draws. Here’s a quick look at the defences:

a) 10 \( \text{D}e1 \) \( \text{W}h4 \) is good for Black, as White obviously can’t defend with 11 g3.

b) 10 \( \text{W}e2 \) \( \text{D}d4 \) is at least equal for Black.

c) 10 \( \text{D}c3 \) is perhaps best, as after 10...\( \text{D}xc3 \) 11 bxc3 \( \text{D}xe5 \) 12 \( \text{D}xb7 \) \( \text{W}xd1 \) 13 \( \text{D}xd1 \) \( \text{D}b8 \) 14 \( \text{D}b1 \) 0-0 the ending is about even, since Black’s extra pawn on the kingside is compensated for by White’s two bishops.

10...\( \text{D}xe5 \) 11 c4 \( \text{D}b4 \) 12 \( \text{D}xb7 \) \( \text{W}xd1 \) 13
\textbf{\textit{X}d1 \textit{\textit{X}b8 14 \textit{\textit{X}e4 f5}}}

- Black doesn’t seem to get an advantage after 14...\textit{\textit{X}xc4} 15 a3 \textit{\textit{a}d5} 16 \textit{\textit{X}xd5 exd5} 17 \textit{\textit{X}xd5} \textit{\textit{a}d6}. 
\textbf{15 a3 fxe4 16 axb4 \textit{\textit{X}xb4} 17 \textit{\textit{a}a5} \textit{\textit{X}xc4} 18 \textit{\textit{d}d2} 0-0!}

- but he does draw!  
\textbf{21 \textit{\textit{X}xc5} \textit{\textit{d}d3}}

- Probably the simplest: Black forces the draw as his pawns are too weak to play realistically for a win. After 21...\textit{c6} 22 \textit{f3} \textit{\textit{e}e2} 23 \textit{\textit{d}d1} White would have continued compensation.  
\textbf{22 \textit{\textit{X}xc7} \textit{\textit{f}f7} 23 \textit{\textit{c}c8+} \textit{\textit{f}f8} 24 \textit{\textit{X}xf8+} \textit{\textit{d}xf8}}

\textbf{19 \textit{\textit{d}xe4}}

- If 19 \textit{\textit{X}xc4} \textit{\textit{X}xf2+} 20 \textit{\textit{h}h2} \textit{\textit{X}xc4} and Black has more than enough for the exchange.  
\textbf{19...\textit{\textit{d}d4}}

- 19...\textit{\textit{d}d4} is extremely complicated, but may lead to a draw anyway: 20 \textit{\textit{b}b3} \textit{\textit{a}a3} 21 \textit{\textit{a}c6} 22 \textit{\textit{X}xf8} \textit{\textit{a}x}a5 23 \textit{\textit{X}xd4} \textit{\textit{X}xf8} 24 \textit{\textit{g}g5} \textit{\textit{X}xb3} 25 \textit{\textit{d}d7} and White’s seventh rank play should hold the game despite Black’s passed pawns.  
\textbf{20 \textit{\textit{f}f1}}

- Not 20 \textit{\textit{e}e1?} \textit{\textit{b}b4} forking.  
\textbf{20...\textit{\textit{X}xe4}}

- Despite the extra pawn, there don’t seem to be any wins; e.g. 20...\textit{\textit{d}d6} 21 \textit{\textit{X}xd6} \textit{\x}xd6 22 \textit{\textit{X}xa7} \textit{\textit{b}b8} 23 \textit{\textit{e}e3} \textit{\textit{d}db4} 24 \textit{\textit{f}f4} \textit{\textit{c}c4} 25 \textit{\textit{d}d4} \textit{\textit{d}d2} 26 \textit{\textit{X}xg7+} \textit{\textit{f}f8} 27 \textit{\textit{c}c1} \textit{\textit{X}xd4} 28 \textit{\textit{c}c7} \textit{\textit{f}f4} 29 \textit{\textit{X}xh7} and White just barely draws, a piece down

\textbf{25 \textit{\textit{e}e3}}

- Or 25 \textit{\textit{b}b3} \textit{\textit{X}xc1} 26 \textit{\textit{X}xc1} \textit{\textit{b}b4} with a drawn ending.  
\textbf{25...\textit{\textit{X}xb2}}

- Nothing exciting occurs for the rest of the game.  
\textbf{26 \textit{\textit{d}d1} 27 \textit{\textit{a}a1} \textit{\textit{c}c4} 28 \textit{\textit{X}xa7} \textit{\textit{f}f4} 29 \textit{\textit{a}a5}}

- 29 \textit{\textit{f}f1} \textit{\textit{d}d5} 30 \textit{\textit{d}d2} \textit{\textit{c}c7} etc is another draw.  
\textbf{29...\textit{\textit{d}d5} 30 \textit{\textit{c}c5+} \textit{\textit{f}f7} 31 \textit{\textit{g}g3} \textit{h}5 32 \textit{\textit{h}h4} \textit{\textit{f}f6} 33 \textit{\textit{a}a3} \textit{g}5 34 \textit{\textit{h}xg5+} \textit{\textit{x}g5} 35 \textit{\textit{e}e7+} \textit{\textit{g}g6} 36 \textit{\textit{h}h4} \textit{\textit{c}c8} 37 \textit{\textit{g}g2} \textit{\textit{b}b8} 38 \textit{\textit{a}a7} \textit{\textit{c}c8} 39 \textit{\textit{d}d7} \textit{\textit{a}a8} 40 \textit{\textit{b}b7} \textit{\textit{f}f6} 41 \textit{\textit{b}b5} \textit{\textit{d}d5} 42 \textit{\textit{b}b2} \textit{\textit{f}f5} 43 \textit{\textit{h}h3} \textit{\textit{c}c8} 44 \textit{\textit{a}a2} \textit{\textit{b}b8} 45 \textit{\textit{a}a7} \textit{\textit{g}g6} 46 \textit{\textit{e}e7} \textit{\textit{d}dxe7} 47 \textit{\textit{X}xe7} \textit{\textit{f}f6} 48 \textit{\textit{a}a7} \textit{\textit{c}c7} 1/2-1/2}

- There’s not much to say about this
mild variation – Black has no difficulties as long as he counter-attacks quickly against the e5-pawn. Note that even Romanishin, whose pet line this was, could only struggle for a draw against a prepared opponent.

White scores a miserable 41% from this position, and it’s not surprising – as I pointed out in Chapter One, Black has the only developed piece and an attack in the centre.

6 b3
One recalls 6 c4? b4 7 d5 f5 when Tal was already better in Game 7.

6...xd4
So much for White’s “three pawn” centre – only one is left, and that one is isolated.

7 xxd4

7 c6
Cox’s 7 f5 looks like a more accurate move order, as after 7 c6 White can prevent the bishop’s development with 8 e4, which led to a disaster for Black in the following game: 8...g6 9 c4 b6 10 b3 a5 11 f5 12 f4 0-0 13 c3 b8 14 e1 d7 15 e6, and with this characteristic anti-Alekhine blow White took over the ad-
vantage and went on to win in V.Kupreichik-Z.Varga, European Team Ch., Debrecen 1992.

After the correct 7...\texttt{f5}, 8 \texttt{c3} (8 c4 \texttt{a}5+ 9 \texttt{d}2 \texttt{b}4 is good for Black) 8...\texttt{e6} 9 \texttt{b}5+ \texttt{c}6 transposes back to the main game.

\textbf{8 \texttt{b}5}

As seen above, 8 \texttt{e}4 is stronger here.

8...\texttt{f}5 9 \texttt{c}3 \texttt{e}6

He has two better tries:

a) 10 \texttt{g}5 (now it’s White who comes out a pawn ahead in most lines, but Black has so much active play that the material doesn’t give any advantage, and White has to be careful) 10...\texttt{b}6 11 \texttt{xd}5 exd5 12 \texttt{xd}5 (Black’s initiative persists into the endgame: if 12 \texttt{xb}6 axb6 13 0-0-0 \texttt{c}5 14 \texttt{xd}5 h6 15 \texttt{h}4 0-0 and the open lines give him excellent play for the pawn) 12...\texttt{c}5 and Black has great play against White’s wide open king. Moving three pawns forward in the opening is good if you attack, but if pushed onto the defensive, as here, the open spaces left behind can be highways for the opposing pieces.

b) 10 \texttt{xd}5 (possibly best) 10...\texttt{xd}5 11 \texttt{xd}5 exd5 12 c3 a6 13 \texttt{e}2 \texttt{c}5 14 \texttt{f}4 0-0 15 0-0-0 \texttt{e}4 16 \texttt{d}3 and White may be able to equalize.

\textbf{10 \texttt{a}4?}

White has to play extremely accurately just to get through the opening alive – a case in point is this seemingly natural move that just loses a pawn.

\textbf{10...\texttt{db}4!}

Snap! Note the recurring ...\texttt{db}4 theme, also seen in the Tal game.

\textbf{11 \texttt{xc}6+}

11 \texttt{g}5 \texttt{xc}2 12 \texttt{xd}8 \texttt{xa}4 13


220

When Alekhine was confronted (quite cheekily, I might add!) with his own defence during his first World Championship match with Dr. Euwe, he improvised a very interesting attacking idea, which he afterwards improved to great effect against Reshevsky a few years later.

4 c4 d6 5 e3

The queen invasion is decisive.

14 d4 e5 15 a3 xb3 16 xb3 c2

17 f2 xd4 18 ad1

Black also wins after 18 b7 0-0 19 xe7 c2+ 20 f1 xc3 21 e1 xf3.

18...xf3+ 0-1

While this game and Tal’s opening devastation from Game 7 might mark the 4 f4 line as completely unplayable for White, one sees that with 10 g5 or 10 xd5 White could approach equality, or at least 41% of it!

However, Black should remember to play the Cox move order with 7...f5, rather than allow Kupreichik’s (7...c6) 8 e4.

Game 64
G. Dunlop-S. Fitzpatrick
Perth, Australia 1994

1 e4 f6 2 e5 d5 3 d4 d6

Now back to the Alekhine’s anti-Alekhine! There are two branches: first, against Dr. Euwe, after 5...g4 6 e2 dxe5, he tried 7 c5!? with unclear complications, which in the game below
finally turn in White’s favour; second, against Reshevsky, Mr. A unleashed the even more dangerous 7 \( \text{c5} \), sacrificing the d-pawn for attack. Here’s a quick look at these historic games:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
48 \text{f6} \text{h5} 49 \text{c3} \text{b7} 50 \text{b4} \text{c7} \\
\end{array}
\]

\( \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \) A.Alekhine-M.Euwe, Netherlands (29th matchgame) 1935, in view of

\[
\begin{array}{c}
50...\text{c7} 51 \text{a6} \text{g5} 52 \text{a7}+ (or 52 \text{c5} \text{g6}) 52...\text{b8} 53 \text{xh7} \text{g6} 54 \text{c5} \text{c8} \\
55 \text{b5} \text{f6} \text{with the well-known Philidor draw}. \\
\end{array}
\]

b) 7 \( \text{c5} \) ! \( \text{xe5} \) 8 \( \text{xe2} \) 8 \( \text{xe2} \) \( \text{xd4} \) 9 0-0

\( \begin{array}{c}
\text{a) 7 c5!? e4 8 cxb6 exf3 9 } \text{xf3} \text{xf3} \\
10 \text{xf3} \text{axb6} (\text{Alekhine himself recommended 10... } \text{xe6} \text{ with counterplay}) \\
11 \text{xb7} \text{d7} 12 \text{f4} \text{e5} 13 \text{xe5 } \text{xe5} \\
14 \text{dxe5 } \text{b4+} 15 \text{c3 } \text{xc3+} 16 \text{bxc3} \\
0-0 17 0-0 \text{e7} 18 \text{f1e1 } \text{c5} 19 \text{e3} \\
20 \text{a3} 20 \text{f3 } \text{e8} 21 \text{h3 } \text{a5} 22 \text{d1 } \text{e7} \\
23 \text{c6 } \text{c5} 24 \text{d7} \text{g6} 25 \text{f4 } \text{c4} 26 \\
\text{xe7 } \text{xe7} 27 \text{d4 } \text{c5} 28 \text{f2 } \text{c6} 29 \text{a4} \\
\text{a7} 30 \text{b4 } \text{b5} 31 \text{axb5 } \text{cxb5} 32 \text{f3} \\
\text{ac7} 33 \text{b3 } \text{f8} 34 \text{g4} (\text{as Alekhine points out, } 34 \text{g3!} \text{ followed by a king march to d2, freeing one rook, should win for White – the impetuous g2-g4 and coming f4-f5 allows a surprising counter}) 34... \text{g7} 35 \text{f5 } \text{gxf5} 36 \text{gxf5 } \text{f6!} \\
(\text{refuting White’s too quick pawn advance in counter-attacking “Alekhine” style!}) 37 \text{f4 } \text{fxe5+} 38 \text{xe5+ } \text{xe5} 39 \\
\text{xe5 } \text{c5+} 40 \text{e4 } \text{f6} 41 \text{a3 } \text{c4+} 42 \\
\text{d3 } \text{h4} 43 \text{b3 } \text{xf5} 44 \text{xb5+ } \text{e6} \\
45 \text{c4 } \text{h3+} 46 \text{d4 } \text{d6} 47 \text{b6+ } \text{c7}
\end{array} \]

(White has an attack for a pawn)

\[
\begin{array}{c}
9... \text{d7 10 } \text{xd7 } \text{xd7} 11 \text{c3 } \text{c6} 12 \\
\text{e3 } \text{g5} 13 \text{a1 } \text{e6} 14 \text{f3} 0-0-0 15 \\
\text{a7 } \text{a5} 16 \text{d4 } \text{f5} 17 \text{g3 } \text{e5} 18 \\
\text{e3 } \text{b4} 19 \text{a4 } \text{a5} 20 \text{f4 } \text{c7} 21 \text{b3} \\
f6 22 \text{fxe5 } \text{e6} 23 \text{h3} (\text{foreseeing } \text{Wh2!?}) 23... \text{h8} 24 \text{d4 } \text{xe5} 25 \text{c3} \\
\text{d7} 26 \text{c5 } \text{ge8} 27 \text{b4 } \text{b8} 28 \text{b6+} \\
\text{xb6} 29 \text{xb6 } \text{xa2} 30 \text{g3 } \text{d7} 31 \\
\text{c5 } \text{f7} 32 \text{a1 } \text{g6} 33 \text{h2!} (\text{setting the stage for the following brilliant combination}) 33... \text{e5} 34 \text{a8 } \text{d2?} \\
(\text{White to play and win!}) 35 \text{xb8+!} \\
\text{xb8} 36 \text{xe5+!} 1-0 \text{A.Alekhine-} \\
\text{R.Shevsky, Kemeri 1937.}
\end{array}
\]

s... \text{xe5}!

Correct from both an objective and repertoire standard. The most popular move in the database is s... \text{g4}, but I
see absolutely no reason to play it and submit oneself to the above presented Alekhine attacks. The text avoids both, with no disadvantage to Black.

Black is already clearly better, with a lead in development and an attack on White’s lone centre pawn.

10 e2 d7

6 dxe5?!
Black gets a good game after the coming queen exchange. Also if 6 c5 d6 7 dxe5 e6 and White has no good defence for the c-pawn, as 8 b4 is met by 8...a5.

The best option for White is 6 dx e5, when Black plays 6...g6 and transposes to a line of the Kengis that should equalize, as detailed in Game 23.

6...xd1+ 7 xd1 g4 8 b3 c6 9 b2 0-0-0+

11 e6
There is nothing better, but White is unable to make this work as an obstructive sac, since Black’s following manoeuvre both holds the pawn and avoids the self-blocking doubleton on e6.

11...xe6 12 g5 g4+ 13 f3 h5
Black is just a good pawn up.

14 g4 g6 15 h4 h6 16 h3 e5 17 c3 d4+ 18 f2 c5

19 a4 xb3+! 0-1
White resigns, as after 20 ♜xc5 ♜dx5 21 ♞e1 (or 21 axb3 ♞d2+ with an easy win) 21...♗d2+ 22 ♞e2 ♞d3+ 23 ♞g3 ♞xb2 Black emerges two pawns up.

The importance of this game is that White cannot force Black into Alekhine’s dangerous gambit. After the accurate 5...dxe5 White has nothing better than to transpose into a rather harmless Kengis Variation – one recalls that the most dangerous lines against the Kengis are the restrained ones with White’s light-squared bishop on e2 or g2, and the c-pawn not yet committed.

Summary
None of these lines present the slightest difficulty to the Alekhine player, as long as you are flexible! Since the pure “Alekhine” lines against 4 ♞c4 (Games 60 and 61 – the only even slightly dangerous variation in this chapter) don’t work so well, Black should be willing to look at the position objectively, like Vaganian, and recognize that the time has come to transpose to a good French!

The other, completely inoffensive, lines can be handled easily by typical Alekhine methods.
Chapter Nine

Third Move Sidelines

Our Hero: Zoltan Varga

After making the best try for an advantage against the Alekhine, 2 e5, White sometimes – or quite often – pretty much tosses the idea of an opening plus out the window by playing some third move deviation instead of the normal and strong 3 d4 or the forcing 3 c4.

The most common of these offbeat third moves is 3 Qc3. Actually I shouldn’t even call this “offbeat” – it’s astonishingly popular (almost 2000 games in the MegaBase!) for a move that gives White absolutely nothing!

As noted in the first chapter, for some reason various players thought this variation would be ideal to play against a world champion – we enjoyed their losses in Games 2, 6 and 9. I had the pleasure of playing against this move recently (Game 67) and the hero of our chapter, GM Zoltan Varga, has had some fun against it as well (see Game 66).

Some statistics are interesting: Varga, a lifelong Alekhine player, has 153 games in the database in which he countered with our favourite opening (in Chapter Five, note to Game 38, we saw his turncoat win on the white side!). He has scored 65 wins, 59 draws, and only 29 losses – that is, an awesome 61% score with Black at the GM level. But that’s not all! Quite a few of his opponents thought the “ever-popular” 3 Qc3 might work against such an Alekhine expert, and indeed Varga faced this nine times: and he earned his hero status by scoring 4 wins, 4 draws, and only one loss, for a demonic Black score of 66.6%!
The following three games feature 3 \( \text{c}3 \). In the last game of the chapter we see White try 3 g3, with some even lesser deviations considered in the notes.

\[ 1 \text{e}4 \text{d}f6 2 \text{e}5 \text{d}d5 3 \text{c}3 \]

We already saw in Chapter One that some other World Champions successfully met this with the immediate 3...\( \text{xc}3 \), but my preference has been for the solution of Alekhine himself, who kept his knight in the centre, at least for another move, with 3...e6 – as we see here and in the next two games. While Games 2, 6 and 9 may have given the impression that 3...\( \text{xc}3 \) is a walk-over for Black, it’s worth noting that the great Keres played the white side with success. He would capture with 4 \( \text{xc}3 \) and use the open lines to set up attacking chances. Here are a couple of Keres’ wins after 4...d6 5 \( \text{f}3 \) and then:

\begin{itemize}
  \item a) 5...g6 6 \( \text{c}4 \text{c}6 \) 7 \( \text{f}4 \text{e}6 \) 8 exd6 cxd6 9 \( \text{we}2 \text{e}7 \) 10 0-0-0 a6 11 h4 b5 12 \( \text{b}3 \) d5 13 \( \text{he}1 \) \( \text{d}7 \) 14 \( \text{xd}5! \) (a beautiful sacrifice, and just the kind of open attacking game Keres played so well) 14...\( \text{exd}5 \) 15 \( \text{e}5 \text{xe}5 \) 16 \( \text{xe}5 \) 0-0 17 \( \text{xe}7 \text{xe}7 \) 18 \( \text{xe}7 \) \( \text{e}6 \) 19 \( \text{e}5 \text{fe}8 \) 20 \( \text{xe}8+ \text{xe}8 \) 21 \( \text{f}6 \) h5 22 h3 \( \text{c}8 \) 23 \( \text{d}2 \text{f}8 \) 24 \( \text{e}1 \text{e}8 \) 25 h4 h5 26 fxg4 \( \text{f}8 \) 27 g1 g8 28 h5 gxh5 29 g5+ \( \text{h}7 \) 30 \( \text{d}4 \) \( \text{g}8 \) 31 \( \text{xe}8 \text{h}8 \) 32 b4 \( \text{f}5 \) 33 \( \text{e}5 \text{h}7 \) 34 \( \text{f}4 \) \( \text{g}4 \) 35 h6 \( \text{f}5 \) 36 \( \text{e}3 \) \( \text{xc}2 \) 37 \( \text{d}4 \) \( \text{b}1 \) 38 \( \text{a}3 \) \( \text{a}2 \) 39 \( \text{c}5 \) \( \text{g}6 \) 40 \( \text{b}6 \) \( \text{c}4 \) 41 \( \text{d}a6 \) 42 \( \text{a}5 \) \( \text{f}6 \) 43 \( \text{a}4 \) \( \text{b}xa4 \) 44 \( \text{d}a4 \) \( \text{e}6 \) 45 \( \text{a}5 \) 1-0 P.Keres-H.Westerinen, Tallinn 1971.
  \item b) 5...\( \text{c}6 \) 6 \( \text{b}5 \) (better than 6 \( \text{c}4 \) \( \text{dxe}5 \), as in Games 6 and 9) 6...\( \text{d}7 \) 7 \( \text{we}2 \text{dxe}5 \) 8 \( \text{xe}5 \text{xe}5 \) 9 \( \text{xe}5 \) c6 (Korchnoi’s 9...f6 is correct – see the notes to move 6 in Game 9) 10 \( \text{c}4 \) \( \text{b}8 \) 11 \( \text{we}4 \) e6 12 \( \text{g}5 \) h6 13 \( \text{h}4 \) \( \text{d}6 \) 14 0-0-0 \( \text{c}7 \) 15 \( \text{d}4 \) \( \text{e}5 \) 16 \( \text{c}5 \) (White prevents Black’s castling and stands better in this sharp position) 16...\( \text{f}6 \) 17 \( \text{xf}6 \text{f}4+ \) 18 \( \text{d}2 \text{gxf}6 \) 19 \( \text{hd}1 \) b6 20 \( \text{wh}5 \) 0-0-0 21 \( \text{a}6+ \) \( \text{c}7 \) 22 \( \text{g}3 \) \( \text{f}5 \) 23 \( \text{xf}7 \) e5 24 \( \text{d}6 \) \( \text{h}7 \) 25 \( \text{xc}6+! \) \( \text{b}8 \) (if 25...\( \text{xc}6 \), 26 \( \text{c}4 \) is mate) 26 \( \text{d}5 \) \( \text{xf}2 \) 27 \( \text{d}6+ \text{a}8 \) 28 \( \text{b}7+ \text{xb}7 \) 29 \( \text{c}7+ \) 1-0 P.Keres-L.Schmid, Zurich 1961.
\end{itemize}

Of course Black can defend these positions as noted, but one sees that Keres obtained practical chances – whereas after Alekhine’s move I see no attack for White at all!
3...e6 4 \(\textit{Qxd5}\)

By far the most popular: this natural capture will be covered here and in the next game, while other White 4th moves will be seen in Game 67.

4...\(\textit{exd5}\)

Black has no worries about the doubled pawns, as they will soon be dissolved by ...\(d7-d6\).

5 \(d4\)

The only problem that I see with 3...e6 is that it sometimes leads to amazingly drawish lines reminiscent of the most boring Exchange French – the two following games are cases in point. Note that Cafferty can hardly avoid utterly dead equality, since Black’s best in the final position, 15...\(\textit{Qg5}\), is met by 16 \(\textit{Qxg5}\) and an opposite-coloured bishop snorefest; while the very sharp Italian GM Mariotti is similarly unable to do anything against his exceptionally peaceable opponent: 5 \(\textit{Wf3}\) c6 6 d4 d6 7 \(\textit{Qg3}\) (equally exciting was 7 exd6 \(\textit{Qxd6}\) 8 \(\textit{d3}\) 0-0 9 \(\textit{Qe2}\) \(\textit{d7}\) 10 0-0 \(\textit{Qf6}\) 11 h3 h6 12 \(\textit{Qg3}\) \(\textit{h7}\) 13 \(\textit{Qf5}\) \(\textit{xf5}\) 14 \(\textit{Wxf5}\) g6 15 \(\textit{Wf3}\) ½-½ M.Horton-

B.Cafferty, British Ch., Bristol 1968)

7...\(\textit{exd5}\) 8 \(\textit{Wxe5}\) + \(\textit{Wxe7}\) 9 \(\textit{Wxe7+}\) \(\textit{Qxe7}\) 10 \(\textit{Qd3}\) 0-0 11 \(\textit{Qf4}\) \(\textit{f6}\) 12 c3 \(\textit{Qe8+}\) 13 \(\textit{Qe2}\) \(\textit{Qg4}\) 14 f3 \(\textit{h5}\) 15 \(\textit{Qf2}\) \(\textit{g6}\) 16 \(\textit{Qxg6}\) hxg6 ½-½ V.Musil-S.Mariotti, Ljubljana 1975.

All I can recommend when you face the White opponent determined to draw is – take the draw fast and rest up for your next White!

5...\(\textit{d6}\) 6 \(\textit{Qf3}\) \(\textit{c6}\) 7 \(\textit{Qe2}\) \(\textit{e7}\) 8 \(\textit{Qf4}\) 0-0 9 0-0

9...\(\textit{f6}\)

9...\(\textit{exd5}\) 10 \(\textit{Qxe5}\) \(\textit{Qxe5}\) 11 \(\textit{Qxe5}\) \(\textit{f6}\) 12 \(\textit{Qg3}\) \(\textit{xf5}\) 13 c3 \(\textit{c6}\) is even simpler.

10 \(\textit{exd6}\)

10 \(\textit{exf6}\) \(\textit{xf6}\) unbalances the position, which White did not want.

10...\(\textit{xd6}\)

A typical drawish Exchange French has been reached.

11 \(\textit{Wd2}\) \(\textit{Qg4}\) 12 \(\textit{Qf1}\) \(\textit{e8}\) 13 c3 \(\textit{Qe7}\) 14 \(\textit{Qxd6}\) \(\textit{Wxd6}\) 15 \(\textit{Qh4}\) \(\textit{d7}\) 16 g3 \(\textit{Qf5}\) 17 \(\textit{Qxf5}\) \(\textit{Qxf5}\) 18 f3 \(\textit{Qe6}\) 19 \(\textit{Qf1}\) \(\textit{ae8}\) 20 \(\textit{Qf2}\)

White gets the heavy pieces off the board and the draw is inevitable.
20...\textit{f}7 21 \textit{x}e6 \textit{w}xe6 22 \textit{e}1 \textit{w}xe1+ 23 \textit{w}xe1 \textit{x}e1 24 \textit{f}1/2-1/2

Yes, White can play for a draw in this variation, but theoretically that’s a big success for Black. In the next two games we see White play more actively in the opening – to his cost!

\textbf{Game 66}
\textit{A.Goloshchapov-Z.Varga}
\textit{Miskolc 2004}

1 \textit{e}4 \textit{f}6 2 \textit{e}5 \textit{d}5 3 \textit{c}3

I really like Finkel’s comment in the \textit{MegaBase} to this game: “I’ve got to admit that it would be too dramatic to put the blame for White’s defeat on this one [move], but there is no doubt that 3 \textit{c}3 isn’t the best way to meet an Alekhine Defence!”

3...\textit{e}6 4 \textit{d}xd5 \textit{exd}5 5 \textit{d}4 \textit{d}6 6 \textit{f}4 \textit{dxe}5 7 \textit{dxe}5

Goloshchapov was the higher rated in this GM vs. GM encounter, so no doubt he was playing for the win with the white pieces – but now Black gets space in the centre and stands at least equal in the unbalanced position. If White wants a draw then \textit{x}xe5 should be played, with a level game: 7 \textit{d}xe5 \textit{c}6 8 \textit{f}3 (not 8 \textit{g}3 \textit{e}7+ 9 \textit{d}e2 \textit{d}b4 and Black wins a pawn) 8...\textit{w}e7 (8...\textit{x}e5 9 \textit{x}e5 \textit{d}6 10 \textit{d}d3 is also equal) 9 \textit{w}e2 \textit{g}4 10 0-0-0 0-0-0 11 \textit{w}e3 \textit{f}6 12 \textit{f}4 \textit{w}xe3+ 13 \textit{x}e3 and nothing much is happening.

7...\textit{c}5 8 \textit{f}3 \textit{c}6 9 \textit{c}3 \textit{h}6

10 \textit{d}3 \textit{e}6 11 \textit{h}3

It’s not clear why White needs this move, since the black bishop has already settled in on e6, and h2-h3 can invite a ...\textit{g}5-\textit{g}4 attack later. Probably best is the simple 11 0-0 with approximate equality.

11...\textit{e}7 12 \textit{w}d2 \textit{b}6

Now White should still castle; delaying it one more move allows the alert Varga to seize the initiative with a tactical trick.

13 \textit{b}1?! \textit{d}4! 14 \textit{a}3

White can’t take, as 14 \textit{c}xd4 allows 14...\textit{c}4 winning a piece due to the emergent threat of ...\textit{b}4.
14...g5 15 g3 0-0-0

Black has more space and the initiative across the board – and this is only move 15 of a GM encounter!

16 0-0 c4 17 e4 dxc3

Black goes for active piece play, though 17...d3, with a strong protected passed pawn, is also good.

18 xc3 d4 19 xd4 xd4 20 f3

Or 20 c2 hd8 with a clear advantage to Black.

20...d3+ 21 f2 xc3 22 xb6 b3 23 xa7 b6 24 a4

White has to save his trapped bishop immediately, since if 24 fd1 c5+ 25 h2 e8, intending...e7, wins for Black.

24...d8 25 a5 bxa5

After a long, fairly forced sequence we see that Black has the better endgame. On the kingside his three pawns hold White’s four, while on the queenside it’s clear Black will be able to create a passed pawn. Although White may be able to draw with exact play, it’s evident that he as an extremely difficult defence ahead.

26 f2 d2 27 e1 dxb2 28 xb2 xb2 29 xa5 c5+ 30 h1 d4 31 d1 b5 32 xd4 xa5 33 g1 xe5

Black has an extra, outside passed pawn, but White’s stubborn resistance makes it hard to win.

34 f2 c7 35 d2 b6 36 e3 c5 37 a2 f5 38 a5+ d6 39 a6+ e7 40 d4 b5 41 c2 d5+ 42 c3

Not 42 xc4? a5+.

42...e5 43 a7+ f6 44 h7 g6 45 e7 e2 46 g4 f6 47 h7 fxg4 48 hxp g5

Black sacrifices a pawn to make progress, but the win is still not clear.

49 xh6 e3+ 50 d2 d4 51 d1 c3+
52 \texttt{c2} \texttt{e1} 53 \texttt{f6}

A good try is 53 \texttt{g6}! with counterplay, and it’s not clear that Black wins – which shows just how hard it is to beat a Grandmaster! 53...\texttt{c4}! 54 \texttt{g7} (Black can give up his next to last pawn, as 54 \texttt{xe5} \texttt{b4} wins for him) 54...\texttt{d5} 55 \texttt{exd5} 56 \texttt{c6} 57 \texttt{e1} 58 \texttt{xa4}+ 59 \texttt{e1} 60 \texttt{xf4} 61 \texttt{g6} 62 \texttt{g7} 63 \texttt{c1} 64 \texttt{f3}!! 65 \texttt{g4} and White sets up the Del Rio fortress, which has been known to be a draw since 1750, and was once used by Botvinnik to save a seemingly lost position against Laszló Szabo.

53...\texttt{e3} 54 \texttt{f8} \texttt{f5} 55 \texttt{d8} 56 \texttt{d7} 57 \texttt{b8}

If 57 \texttt{c7}+ \texttt{b4} and White has no checks, while Black is coming in with ...\texttt{b3}+ and ...\texttt{e1}.

57...\texttt{xf3} 58 \texttt{xf3} 59 \texttt{c8}+ 60 \texttt{d4} 61 \texttt{g8} \texttt{f2}+

61 \texttt{d1}?

It’s extremely hard to believe but, just as it looks like Black is cruising to victory, the exact 61 \texttt{c1}! may draw! I can’t find anything except 61...\texttt{d3} 62 \texttt{d8}+ 63 \texttt{e3} 64 \texttt{f8}+ 65 \texttt{f5}! when White’s rook is immune, so he wins his pawn back and draws. As we will soon see, the same variation fails when the white king is on \texttt{d1}.

61...\texttt{d3} 62 \texttt{d8}+ \texttt{e3}

63 \texttt{c8}

Now if 63 \texttt{g8} \texttt{f4} 64 \texttt{f8}+ \texttt{g3} 65 \texttt{f5} Black has 65...\texttt{d2}+! 66 \texttt{c1} \texttt{xe4} and wins – note that the key check on \texttt{d2} was not available in the above variation when the white king was on \texttt{c1}!

63...\texttt{c2}+ 64 \texttt{c1} 65 \texttt{c5} 66 \texttt{c4}+ \texttt{f3} 67 \texttt{b2} 68 \texttt{c1} \texttt{h3} 69 \texttt{b2} \texttt{xg4} 0-1

White resigns in view of 70 \texttt{xc2} \texttt{g2} and the g-pawn goes through – but that was hard work!

The ending might have been drawn with superlative play by White, but the verdict on the opening is clear: when White tried to keep a pawn in the centre (instead of 7 \texttt{xe5} with equality), he was running some risks, and slight
Alekhine Alert!

errors led to a significant advantage for Black. Clearly 3  c3 cannot be used as a serious winning attempt by White.

**Game 67**  
**K.Meekins-T.Taylor**  
**Ohio 2008**

1 e4  f6 2 e5  d5 3  c3 e6

**4 d4**

Besides 4  xd5 seen in the previous two games, White has also tried the text plus a couple of developing moves: a) 4  c4 just invites a ...d7-d5 counter to exploit White's badly-placed bishop: 4...  xc3 (4...  b6 5  b3 d5 is also good) 5  xc3 d5 6  d3 (if 6 exd6  xd6 7  f3  c6 8 0-0 0-0 and Black has a good extra pawn on the kingside, while White has a lamed queenside pawn majority) 6...  c6 (stronger than the immediate 6...c5 7 c4) 7  f3 (or 7  f4 g5 8  g3  g7 9  e2  d7 10 0-0-0 h5 11 h3  e7 12  f3 0-0-0 with good counterplay) 7...h6 8 h4  a5 9  f4 c5 10  d2  d7 11  d1  b6 12  c1 0-0-0 13 0-0  c6 14  e1  e7 15 b3 d4! (just as Varga played in the previous game) 16 b4 cxb4 17  xd4 bxc3 18  xc6  xc6 19  g3 g5 20 hxg5  xg5 21  a3  d2 22  b1  a5 23  b3  b4 24  f1  xb3 25 axb3  xd3! 26 cxd3  d4 and White's rooks are defenceless against Black’s passed pawn and strong knight, 0-1 LMoura-M.Podgaets, World Student Team Ch., Graz 1972.

b) 4  f3 leads to simple equality, reminiscent of Game 65; e.g. 4...d6 5  xd5 exd5 6 d4  c6 7 h3 dxe5 8 dxe5  e7 9 c3  f5 10  d3  e4 11  f4  d7 12  xe4  dxe4 13  xd7+  xd7 14 0-0-0+  e6 15  d2 and now, instead of the extravagant 15...g5 that risked loss in A.Satonen-E.Kengis, Jyvaskyla 1991, our Chapter Three hero should have played the simple 15...  xe5 16  xe4  ad8 17  he1  xd1+ 18  xd1  d8+ 19  c2 f6 with equality.

4...  xc3

Now that White can no longer capture away from the centre (!) I'm happy to inflict doubled pawns on him!

**5 bxc3 d5**
Black enters a good French, Vaganian style, where White already has doubled c-pawns – and unlike the Winawer variation, Black hasn’t had to pay with the two bishops.

5...d6 is weaker, as after 6 f4 Black doesn’t have enough space in the centre. Tal gives a drastic lesson as follows: 6...c5 (or 6...dxe5 7 fxe5 Wh4+ 8 e2 b6 9 f3 a6+ 10 e3 Wh8 11 a6+ Wh6 12 b3 Wh4 13 e4 c6 14 a4 e6 15 a5 e5 16 Wh1 Wh5+ 17 e4 Wh8 18 g4+ g5 19 h4 20 a3 Wh6 21 Wh5+ Wh8 22 Wh8+ f6+ and mates – White’s tactical defence of his centre is a marvel) 16 e4 Wh2 17 a1 Wha2 18 f6+!! (vintage Tal)

D.Gedevanishvili, Georgian Ch. 1970. Black resigns as 22...xg8 23 b3 really brings the pain!

6 f3

6 d3 transposes to W. Heidenfeld-H. Hecht, Nice Olympiad 1974, where Black’s play is a model of how to handle a blocked position. 6...c5 7 f4 c6 8 f3 a5 9 d2 a4 10 e3 c4 11 e2 a3 12 c1 a5 13 d2 e7 14 e1 d7 15 e3 f6 16 f1 exf5 17 fxe5 0-0 (Black’s king is safe and now he makes his bad bishop good, while White still suffers from his weak doubled pawns) 18 f2 e8 19 g1 g6 20 d1 f7 21 g5 xf1+ 22 xf1 xg5 23 xg5 e8+ 24 f3 (White has no choice: if 24 g1 xd4!, or 24 e2 xd4! 25 cxd4 h5+ wins) 24...xe2, when Black had picked off a clear pawn and went on to win.

6...c5 7 d3 c6 8 0-0 e7

Black has an excellent French, with good development and long-term pressure against White’s doubled pawns. As mentioned above, White doesn’t even have the two bishops as compensation!
Alekhine Alert!

The only problem is that this is nothing like any kind of “normal” Alekhine position – the ideas are pure French. But in my opinion no single opening will solve all your problems – you need to know the ideas of all the major openings, and then you can incorporate them into your play.

Another way to put it is that sometimes the best Alekhine is a French! Or as we will see in the next chapter, perhaps a Vienna!

9 \text{xf}4 0-0 10 \text{d}2 \text{f}6

10...\text{c}4 11 \text{e}2 \text{d}7 à la Hecht is a good alternative.

11 \text{fe}1 \text{a}5 12 \text{e}3

Better is 12 \text{exf}6 \text{xf}6 (not 12...\text{xf}6? 13 \text{d}6) 13 \text{g}5 \text{f}7 14 \text{xe}7 \text{xe}7 with equality, as Black’s play against White’s doubled pawns compensates for the worse bishop. White, having nothing better, should have gone for this.

12...\text{f}5!

\begin{center}
\includegraphics[width=0.5\textwidth]{chess_diagram.png}
\end{center}

24...\text{c}4?

Hesitation! I’ve played close to perfectly so far and now should cash in with the immediate 24...\text{xc}2!, when White has no way to take advantage of the potential c-file pin: 25 \text{c}1 \text{a}4 26 \text{b}4 \text{e}8 27 \text{b}2 \text{fc}7 28 \text{h}6 \text{d}7 29 \text{d}2 \text{c}4 and the bishop is free, so White has nothing for the pawn (very similar to the main game).

Delaying as I did (thinking the pawn was falling anyway) gives White a defense.
25 \textit{\textit{d}3} \textit{\textit{c}7}

26 \textit{\textit{a}a2}?

Blundering back; instead White may hold with 26 \textit{\textit{c}c1}! and then:

a) 26...\textit{\textit{c}c3} 27 \textit{\textit{x}x}b7! (pay careful attention to this tactic) 27...\textit{\textit{x}x}d3 28 \textit{\textit{x}x}c7 \textit{\textit{x}x}d4 (Black has no chances after 28...\textit{\textit{x}x}c7 29 \textit{\textit{c}x}d3 \textit{\textit{x}x}c1+ 30 \textit{\textit{a}a}c1 \textit{\textit{a}a}c2 31 \textit{\textit{f}f}3 \textit{\textit{x}x}d3 with a draw) 29 \textit{\textit{c}c}8+ \textit{\textit{f}f}8 30 \textit{\textit{x}x}f8+ \textit{\textit{x}x}f8 31 \textit{\textit{e}e}3 \textit{\textit{c}c}4 32 \textit{\textit{c}c}3 and despite White’s very ugly position, the opposite-coloured bishops carry so much weight that White might draw.

b) 26...\textit{\textit{b}b}6 27 \textit{\textit{c}c}3 \textit{\textit{f}f}8 28 \textit{\textit{b}b}4 \textit{\textit{c}c}8 29 \textit{\textit{x}x}c4 \textit{\textit{x}x}c4 30 \textit{\textit{x}x}c4 \textit{\textit{x}x}c4 and again it’s questionable if Black’s advantage is great enough to win, given the leveling factor of the opposite bishops.

26...\textit{\textit{c}c3} 27 \textit{\textit{e}e}2

Now the noted tactic above doesn’t work! If 27 \textit{\textit{x}x}b7 \textit{\textit{x}x}d3 28 \textit{\textit{x}x}c7 \textit{\textit{d}d}1+ and this checking resource wins for Black, reminiscent of Varga’s win in the previous game. In the note above, with the white rook on \textit{c1}, the first player can defend as there is no free check on the back rank.

27...\textit{\textit{c}c}6 28 \textit{\textit{d}d}2

Or 28 \textit{\textit{g}g}5 \textit{\textit{c}c}7 29 \textit{\textit{g}g}3 \textit{\textit{x}x}c2 30 \textit{\textit{x}x}c2 \textit{\textit{x}x}c2 and the pawn goes anyway.

28...\textit{\textit{x}x}c2 29 \textit{\textit{x}x}c2 \textit{\textit{x}x}c2 30 \textit{\textit{e}e}1 \textit{\textit{b}b}3

Black is a clear pawn up, but still faces a tough battle to win in view of the opposite-coloured bishops.

31 \textit{\textit{b}b}2 \textit{\textit{c}c}4 32 \textit{\textit{d}d}2 \textit{\textit{f}f}4 33 \textit{\textit{f}f}3 \textit{\textit{g}g}5 34 \textit{\textit{a}a}5 \textit{\textit{b}b}6 35 \textit{\textit{b}b}4 \textit{\textit{h}h}5 36 \textit{\textit{d}d}2 \textit{\textit{a}a}4 37 \textit{\textit{c}c}2 \textit{\textit{x}x}c2 38 \textit{\textit{x}x}c2 \textit{\textit{h}h}7

A classic ending. With the rooks off, the pure opposite bishop ending would probably be a win – but here Black can play for a win by using the rook to create activity on both wings.

I consider this one of my best endings ever, which is rare as most of my best endings were played years before in the more chess-friendly days of adjournments and slow time controls. The only reason I was able to manoeuvre confidently here was that I had played the first part of the game so quickly that I had time to think in the one hour sudden death control we were now entering.

39 \textit{\textit{b}b}4 \textit{\textit{g}g}6

233
The win consists of several stages:

1. (moves 39-44) Black accomplishes the ...g5-g4 break, so that a file can always be opened on the kingside – it’s important that Black have play on both sides of the board.

2. (moves 45-50) Black creates a passed pawn on the queenside.

3. (moves 51-57) Black brings his king to the queenside to free the rook, which can then finally penetrate on the open g-file.

4. (moves 58-60) When White crosses this plan, by activating his bishop on the kingside – and taking a pawn, but that’s not important – Black ties up the white rook by advancing his passed pawn to the seventh.

5. (moves 61-76) Black puts his pieces on ideal squares, then brings the black king all the way back around to the kingside, where his majesty’s threatened entrance forces the decisive win of material.

It does not seem that White had any effective defence to this plan; the key for Black was seeing the long view, rather than concentrating on short tactical sequences.

40 ²f2 ²f5 41 ²c1 ²h7 42 ²h1 ²c7 43 ²d6 ²c8 44 ²c1 g4

The first step is completed; White can’t stop Black from opening a kingside file.

45 h4 a5 46 ²e7 ²g8 47 ²d6 b5 48 ²c5 ²g7 49 ²b1 ²b7 50 ²b2

If 50 ²a1 b4 51 axb4 axb4 52 ²b1 b3 and the passed pawn is decisive.

50...b4!

It’s worth a temporary pawn sacrifice to create a passed pawn – and now step two is completed.

51 axb4 a4 52 b5

If White does not sacrifice the pawn back, the black a-pawn gets to a2 where it ties down the white rook, leading to a slow but inevitable win.

52...²xb5 53 ²a3 ²g6 54 ²e1 ²f7 55 ²b1 ²e8 56 ²c1 gxf3 57 gxf3 ²d7

Step three is completed. Black can’t trade rooks, but now I threaten ...²c6, when the bishop is protected and the black rook can maraud on the kingside. White avoids that by taking on f4, so he
can block the g-file with $g_5$, but now the black a-pawn advances; the next two moves complete step four, as I establish a dangerous pawn on the seventh rank.

58 $\text{xf4}$ a3 59 $\text{Ha1}$ Ha7 60 $\text{d2}$ a2 61 c3 $\text{d3}$ 62 $\text{d1}$ $\text{f5}$ 63 $\text{d2}$ $\text{b7}$ 64 $\text{c1}$ $\text{b1}$ 65 $\text{a1}$ $\text{h3}$ 66 f4 $\text{f5}$ 67 $\text{e1}$ e4 68 $\text{c1}$ e8

had to fight to stay level, since Black got a superior French with long-term play against White’s doubled pawns.

**Game 68**

**K. Kerek - E. Mensch**

**Budapest 1997**

1 e4 $\text{f6}$ 2 e5 $\text{d5}$ 3 g3

Now begins the final stage: the black king plans to walk over to f5 and begin munching pawns. There is nothing White can do about this: material will be lost on one wing or the other.

69 c3 $\text{f7}$ 70 $\text{e1}$ $\text{g6}$ 71 $\text{e3}$

Or 71 $\text{c1}$ $\text{f5}$ 72 $\text{e1}$ $\text{xf4}$ 73 $\text{c1}$ g4 74 $\text{e1}$ $\text{xf4}$ and Black will win with the h-pawn.

71...a1$\text{w}$ 72 $\text{xa1}$ $\text{xa1}$ 73 $\text{g3+}$ $\text{f5}$ 74 $\text{g5+}$ $\text{xf4}$ 75 $\text{xe}5$ $\text{a4}$ 76 $\text{c3}$ $\text{c4+}$ 0-1

The base of White’s pawn chain finally falls, so it’s time to resign. It’s nice to win a game these days by strategical planning, as opposed to time-trouble tricks!

As far as the opening goes White

Both this and 3 $\text{c4}$ can be met in Vaganian (French!) style.

Note that 3 $\text{c4}$ is actually a poor cousin of the line in the Vaganian game (which occurred after 3 $\text{d4}$ $\text{d6}$ 4 $\text{c4}$), as Black can play ...$\text{d7-d5}$ in one move, so is actually a tempo up on Game 61.

Here’s an example of the suffering poor relation: 3 $\text{c4}$ $\text{b6}$ 4 $\text{b3}$ e6 (or 4...$\text{d5}$) 5 $\text{d4}$ $\text{d5}$ 6 $\text{xf3}$ (if 6 $\text{exd6}$ $\text{cxd6}$ Black has a central pawn majority and the $\text{b3}$-bishop is still blocked) 6...c5 (as mentioned above, Black is a tempo ahead of the Vaganian game and so has a kind of super-French – why is the white bishop on $\text{b3}$?) 7 $\text{xc5}$ $\text{xc5}$ 8 0-0
\[ \text{C6 9 g5 e7 10 f4 0-0 11 c3 a6 12 a3 d7 13 e2 c8 14 c3 a5 15 c2 bc4 16 b4 c6 17 d3 g6 18 g3 f6 (Black takes over the centre and stands much better) 19 exf6 xf6 20 h5 e5 21 xe5 xe5 22 xf6+ xf6 23 xe5 xe5 24 fe1 xc3 (Black is a pawn ahead for exactly nothing) 25 xc3 xc3 26 d1 fc8 27 g4 f7 28 h3 f6 29 ad1 h5 30 xd5 exd5 31 xd7 c1 32 xc1 xc1+ 33 h2 d4 34 g4 d3 0-1 W.Kopp-A.Lenz, Ludwigshafen 1995.} \]

\[ \text{3...b6 4 g2 d5} \]

In both this line and the note above, White spends two moves to put a bishop on a soon to be closed diagonal: \( \text{c4-b3} \) runs into \( \text{d7-d5} \); or here after \( \text{g2-g3/\text{g2}} \) again Black plays \( \text{d7-d5} \). Needless to say, in the regular French White’s light-squared bishop is virtually never developed to \( \text{b3} \) or \( \text{g2} \) – but the black knight often travels to \( \text{b6} \); e.g. 1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 d2 f6 4 e5 fd7 5 d3 c5 6 c3 c6 7 e2 cxd4 8 xd4 b6 is the Leningrad Variation against the Tarrasch.

\[ \text{5 exd6} \]

\[ \text{5 d4 e6 6 e2 c5 7 c3 d7 is a good French for Black.} \]

\[ \text{5...exd6 6 d4 e7 7 f3} \]

The first player switched sides in the following short game from the same tournament, and drew easily: 7 h3 0-0 8 f3 e5 9 0-0 f5 10 b3 d5 11 b2 c6 \( \text{½-½} \) Z.Szabo-L.Kerek, Budapest 1997.

\[ \text{7...0-0 8 d7 9 b3 f6 10 b2} \]

\[ \text{10...c6} \]

\[ \text{10...g4 11 bd2 d5 is simple equality; Black plays as in the Larsen Exchange (Chapter Five) that we have already covered.} \]

\[ \text{11 bd2 g4 12 e1 e8 13 f1 d7 14 e3 h5 15 c4 ad8 16 a4 d5 17 c5 a8 18 d3 xf3 19 xf3 g6 20 b4 c7} \]

\[ \text{21 ad1} \]

\[ \text{21 e2 is more to the point, given Black’s slow play – though there doesn’t seem to be anything in it after 21...f8.} \]

\[ \text{21 a6 22 h4 h5 23 g2 e6 24 c1 g7 25 g5 h7 26 xe7 xe7 27 xe7 xe7 28 b5 axb5 29 axb5 f6} \]
Black takes aim at the base of White's chain, which could easily become weak without pawn support.

30 f4 f5 31 bxc6 bxc6 32 e2 b8 33 g2 f8 34 a1 e6

35 a6?

35 a4 is necessary, when despite Fritz's equals over plus, it's hard for this human to see how Black can make any progress.

35...fxd4 36 xd4 xd4 37 e3 b2 38 xd4

38 f1 would prolong, but not save the game.

38...xd4 39 d1 b5 0-1

Black ends up with two clear extra pawns.

Summary

One could say that the fianchetto here and 3 c4 in the notes are even more harmless than 3 c3. Black equalizes with ease against the popular knight move; the only drawback with my recommendation, Alekhine's 3...e6, is that White can virtually force an extremely drawish position.
Chapter Ten

Alekhine Declined

Our Hero: Timothy Taylor

After skipping “Lines I Don’t Like” in the previous chapter (I liked Black’s lines, just not White’s), I have some serious bones to pick here! What should Black play if White chooses to decline the Alekhine experience with the most common second move (next to 2 e5): namely 2 dıc3 - ? (Lesser moves, such as 2 d3, which present no problems at all, are also covered in this chapter – see Games 72-74.)

Now I already know that I play 2...e5 (after 1 e4 dıf6 2 dıc3), which I consider simplest and best. But let’s consult some other authorities: namely my five Alekhine’s Defence books. Every single one of them only analyzes the reply 2...d5 to 2 dıc3. For example, in Alekhine Defense (1977 Edition), author Norman Weinstein writes: “We limit ourselves to examine Black’s reply 2...P-Q4” (2...d5).

Limit ourselves, indeed! But what if 2...d5 is not best? Why then should we limit ourselves? John Cox has his doubts; he writes: “personally, I recommend 2...e5.” Does he then show a game with 2...e5? No, as with all other Alekhine authors, he sticks to 2...d5, as the pure “Alekhine” move, and gives only a game with this line – in which Black gets smashed by the Swedish GM Jonny Hector (given here as note ‘b’ to Black’s 3rd move in Game 59, needless to say under “Lines I Don’t Like”!).

I first took a real look at the variation 1 e4 dıf6 2 dıc3 d5 3 e5 when I was writing my book Pawn Sacrifice!. I included a win by the aforementioned Hector that had continued 3...dıfd7 4 e6!, which I
concluded was a very promising pawn sacrifice. I wrote then that I thought Black could dodge this and equalize with 3...d4, but after further study of Hector’s games, I saw I was wrong (see note ‘a’ in the same Game 59).

The problem after 2...d5 3 e5 is that the Alekhine knight has no good flight square: the usual d5 is now unavailable; d7 is a self block of all his pieces; there is no comfortable retreat after 3...c3; and Black’s kingside is broken up after the indirect exchange 3...d4 4 exf6 dxc3 5 fxg7.

So I conclude that 2...d5, even if it is the only “Alekhine’s Defence” move, is objectively a mistake, and I will not recommend anything I don’t believe to be correct.

So while I don’t think I’m such a great player as other chapter heroes such as Carlsen, Korchnoi, Larsen and Varga (and I know this from personal experience, having lost a tournament game to each of them!), I do give myself extra points as the first Alekhine Defence writer to offer an Open Game in an Alekhine book! Indeed, I present one of my games (I do practice what I preach), as well as a Kramnik win that could be quite useful to the Alekhine player who wishes to come out of the opening alive. In other words, I’m the hero of this chapter more for being willing to “tell it like it is” rather than my play – though I must modestly mention that my win against a high-rated IM is not so bad.

In that encounter (Game 70) the opening goes from Alekhine’s Defence through a few transpositions to wind up as a Four Knights. The ultimate study of all the Open Games that could arise after 1 e4 c5 2 c3 e5 is too vast to be contained here, but I offer a few recommendations along the way.

And I give one unqualified opinion: don’t play 2...d5.

Just in case you don’t believe me, check out the...

**Lines I Don’t Like**

![Game 69](image)

**J.Hector-M.Konopka**

**German League 1996**

1 e4 c5 2 c3

Certainly not the most challenging move, and if Black plays what I recommend, 2...e5, then White has nothing better than some quiet Open Game like the Vienna or the Four Knights, neither of which should give an opening advantage. But what if Black follows his five Alekhine books and plays...

2...d5?!

Then Jonny Hector smiles.

Hector has been making a living off this move – and why not? If Alekhine players persist in playing 2...d5, he may as well harvest the points! From this position Jonny has scored fifteen wins, three draws, and just one loss. That’s 87%! His victims have included such
noted (and stubborn!) Alekhinists like Baburin and two of our heroes, Kengis and Sergeev!

It’s all very well to be a proud Alekhine player, and defend the honour of your favourite opening – but one has to recognize that after 2 \( \text{c3} \) the opening is not an Alekhine. Stubbornly trying to make it so by playing 2...d5 leads to something like an Alekhine (yes, your knight gets kicked), but not a good Alekhine or a traditional Alekhine (when your knight happily runs to d5, and you have ...d7-d6 in hand to attack White’s centre pawn), but just a bad Alekhine where neither of those plays are possible.

3 e5!

No solution to this attack has been found to date.

3...\( \text{\textit{Bd7}} \)

Black invites an obstructive pawn sacrifice, which Rudolf Spielmann described as “full of promise.” The alternatives are:

a) 3...d4 4 exf6 dxc3 5 fxg7 cxd2+ 6 \( \text{\textit{Bxd2}} \) \( \text{\textit{Bxg7}} \) (when I wrote my pawn sacrifice book, I thought Black could equalize in this line – but Hector’s last and the next move, keeping queens on while sacrificing a pawn for attack, changed my mind) 7 \( \text{\textit{Wf3}} \) and then:

\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{center}

a1) 7...\( \text{\textit{Bc6}} \) (our hero Kengis goes down in flames to Hector in this variation) 8 \( \text{\textit{Bb5}} \) \( \text{\textit{Wd6}} \) 9 \( \text{\textit{Bc3}} \) 0-0 10 \( \text{\textit{Bxc6}} \) \( \text{\textit{Bxc3}}+ \) 11 \( \text{\textit{Bxc3}} \) bxc6 (after this Black never obtains full compensation for his pawn weaknesses) 12 \( \text{\textit{Bxe2}} \) \( \text{\textit{Ba6}} \) 13 \( \text{\textit{Bd1}} \) \( \text{\textit{We6}} \) 14 \( \text{\textit{We3}}! \) (Hector gets the queens off and grinds unmercifully) 14...\( \text{\textit{Wxe3}} \) 15 fxe3 \( \text{\textit{Bfd8}} \) 16 \( \text{\textit{Bxd8+}} \) \( \text{\textit{Bxd8}} \) 17 \( \text{\textit{Bf1}} \) e5 18 \( \text{\textit{Bf5}} \) \( \text{\textit{Be8}} \) 19 \( \text{\textit{Bg5+}} \) \( \text{\textit{Bf8}} \) 20 \( \text{\textit{Bh5}} \) \( \text{\textit{Bg7}} \) 21 \( \text{\textit{Bh4}} \) \( \text{\textit{Bb8}} \) 22 b3 \( \text{\textit{Bc8}} \) 23 \( \text{\textit{Bd4}} \) a6 24 \( \text{\textit{Bc1}} \) f6 25 \( \text{\textit{Bd3}} \) \( \text{\textit{Bb5}} \) 26 \( \text{\textit{Bc4}} \) \( \text{\textit{Bb6}} \) 27 \( \text{\textit{Bc5}} \) (the doubleton is blockaded and soon...) 27...\( \text{\textit{Bf7}} \) 28 \( \text{\textit{Bd4}} \) \( \text{\textit{Bb7}} \) 29 \( \text{\textit{Bxc6}} \) (lost!) 29...\( \text{\textit{Bb7}} \) 30 \( \text{\textit{Bc5}} \) (Hector blockades again and cruises to victory) 30...a5 31 \( \text{\textit{Bd2}} \) \( \text{\textit{Be7}} \) 32 \( \text{\textit{Bc3}} \) \( \text{\textit{Bf5}} \) 33 g3 h5 34 e4 \( \text{\textit{Bh3}} \) 35 \( \text{\textit{Bd2}} \) h4 36 gxh4 \( \text{\textit{Bxa8}} \) 37 \( \text{\textit{Bd3}} \) \( \text{\textit{Bh8}} \) 38 \( \text{\textit{Bxc7+}} \) \( \text{\textit{Bd6}} \) 39 \( \text{\textit{Bxe7}} \) 40 \( \text{\textit{Bxe7}} \) 41 \( \text{\textit{Bf2}} \) \( \text{\textit{Bd7}} \) 42 \( \text{\textit{Bxa5}} \) \( \text{\textit{Bxh2}} \) 43 \( \text{\textit{Bc3}} \) \( \text{\textit{Bg2}} \) 44 c4 \( \text{\textit{Bg3+}} \) 45 \( \text{\textit{Bd2}} \) \( \text{\textit{Bf3}} \) 46 \( \text{\textit{Bxe2}} \) \( \text{\textit{Bc3}} \) 47 \( \text{\textit{Bd3}} \) \( \text{\textit{Bc2+}} \) 48 \( \text{\textit{Bxe3}} \) \( \text{\textit{Bg4}} \) 49

a2) 7...♗xb2 (Black daringly takes the proffered pawn, and suffers much less than Kengis, as the end comes quickly!) 8 ♕d1 (now we see a development sacrifice) 8...♕d6 9 ♕c4 ♕e5+ 10 ♕e2 ♕f6 (Black’s multiple queen moves don’t help his cause) 11 ♕b3 ♕e5 12 ♕f4 ♕d6 13 ♕c3 e5 14 ♕xe5 ♕xe5 15 ♕xe5 ♕xe5 16 ♕xf7+ ♕e7 17 0-0 ♕e6 18 ♕b4+ c5 19 ♕h4+ and the black king perishes in the crossfire, 1-0 H.Reefschläger-R.Frosch, Velden 1995.

a3) 7...♕d4 (probably best)

8 ♕c3 ♕g4 9 ♕xg7 ♕xg7 10 0-0-0 ♕c6 11 ♕f4 e5 12 ♕h4 0-0 13 ♕d3 ♕f5 14 ♕g3 ♕g6 15 f4 (15 ♕d3 is simpler with a solid edge due to his safer king, as after the text Black can get some counterplay with 15...♕d4) 15...♕f5?! 16 ♕f3 ♕ae8 (if 16...e4 17 ♕c4+ ♕h8 18 ♕g5 and White has too many threats) 17 ♕g5 ♕h8 18 ♕c4 ♕d4 19 ♕d1 b5 20 ♕f1 a6 21 ♕a3! (Black can’t protect the a-pawn, as defences on the f6-square allow 22 fxe5 gaining a tempo and win-

ning a piece; on the previous move 21 fxe5 would not have been so effective in view of the reply 21...f4) 21...c5 22 ♕xa6 ♕a8 23 ♕xb5!! (White diverts the black knight and attacks the key squares f6 and d8) 23...♕xb5 24 ♕e6 ♕f7 25 ♕xa8 1-0 J.Hector-A.Blees, Kecskemét 1987. Black resigns in view of 25...♕xa8 26 ♕d8+ ♕xd8 27 ♕xd8+ ♕g8 28 ♕f6+ mating.

One sees that Hector’s line exploits both Black’s lagging development and pawn weaknesses – I can’t see an equalizer here. So one might try variation ‘b’, but I’m afraid the stubborn Alekhinist will just find more problems...

b) 3...♕e4 is met by 4 ♕ce2, when Black’s advanced knight has no secure way home and invites tempo-gaining attacks:

b1) 4...f6 has been played, but Hector has also demolished that line as follows: 5 d3 ♕g5 6 ♕xg5 fxg5 7 h4 g4 8 ♕f4 ♕f5 9 ♕ge2 ♕c6 10 ♕g3 ♕d7 11 d4 (Black has no natural break, while White’s knights have beautiful
squares) 11...\(\text{c}4\) 12 e6 \(\text{d}6\) 13 \(\text{xf}5\) \(\text{xf}4\) 14 \(\text{e}3\) g3 15 \(\text{f}3\) \(\text{xf}3\) 16 gx\(f\)3 gx\(f\)2+ 17 \(\text{xf}2\) 0-0-0 18 c3 \(\text{a}6\) 19 h5 c6 20 \(\text{xa}6\) bxa6 21 f4 \(\text{g}8\) 22 f5 (White has a colossal bind and wins handily) 22...g6 23 hxg6 hxg6 24 \(\text{ag}1\) \(\text{g}7\) 25 \(\text{ag}6\) \(\text{f}6\) 26 \(\text{hh}6\) \(\text{ag}6\) 27 \(\text{ag}6\) c5 28 \(\text{g}4\) \(\text{h}8\) 29 f6! \(\text{xf}6\) 30 \(\text{xf}6\) exf6 31 dxc5 \(\text{e}8\) 32 \(\text{xf}6\) \(\text{d}8\) 33 \(\text{e}3\) \(\text{e}7\) 34 \(\text{xf}7+\) \(\text{xe}6\) 35 \(\text{xa}7\) \(\text{e}5\) 36 \(\text{xa}6\) \(\text{b}8\) 37 \(\text{b}6\) 1-0 J.Hector-M.Van der Werf, Berlin 1993.

b2) 4...d4 (the most popular move) 5 c3 and then:

b21) 5...\(\text{dx}c3\) gives up the whole centre, but there may be nothing better. White need only avoid one trap:

```
  \(\text{c}5\) \(\text{e}4\) \(\text{d}6\) \(\text{e}5\)
  \(\text{c}5\) \(\text{e}4\) \(\text{d}6\) \(\text{e}5\)
```

b211) 6 \(\text{a}4+?\) (if White is in too much of a hurry we get this disaster...) 6...\(\text{d}7\) 7 \(\text{xe}4?\) (a free piece?) 7...\(\text{c}5\)! (maybe not!) 8 \(\text{e}3\) \(\text{d}3+\) 9 \(\text{d}1\) cxb2 10 \(\text{xb}2\) \(\text{xb}2+\) 11 \(\text{e}1\) \(\text{d}3+\) 12 \(\text{d}1\) \(\text{g}4\) 13 f3 \(\text{d}7\) 14 \(\text{c}3\) (not 14 fx\(g\)4? \(\text{a}4\) mate) 14...\(\text{f}5\) 15 \(\text{xd}3\) \(\text{xd}3\) 16 \(\text{ge}2\) e6 17 \(\text{f}4\) \(\text{a}6\) 18 \(\text{e}4\) \(\text{b}5\) 19 \(\text{c}3\) \(\text{b}4\) 20 \(\text{xc}7\) 0-0 21 \(\text{c}1\) h6 22 \(\text{c}3\) \(\text{xc}3\) 23 \(\text{xc}3\) \(\text{a}4+\) 0-1 A.Bastian-

Y.Schlueter, Luxembourg Team Ch. 1993 – not recommended for White!

b212) 6 \(\text{bxc3}\) (simply recapturing is correct and very good for White, and now \(\text{a}4+\) is a threat) 6...\(\text{c}5\) 7 d4 \(\text{ca}6\) (the knight finally gets out of the way of the onrushing centre pawns, but Black has a terrible position – no counter-attack can be seen) 8 \(\text{f}4\) e6 9 \(\text{h}5\) \(\text{h}4\) 10 \(\text{f}4\) \(\text{d}7\) 11 \(\text{h}3\) h6 12 \(\text{b}1\) \(\text{ab}8\) 13 \(\text{f}3\) \(\text{d}8\) (Black succeeds in rerouting almost all his pieces to the back rank) 14 \(\text{d}3\) g6 15 \(\text{e}4!\) c6 16 \(\text{g}3\) \(\text{a}5\) 17 0-0 \(\text{b}6\) 18 \(\text{d}3\) \(\text{d}8\) 19 c4 \(\text{c}3\) 20 \(\text{fd}1\) \(\text{xd}4\) 21 \(\text{a}6!\) \(\text{xc}4\) 22 \(\text{h}5\) fxg6 23 \(\text{xc}6+\) \(\text{e}7\) 24 \(\text{bc}1\) \(\text{b}4\) 25 a3 \(\text{a}4\) (if 25...\(\text{xa}3\) 26 \(\text{g}5\) wins) 26 \(\text{f}5+\) \(\text{d}8\) (26...exf5 27 e6 is also quick) 27 \(\text{d}4\) (Black is overrun!) 1-0 F.Costa-A.Rawlings, correspondence 2003.

b22) 5...\(\text{c}6\) (the problem with this is that White can now capture a pawn, while Black’s compensation is rather doubtful) 6 \(\text{xd}4\) and then:

```
  \(\text{c}5\) \(\text{e}4\) \(\text{c}3\)
  \(\text{c}5\) \(\text{e}4\) \(\text{c}3\)
```

b221) 6...\(\text{xe}5\) is unsound, as 7 \(\text{e}2\) skewers the knights and Black has no sufficient defence: 7...\(\text{d}5\) (if instead
7...f5, then not 8 f3 c5 9 d2 c4 10 fxe4 d3+ 11 d1 fxe4 12 h3 e5 13 e1 Wh4 when Black has some compensation for the piece, but 8 d3! c5 9 dxe4 cxd4 10 exf5 df7 11 cxd4 dxf5 12 b5+ d7 13 f3! gives White an extra pawn and the better position, or 11...xd4 12 b5+ and Black must either trade queens with 12...d7 when he has nothing for the pawn, or toss another one with 12...d7 when he has nothing much for two pawns!) 8 b5 d8 (if 8...c6, 9 f3 wins) 9 c4 (White is winning a piece) 9...c6 10 f3 f5 11 d4 a6 12 dxe5 axb5 13 fxe4 e6 14 cxb5 c5 15 f3 d7 16 e3 b4+ 17 d2 a4 18 exf5 c5 19 c4 a7 20 0-0-0 a8 21 g5+ c8 22 fxe6 e3+ 23 b1 xb5 24 xb5 xa2+ 25 c2 1-0 P.Ruzicka-L.Zvolanek, Czech League 1996 – White has two extra pieces and a winning attack.

It’s clear that Black must simply sacrifice the pawn as in the main variation...

b222) 6...xd4 7 a4+ c6 8 xd4 xd4 9 cxd4

(White has the pawn in hand, but was it a sacrifice? – it’s not at all clear what compensation Black has, if any) 9...g5 10 d3 e6 11 e2 g6 12 e4 c7 13 b3 h6 14 h4 e5 15 h5 d8 16 b2 g5 17 f3 g4 18 f4 d5 19 d3 e6 20 g3 d7 21 f2 f5 22 exf6 exf6 23 xd5 (this eventually allows Black to recover his pawn, but White retains a positional advantage – good enough, though 23 f5 intending h4 looks even stronger) 23...xd5 24 c3 d8 (White reaches a winning ending after 24...xd4 25 e4 xd3 26 xf6+ f7 27 xg4 d2+ 28 f3, as Black has relieved him of doubled pawns, but has not recovered his material) 25 e4 f7 26 d5 f5 27 xg7 xg7 28 c3 cxd5 29 b5 a6 30 d4 (Black has recovered his pawn, but the white knight dominates his bishop, and the black pawns are targets, especially the key support pawn at f5) 30...f6 31 ac1 c8? (31...he8 is slightly better, though it seems White wins anyway after 32 c7) 32 xc8 xc8 33 e1 f8 34 e5 (invasion! White grabs a pawn while maintaining the positional advantage – Hector now wins technically) 34...c5 35 xf5+ e7 36 xd5 xd4+ 37 xd4 c2+ 38 e3 g2 39 b4 xg3+ 40 e4 b5 41 a4 bxa4 42 bxa4 h3 43 b7+ f6 44 xh7 g3 45 a7! xh5 (if 45...g2 46 xa6+ f7 47 g6 is quick and painless) 46 xa6+ f7 47 f3 d5 48 xg3 xd3+ 49 g4 d1 50 g5 g1+ 51 f5 c1 52 a7+ g8 53 g5 g1+ 54 f6 1-0 J.Hector- Anagnostou, Komotini 1992.
4 e6!

To quote myself from *Pawn Sacrifice*: “This sacrifice has been known to be very strong for over 70 years. Black’s only hope is to find a good way to return the pawn.”

4...fxe6 5 d4

We see now a classic obstructive pawn sacrifice: Black’s queen and king’s bishop are buried under his own blocking pawns, while his king is exposed to attack.

One might expect that White will eventually win with an attack – but to beat an IM in 15 moves, as Hector does here, is simply amazing!

5...c5

Here’s a pretty game from Spielmann’s great book, *The Art of Sacrifice in Chess*, which continued from this position as follows: 5...f6 6 f3 c5 7 dxc5 dxc6 8 b5 d7 9 0-0 c7 10 e1 h6 11 xc6 bxc6 12 e5 g5 13 wd3 d5 14 b4 g7 15 g6+ d8 16 f7 e8 17 xe6 f8 18 b5 e4 19 xe4! dxe4 20 f4! xe5 21 xe5 wd7 22 d1 cxb5 23 xd7+ xd7 24 xh6 g8 25 c6 e8 26 xb5 1-0 R.Spielmann-S.Landau, Amsterdam 1933.

White is still winning with this kind of attack today – sometimes even faster!

6 f3 c6 7 b5

7...e5

Black returns a pawn to try to free himself, but the exposed king is still there. Another of our stubborn heroes (Sergeev) tried giving it back in another way: 7...g6 8 dxc5 g7 (but not 8...xc5? 9 wd4 and White wins by fork and pin combined!) 9 e3 a5 (Black has his chances in the ensuing play, but this is Hector’s kind of position, and he outplays his opponent in the complications) 10 0-0 0-0 11 b1 a6 12 xc6 bxc6 13 d1 wd7 14 g5 e5 15 f4 f5 16 h3 f7 17 xg7 xg7 18 a4 e5 19 b6 b8 20 c4 e6 21 b4 h5 22 f4 exf4 23 xe6 f3 24 g3 g5 25 cxd5 xe6 26 dxe6 f8 27 b3 e5 28 d7 d8 29 e3 d5 30 xf3 xd5 31 xf3 and White eventually won the two pawns for the exchange ending in J.Hector-V.Sergeev, Berlin 1995.
8 dxe5 e6

9 Qg5!
A direct attack against Black’s enforced weakness at e6.
9...Qd4
If 9...Qdxe5, 10 We2 gives White good compensation.
10 Wg4! Wxe7 11 Qxh7!
Hector clears the short diagonal that leads to the black king. A rook or
more is not too much to give for one good check, like the one we’ll see on
move 15.
11...Qxc2+ 12 Qd1 Qxa1 13 Qxd5!!

White has a winning attack.
13...exd5 14 Qg5 Wxe5

If 14...Wf7 15 e6 wins everything.
15 Wh5+ 1-0
I wouldn’t want to be on the black side of 3 e5! against Hector, or anyone
who has studied his games. On the other hand, I’d take up 1 e4 myself if I
knew that all my Alekhine foes were going to answer 2 Qc3 with 2...d5?!

Game 70
A.Matikozian-T.Taylor
Las Vegas 2005

1 e4 Qf6
The North American Open is one of those big American Swiss system
events where it’s necessary to win with both colours. At this point in the tour-
nament my score wasn’t quite what it needed to be, and I really needed to
win – and my opponent was a strong IM against whom I had a poor score.
What to play? The fighting Alekhine!
2 Qc3
Or not.
2...e5!
I am now the first Alekhine Defence author to put an Open Game in an Alekhine Defence book!

Clearly I cannot go into all the double king pawn openings that can be reached via this move order, but some general remarks are certainly appropriate: If one comes to an Open Game in the usual way, after 1 e4 e5, I think there’s no doubt that the three strongest second moves are 2 ∇f3, 2 f4 or 2 d4. Note, coincidentally, all three of these immediately attack the e5-pawn, and Black must quickly take measures before his centre is overrun. On the other hand, after 1 e4 e5 2 ∇c3 (the Vienna Game, to which we have now transposed – for the moment) gives Black a breather, time to make a useful developing move such as 2...f6, reaching the position in the game. The Vienna is hardly played at a high level today for just this reason, as it is thought, with considerable justification, that Black can equalize fairly easily. So by playing 2...e5 in this Alekhine Declined, Black avoids the horrible Hectoring of 2...d5 3 e5! and pushes White into a far less dangerous line in which the second player – with a bit of knowledge to be sure – should be able to equalize rather easily.

The above comments also give a hint as to why I think 2...e5 is best here, as compared to the also playable 2...e6 and 2...d6. While I regard these as both superior to 2...d5, Black will have either to contend with a main line French (1 e4 d5 2 ∇c3 e6 3 d4 d5) or a main line Pirc (1 e4 d5 2 ∇c3 d6 3 d4 g6). In both cases White can play the strongest lines available against those respective openings. However, when one transposes to 1 e4 e5 via the Alekhine (1 e4 f6 2 ∇c3 e5), as in the game, White has already lost perhaps his most important main line option, 2 f3.

3 f3

White could stay in the Vienna Game with 3 g3, 3 f4 or 3 ∇c4 – these options will be considered in the next game. With the text move the Vienna is gone, and we are entering the Three Knights Game.

3...c6

Black could stay in the Three Knights Game with 3...b4, as in this classical Alekhine win: 4 ∇xe5 We7 5 ∇d3 ∇xc3 6 dxc3 ∇xe4 7 ∇e2 d5 8 0-0 0-0 9 ∇f4 c6 10 c4 dxc4 11 ∇xc4 ∇f5 12 ∇e2 ∇e8 13 ∇e1 ∇d7 14 ∇e3 b5 15 ∇ad1 ∇c7 16 ∇d3 ∇d7 17 f3 ∇d6 18 g4 ∇xd3 19 ∇xd3 ∇xe5! 20 ∇f1 (20 ∇xd6 ∇xd6 21 ∇xd6 ∇xf3+ is good for Black) 20...dxc4 21 ∇c1 ∇a5 22 ∇e2 ∇xa2 23 ∇de1 f6 24 ∇d3 ∇f8 25 b3 ∇d6 26 ∇xe5 fxe5 27 ∇g2 ∇ae8 28 f4 e4 29 f5 ∇a1 30 ∇g3 ∇f7 31 c3 b4! (a typical Alekhine counter-attack – the black queen finds its way back into the game) 32 ∇b2 ∇a5 33 ∇xe4 ∇xe4 34 ∇xe4 ∇d5 35 ∇e2 ∇d1+ 36 ∇e1 ∇xb3 37 cxb4 ∇g5 38 ∇c3 ∇h3+ 39 ∇f1 ∇d1+ 40 ∇e1 ∇d5 41 ∇e4 ∇g5 42 ∇c3 ∇f6 43 ∇d4 ∇h1+ 44 ∇e2 ∇xh2+ 45
Alekhine Declined

$h1$ $g5$ $c7$ $g7$ $e7$ $g1+$ $e1$ $a6$ $e6$+ $9$ $e6$ $xh6$ $xe1+$ $a3$ $h2$ $e4$ $e2$ $e5$ $f5$ $d4$ $d4$ $e6$ $c5$ $c6$ $d5$ $f6$ $g6$ $b3$ $b5$ $h1$ $b6$ $d4$ $d2$ $h2$ $d1$ $g1$ $b7$ $c4$ $h3$ $g2$ $b6$ $b3$ $b6$ $h3$ $a6$ $a6$ $h4$ $h4$ $h5$ $b5$ $b5$ $d6$ $e4$ $f6$ $g6$ $g5$ $e7$ $e7$ $a1$ $d7$ $d7$ $e5$ $e5$ $g7$ $g7$ $c3$ $c3$

All very impressive, but as Alekhine himself admits, White had the initiative in the opening and could have obtained the better game with the simple $15$ $b3$ – as opposed to trying to outplay Alekhine in complications!

4 $d4$

Name that opening continues! With the text White tries to transpose to a sleepy variation of the Scotch, usually reached via $1$ $e4$ $e5$ $2$ $f4$ $e6$ $3$ $d4$ $d5$ $4$ $c4$ $c6$ – a "calm, positional and somewhat harmless game," writes Jan Pinski in his excellent book *The Four Knights*.

Instead, 4 $b5$ is the Spanish Four Knights Game. Black's main counters are the classical 4...$b4$ and Rubinstein's gambit 4...$c5$. I would have played the former, given my tournament position, as White can practically force a draw, if he likes, in the Rubinstein variation: 5 $cxd4$ $exd4$ 6 $e5$ $dxe5$ 7 $fxe6$ $xe6$ 8 $xc3$ $c6$ 9 $e5$ 10 $xe2$ $d5$ 11 $f4$ $c6$ 12 0-0-0 $1/2$-$1/2$ P.Leko-S.Karjakin, Dortmund (blitz playoff) 2004, is a typical modern GM-GM encounter.

After 4...$b4$ the normal continuations is 5 0-0 $d6$ 6 $d3$ 0-0 7 $g5$ $xc3$ 8 $xc3$ $e7$ 9 $e1$ $d8$ 10 $d4$ $e6$, a manoeuvre that has been known for over a hundred years – Black sets up a solid position, then looks for a chance to counter-attack. Let's see an ancient and modern example:

Ancient: 11 $c1$ $c6$ 12 $d3$ $c7$ 13 $h3$ $e8$ 14 $g5$ $xg5$ 15 $xg5$ $d7$ 16 $f3$ $f6$ 17 $d2$ $f8$ (Black sets up a solid position and defends) 18 $g3$ $h8$ 19 $f4$ $g6$ 20 $f5$ $e7$ 21 $dxe5$ $dxe5$ 22 $h4$ $g8$ 23 $h1$ $b6$ 24 $g1$ $b7$ 25 $ae1$ $ad8$ 26 $ac1$ $wf7$ 27 $a3$ $e7$ 28 $e2$ $c5$ 29 $h5$ $wc4$ (Black sees no mate and counter-attacks) 30 $g6$ $h6$ 31 $e3$ $ed7$ 32 $h5$ $wa4$ 33 $e2$ $d1$ 34 $ge1$ $a6$ 35 $e3$ $xe1+$ 36 $xe1$ $xc2$ 37 $h2$ $d3$ 38 $xd3$ $xd3$ 39 $f3$ $e7$ 40 $d2$ $wa4$ 41 $xf6$ $xf5!!$ (having allowed White's combination, Black avoids 41...$xh6$ 42 $we3$ with an attack, and proposes instead 42 $exf5$ $g6$ 43 $we3$ $f4+$ with a winning ending) 42 $c1$ $d6$ 43 $wh4+$ $g8$ 44 $g4$ $xe4$ 45 $e6+$ $f7$ 46 $wh5$ $g6$ 47 $wf3$ $e4$ 48 $we2$ $f5$ 49 $b3$ $f4$ 50 $h1$ $f8
51 \textit{xf7} \textit{xf7} 52 \textit{b2} \textit{f5} 53 \textit{g1} f3 54 \textit{f2} \textit{g6} 55 g3 \textit{c6} 56 \textit{h2} \textit{e4} 57 \textit{c1} \textit{e2} 58 \textit{xe2} fxe2 59 \textit{d2} e4 0-1 H.Wolf-M.Vidmar, Vienna 1907. Yes, that’s how they played, back in the day!

**Modern:** Now our top players can’t do any such long-winded manoeuvres – not only must they play blitz, the inevitable blunders are published! 11 \textit{h4} \textit{d8} 12 \textit{d3} \textit{f8} 13 \textit{d2} \textit{g6} 14 \textit{g3} c5 15 dxc5 dxc5 16 \textit{e2} \textit{g4} (Black is already a little better, as the white bishops are not active, and White’s queenside pawns are a long-term weakness) 17 f3 \textit{e6} 18 \textit{c4} \textit{h5} 19 \textit{e3} \textit{hf4} 20 \textit{f1} \textit{g5} 21 c4 h5 22 \textit{d5} h4 23 \textit{xf4} \textit{xf4} 24 \textit{h1} b6 25 \textit{f2} \textit{h5} 26 \textit{g1} (a typical blitz oversight; White is somewhat worse after 26 \textit{c7}, but still playing) 26...\textit{g3}+! 0-1 A.Shirov-V.Salov, Wijk aan Zee (blitz) 1998.

**5 d5**

"After this move Black has a good game," says the above-mentioned Pinski, and I agree. White is not threatening to win a pawn by bumping the c6-knight (because of the counter-pressure on e4), so closing the position just takes the pressure off and allows Black counterplay. On the other hand, the move can’t be criticized that much, since after this much quiet play White no longer has any chances of a real advantage:

a) 5 \textit{exe5} is more popular, but after 5...\textit{we7} Black has no problems; e.g. 6 \textit{dc6} (if 6 \textit{wd3} Black shows a point of ...\textit{we7} with the following tactical trick: 6...\textit{xd4!} 7 \textit{xd4} \textit{dc5} 8 \textit{wd3} \textit{exe5} 9 \textit{e3} \textit{exe3} 10 \textit{exe3} 0-0 11 f4 \textit{wa5} and Black is at least equal) 6...\textit{exe4+} 7 \textit{e2} \textit{xc3+} (7...\textit{dc6} 8 0-0 \textit{wh4}, mentioned by Pinski, is sharper) 8 bxc3 \textit{wc6} 9 0-0 0-0 10 c4 \textit{d5} 11 \textit{xd5} \textit{exd5} 12 \textit{c3} \textit{b4} 13 \textit{a3} \textit{xd3} 14 \textit{xd3} (after 14 \textit{xf8} \textit{f4} 15 \textit{d5} \textit{gg6} 16 \textit{f3} \textit{h3}! Black’s attack is worth more than White’s

Name that opening concludes: I avoid the Scotch and push the opening back into Four Knights territory, which is my sharpest option.
temporary material advantage) 14...\(\text{e}8\) 15 \(\text{d}5\) \(\text{g}6\) 16 \(\text{c}3\) \(\text{f}5\) 17 \(\text{xc}7\) \(\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}\) S.Lalic-C.Flear, Chambey 1995.

b) 5 \(\text{dxe}5\) \(\text{xe}4\) also gives Black a good game; e.g. 6 \(\text{d}3\) \(\text{d}5\) 7 exd6 0-0! (Black already has a strong attack) 8 \(\text{e}2\) (if 8 dxc7 \(\text{xd}3\) 9 \(\text{xd}3\) \(\text{xc}3\) wins a piece) 8...\(\text{f}5\) 9 0-0 \(\text{xc}3\) 10 \(\text{xf}5\) \(\text{xe}2+\) 11 \(\text{h}1\) \(\text{xc}1\) 12 dxc7 \(\text{xc}7\) 13 \(\text{g}5\) \(\text{g}6\) 14 \(\text{h}3\) \(\text{h}5\) 15 \(\text{axc}1\) \(\text{d}2\) 16 \(\text{e}6\) fxe6 17 \(\text{xe}6+\) \(\text{f}7\) 18 \(\text{xf}7+\) \(\text{xf}7\) 19 \(\text{cd}1\) \(\text{d}8\) 20 c3 \(\text{fd}7\) 0-1 M.Loczy-J.Antal, Hungarian Team Ch. 1997.
5...\(\text{e}7\) 6 \(\text{xe}5\) \(\text{d}6\)

\(7\) \(\text{f}3\)

7 \(\text{b}5+\) forces the black king to move, but leaves White with numerous pawn weaknesses; even a world-class player like Hort lost the white side of this: 7...\(\text{f}8\) (but not 7...c6 8 dxc6 0-0 9 \(\text{d}7\)! – now that’s a Tal move! – 9...\(\text{xd}7\) 10 cxd7 \(\text{xe}4\) 11 \(\text{d}4\) \(\text{xc}3\) 12 \(\text{xb}4\) \(\text{cd}5\) 13 \(\text{b}3\) \(\text{b}6\) 14 0-0 \(\text{xd}7\) 15 \(\text{g}5\) and White’s two bishops led to a win in M.Tal-A.Smatlanek, Prague simul 1960) 8 \(\text{d}3\) \(\text{xc}3+\) 9 \(\text{bxc}3\) \(\text{xe}4\) and Black was already better in V.Hort-P.Trifunovic, Sarajevo 1964, as White’s bishop on b5 is misplaced and the c- and d-pawns are weak.

7...\(\text{xe}4\) 8 \(\text{d}4\) \(\text{xc}3\)

Weaker is 8...\(\text{xc}3+\) 9 bxc3, when White gets some compensation for his broken pawns with the two bishops.

9 bxc3

If 9 \(\text{xb}4\) \(\text{cxd}5\) nets a pawn for Black.

9...\(\text{c}5!\)

Stronger than 9...\(\text{a}5\), as now the bishop has a permanent protected square (courtesy of White’s doubled pawns) and menaces the white king whether it castles kingside, queenside, or stays in the centre.

10 \(\text{xe}7\) \(\text{g}8\)

11 \(\text{h}6\)

11 \(\text{hxh}7\) is very risky, since Black can attack with all his forces (but shouldn’t pause to snatch pawns!). Best is 11...\(\text{f}5\) 12 \(\text{h}5\) \(\text{d}7\) (12...\(\text{g}4\) 13 \(\text{h}7\) \(\text{f}5\) with a draw is Fritz’s unhelpful suggestion) 13 \(\text{g}5\), and now Black should play 13...0-0-0 with a tre-
Alekhone Alert!

mendous attack similar to the main game, rather than the materialistic 13...\texttt{\#xc2}?! which eventually led to Black's loss in A.De Dovitiis-M.Vazquez, Buenos Aires 2001.

11...\texttt{\#f5} 12 \texttt{\#g5} \texttt{\#d7} 13 \texttt{\#d3}

White's king gets caught in the centre after 13 \texttt{\#xe7} \texttt{\#xe7}+ 14 \texttt{\#d2} \texttt{\#xf2}, which is much better for Black.

13...0-0-0

Black has a beautiful development and attacking chances on both sides of the board, more than enough for one pawn.

14 0-0

Not 14 \texttt{\#xf5}?! \texttt{\#xf5} 15 \texttt{\#h3} (if 15 \texttt{\#xh7}? \texttt{\#h8} traps the queen) 15...\texttt{\#de8}+ 16 \texttt{\#f1} (but if 16 \texttt{\#d2} \texttt{\#xf2}) 16...\texttt{\#b5}+ 17 \texttt{\#g1} \texttt{\#xf2}+! 18 \texttt{\#xf2} \texttt{\#e2}+ 19 \texttt{\#g1} \texttt{\#xg5} 20 \texttt{\#xg5} \texttt{\#c5}+ 21 \texttt{\#f1} \texttt{\#f2} mate!

14...\texttt{\#g6} 15 \texttt{\#h4} \texttt{\#dg8}!!

The computer gives 15...f6 and, after the following moves which represent best play in the silicon nation, claims Black has the wonderful equals over plus, though it doesn't look like much of anything to me: 16 \texttt{\#d2} \texttt{\#dg8}

17 \texttt{\#e1} \texttt{\#xd5} 18 \texttt{\#h5} \texttt{\#xd3} 19 cxd3 f5 20 g3 etc.

Whereas my move - played instantly for maximum shock - was a huge psychological blow, as it's evident Black has a tremendous attack, and it's virtually impossible for a human being under time limit (the logic of this and many other examples of real or Spielmann sacrifices) to find any way out, or in this case, a very very precise path to equality.

16 \texttt{\#fe1}?

After a long think my opponent declined the sacrifice, but this was a fatal mistake. Despite the many very real dangers, taking was correct, when Mr. Fritz claims to find equality if White doesn't make a single misstep: 16 \texttt{\#xe7}? (White steps out on a very narrow plank) 16...\texttt{\#g4}! (but not 16...\texttt{\#xg2}+? 17 \texttt{\#h1} \texttt{\#xd3} 18 cxd3 \texttt{\#f5} 19 \texttt{\#e4} \texttt{\#h3} 20 \texttt{\#h4} and White wins - Black too must be accurate) 17 \texttt{\#h5}! (the seemingly plausible 17 \texttt{\#f6} keeps the bishop defended but loses as follows: 17...\texttt{\#xd3} 18 cxd3 \texttt{\#xg2}+ 19 \texttt{\#h1} \texttt{\#h3} 20 \texttt{\#g1} \texttt{\#xf2}! and Black has a winning attack with threats of both 21...\texttt{\#xg1} and 21...\texttt{\#xf3}!, to which White has no defence; while 17 \texttt{\#xf5} crashes and burns after 17...\texttt{\#xf5} 18 \texttt{\#h3} \texttt{\#xg2}+ 19 \texttt{\#xg2} \texttt{\#xg2}+ 20 \texttt{\#xg2} \texttt{\#g4}+ 21 \texttt{\#h1} \texttt{\#xf3}+ 22 \texttt{\#g1} \texttt{\#g4}+ 23 \texttt{\#h1} \texttt{\#e4}+ and Black picks up the bishop for a decisive material advantage) 17...\texttt{\#xg2}+ 18 \texttt{\#h1} \texttt{\#xd3} 19 cxd3 \texttt{\#xe7}.

250
Even if White got this far in his calculations (very difficult calculations indeed) it would be surprising if he correctly evaluated it as equal, as Black has recovered his piece and has strong threats on the seventh rank – nonetheless 20 \textit{g}1! holds. Just try to find this hidden future resource while beset by “sacrificial shock”! After this surprising defence, Black plays 20...\textit{xg}1+ 21 \textit{xg}1 \textit{hxg}1+ 22 \textit{hxg}1 \textit{d}6 23 \textit{h}2 \textit{g}6+ (but not 23...\textit{xc}3? 24 \textit{d}4 25 \textit{d}4 \textit{xb}6 26 \textit{g}8+ \textit{e}7 27 \textit{g}5 and \textit{White} has a winning attack) 24 \textit{xe}6 fxe6 with an approximately even ending.

\textbf{16...\textit{xd}5}

Now I’ve recovered my pawn with a continuing attack.

\textbf{17 \textit{c}4 \textit{xd}3 18 \textit{cx}d3}

Not 18 \textit{cx}d5? \textit{xc}2.

\textbf{18...\textit{h}6!}

The best way to open the g-file is...

\textbf{19 \textit{cx}d5 \textit{hx}g5}

...to close it!

\textbf{20 \textit{we}4}

If 20 \textit{g}3 \textit{g}4 21 \textit{d}2 \textit{f}5 and Black wins a good pawn.

\textbf{20...\textit{g}4 21 \textit{h}4 \textit{g}3!}

The g-file opens like a phoenix’s wings. White has no time to take the rook, as 22 \textit{gx}g6? \textit{xf}2+ wins a piece.

\textbf{22 \textit{hx}g3 \textit{hx}g3 23 \textit{xf}1}

Black wins the ending after 23 \textit{e}2 \textit{h}3 (how’s that for an assortment of pins!) 24 \textit{ae}1 (if 24 \textit{xf}5+, 24...\textit{xf}5 25 \textit{xf}5 \textit{g}2 26 \textit{h}1 \textit{d}7 is decisive) 24...\textit{b}5! (not 24...\textit{g}4?? 25 \textit{e}8+ \textit{e}8 26 \textit{e}8+ \textit{d}7 27 \textit{e}7 mate) 25 \textit{f}5+ (forced, due to the threat of ...\textit{g}4) 25...\textit{xf}5 26 \textit{xf}5 \textit{g}2+ 27 \textit{h}1 \textit{b}7 and White has no chance; e.g. 28 \textit{h}6 \textit{g}6 29 \textit{xf}7 \textit{b}6 30 \textit{d}1 (or 30 \textit{f}1 \textit{g}7 31 \textit{d}8 \textit{g}6 with a mating attack) 30...\textit{xf}2 31 \textit{xf}2 \textit{xf}2 32 \textit{xc}1 \textit{c}5 33 \textit{c}2 \textit{f}6 34 \textit{d}8 \textit{f}1+ 35 \textit{g}2 \textit{d}1 36 \textit{c}3 \textit{b}4 37 \textit{b}3 a5 38 \textit{e}6 \textit{a}4 39 \textit{b}2 \textit{xd}3 with two extra pawns.

\textbf{23...\textit{g}4 24 \textit{wh}7 \textit{d}4!}

Black is winning; the threats of ...\textit{h}8 and ...\textit{xa}1 cannot both be met.

\textbf{25 \textit{f}5}

Other tries also fail; e.g. 25 \textit{e}4 (if 25 \textit{ab}1 \textit{h}8 26 \textit{f}5 \textit{gx}4, or 25 \textit{f}3
Alekhine Alert!

\[ \text{h8} 26 \text{wxh8+} \text{xh8} 27 \text{fxg4} \text{xa1} 28 \\
\text{xa1} \text{wxg4} 29 \text{xf3} \text{xf5} 30 \text{d1} \text{xd5} \text{25...exe4 26 dxe4 (26 wgx8+ e8 27 w7 e8a1 and 26 wxe4 e8a1 are equally hopeless) 26...h8 27 f5 e8a1} \\
- in every line Black emerges with a decisive material advantage.

25...h8 0-1

White resigns in view of the loss of major material; e.g. 26 e7+ d8 27 \\
fxf7 (27 f5 xf5 28 xf5 e8a1 29 \\
xa1 h1+ is similar) 27...xa1 28 \\
xa1 (if 28 g1 eg7 skewers) 28...h1+ 29 e2 xa1 30 f8+ e8 and the two extra rooks are enough!

What’s interesting about this game is how White clearly didn’t like the openings he was getting: after 1...f6, he declined an Alekhine; after 2...e5 he was unhappy with the Vienna; then tried to escape the Four Knights and get a Scotch – only to end up in a sideline of the Four Knights for which he was not prepared ...and even if he had been prepared, that opening would not have given him any “White” advantage.

Compare this to White’s fun and aggressive possibilities after 2...d5 3 e5!

Clearly 2...e5 is the way to go.

Game 71
A.Shirov-V.Kramnik
Monte Carlo
(blindfold rapid) 2005

1 e4

White can try to sneak into the Vienna – or avoid the Alekhine – with the following curious move order, but as one sees, the Latvian GM Rausis takes over the advantage on move 4 (!) and doesn’t relax after that, delivering a horrible crush: 1 c3 f6 2 g3 d5 3 \\
g2 e5 4 e4 (see the note to White’s 4th in the main game for a transpositional possibility) 4...g4! 5 f3 e6 6 \\
d3 c6 7 exd5 cxd5 8 cxd5 wxd5 9 \\
e3 c5 10 xc5 wc5 11 wd2 0-0-0 12 c2 b8 13 c3 d4 14 b4 wb6 15 \\
a4 h3! 16 a5 wxb4 17 f2 xg2 18 \\
xg2 b5 19 e4 wxd2+ 20 xd2 \\
d4 21 a2 d5 22 c4 d7 23 b1 \\
e6 24 ab2 c6 25 a6 b6 26 c5 xc5 27 \\
c4 f6 28 xb6 axb6 29 xb6+ c7 30 \\

1...e5 2 c3 f6

Of course the Alekhine order is 1 e4 \\
f6 2 c3 e5!. I’m putting this game in as I think you’re very likely to get a Vienna if your opponent declines your Alekhine with 2 c3 – and you answer
correctly with 2...e5! – and who better to demonstrate how to play than the recent World Champion himself, Vladimir Kramnik!

3 g3

Besides this passive but popular move, White has two other “Vienna” possibilities:

a) 3 â1c4 6xe4 (3...âc6 is the solid move, but it’s worth taking a look at this fabulous Frankenstein-Dracula Variation – with Jonny Hector, our Alekhine slayer, now taking the black side!) 4 âh5 âd6 5 âb3 âc6 6 âb5 g6 7 âf3 f5 8 âd5 âe7 9 âxc7+ âd8 10 âxa8

(that’s a whole rook for the moment, but the white knight has no exit visa and the queen is a target for Black’s active minor pieces) 10...b6 11 h4 âb7 12 âf3 âxa8 13 âe2 âg7 14 âh3 âf8 15 âc3 âd4 16 0-0 f4 17 d3 âf5 18 âe1 âh5 19 âxf4 âxh4 20 âg3 â6f5 21 âxe5 âxe5 22 âxe5 âf3+ 23 gxf3 âxe5 0-1 M.Simmons-J.Hector, Jersey 2003. White will be mated after 24 âxe5 âxf3.

Hector himself plays the Vienna, often the old main line with 3 f4 – it’s his usual answer when he declines the Alekhine and his opponent takes the open road with 2...e5. Unfortunately for White, such problems as the Vienna presented were pretty much worked out about a century ago, so the question is mainly whether the opponent is familiar with the opening – as we see here, facing the well-prepared Argentine GM Campora, Hector gets nothing:

b) 3 f4 d5 (the only good move – Black fights back in the centre) 4 fxe5 âxe4 5 âf3 âe7 6 âe2 âxc3 7 dxc3 0-0 8 âc4 c5
Alekhine Alert!

(Black has a good position reminiscent of Game 66) 9 0-0-0 a6 10 c4 d4 11 We4 a6 12 h4 g5 13 h6? (a mistake; 13 h5 f5 would have led to a roughly equal, double-edged game) 13...f6 14 g4 fxe5 15 fxe5 xe5 16 f3 g7 17 Wf4 Wf6 18 Whg1 g7? (a baffling move which allows White to keep the queens on – after the natural 18...Wxf4+ 19 xf4 White would just be a clear pawn down in the ending) 19 Wd2 (now Hector is able to complicate his way to a draw) 19...a5 20 Wf2 b5 21 Wxb5 a6 22 Wf2 Wfd8 23 We1 a6 24 hxg6 fxg6 25 Wxg6 Wxg6 26 Wh7+ f8 27 Xg1 Wxg1+ 28 a2 f5 29 Wh8+ a7 30 We5+ a6 31 Wxc5+ bxc5 32 Wxd4+ c7 33 Wd5+ c6 34 g5 a6 35 b3 Wg2 36 Wb2 a6 37 Wf6 Wc6 38 a4 f5 39 Wc3 c7 40 a5 41 Wd3+ Wxd3 42 cxd3 cxd3 43 Wc3 a5 1/2-1/2 J.Hector-D.Campora, Royan 1988.

3...d5

“The idea behind 3...d5 is to exploit the lack of threat in White’s second and third moves by gaining an advantage in the centre,” writes IM Jack Peters in Understanding the Open Games, which basically says it all. Yes, neither White’s second nor third move threatened anything. Compare this to White’s second and third moves in the Ruy Lopez: 1 e4 e5 2 f3! c6 3 b5!.

So given White’s passivity, I feel Black is completely justified in taking over the initiative at once. The only danger is that White’s fianchettoed bishop now has a longer diagonal, but Black has various ways to neutralize this one good piece, as the main game and notes reveal.

4 exd5

White has to give up his centre, as obviously 4 d3 dxe4 is at least a little better for Black, and 4 g2 g4! transposes to the Rausis crush given above.

4...Exd5 5 g2 xc3 6 bxc3 c6

This simple developing move may be best, though a “Great Predecessor” shows a different method: 6...c6 (immediately blocking White’s only trump, the fianchettoed bishop) 7 d4?! (7 f3 is better) 7...Exd4 8 Wxd4 (if 8 cxd4, 8...b4+ forces White to move his king) 8...e7 (White finds that his opening is already refuted, as he can’t take on g7 due to 9...f6, and otherwise has no compensation for his doubled pawns – especially against Lasker!) 9 c2 0-0 10 0-0 f6 11 Wd3 a5 12 e4 d8 13 Wh7+? (desperation – 13 We3 a6 is
just good for Black, but now White is lost) 13...\textit{wh8} 14 \textit{we4} \textit{wh5} 15 \textit{wc4} \textit{whxh7} 16 \textit{xf7} \textit{d4} 17 f4 \textit{f8} 18 \textit{wc4} \textit{d6} 19 \textit{wc5} \textit{wh3} 20 \textit{xf2} \textit{e8} 21 e3 \textit{d5} 22 \textit{wa3} \textit{c8} 23 \textit{e4} c5 24 \textit{xf6} \textit{d1+} 25 \textit{wh1} \textit{we4} 0-1 J.Mieses-Em.Lasker, Leipzig (8th matchgame) 1889. White resigns, as 26 \textit{f2} \textit{g2+} 27 \textit{e3} \textit{c4} is mate!

7 \textit{e2} \textit{e6}

Another smash from the past is 7...\textit{c5} 8 0-0 0-0 9 h3 \textit{e6} 10 \textit{h2} \textit{d5}! (Black’s key idea is always to neutralize White’s light-squared bishop) 11 f3 \textit{b6} 12 d3 \textit{we7} 13 a4 \textit{ad8} 14 \textit{a3} \textit{c5} 15 \textit{c1} f5 16 \textit{e1} \textit{f8} 17 c4 \textit{f7} 18 \textit{c3} \textit{xa3} 19 \textit{xa3} \textit{wh6} 20 \textit{b3} b6 21 \textit{e2} f4 (so much for the fianchettoed bishop!) 22 g4 h5 23 \textit{f1} \textit{d4} 24 \textit{xd4} \textit{exd4} 25 \textit{b5} c5 26 a5 \textit{e2} 27 \textit{g1} \textit{de8} 28 axb6 axb6 29 h4 (a fatal attempt to break the bind) 29...\textit{wh4}! 30 \textit{xf4} \textit{g2+}! (the only reason Pillsbury takes this dead bishop is to force mate!) 31 \textit{g2} \textit{e2+} 32 \textit{g1} \textit{wh3} 0-1 F.Lee-H.Pillsbury, London 1899.

8 0-0 \textit{d5}

As we see from the Pillsbury game above, this idea has been known for over a hundred years: White either must bury his bishop (like Pillsbury’s opponent) or exchange, as here, leaving weak light squares around his king. Black, with the better centre and better pawn structure, already has some advantage on move 8!

9 d3 \textit{d2} 10 \textit{e2} 11 f3 0-0 0-0 12 c4 \textit{we6} 13 \textit{e3} \textit{b4} 14 \textit{b1} f5

Black has completed his development and now goes over to the attack.

15 \textit{b3} b6 16 c5

White tries complications which, as usual, favour the better developed and more centralized player. Shirov could also have suffered in silence with 16 a3 \textit{e7} 17 \textit{d2}.

16...\textit{xc5} 17 \textit{xc5} bxc5 18 \textit{b5} c4 19 \textit{c5} \textit{dc4} 20 \textit{d2} cxd3! 21 \textit{xb4} dxe2 22 \textit{b1}

Shirov should remember Nimzo-witsch’s words that passed pawns are “dangerous criminals” – best is to blockade with 22 \textit{e1} when Black is better but not clearly winning.
22...\textbf{b}6 23 \textbf{b}5

Attacking Black’s queen with a three piece battery – but as we’ll see, Kramnik doesn’t move her – maybe he didn’t “see” the threat?

23...\textbf{d}1!!

A great combination even in regular chess, but especially brilliant given that this was blindfold!

24 \textbf{x}b6 \textbf{x}b6 25 \textbf{f}2 e1\textbf{B}!+

It’s not every day one gets to promote to a bishop!

26 \textbf{w}xe1 \textbf{b}xe1 27 \textbf{b}xe1 \textbf{e}8 28 \textbf{g}4 \textbf{f}xg4 29 \textbf{f}xg4 \textbf{d}7

Black has an extra, passed pawn, and due to the ...\textbf{d}c3 capture in the opening, the white queenside pawns are still split. Kramnik wins with precise, all-seeing technique.

30 \textbf{e}3 \textbf{f}8+ 31 \textbf{e}2 \textbf{f}4 32 \textbf{h}3 \textbf{d}6 33 \textbf{d}3+ \textbf{d}4 34 \textbf{f}3 \textbf{e}4+ 35 \textbf{d}2 \textbf{f}4 36 \textbf{e}3 \textbf{b}5 37 \textbf{e}2 \textbf{d}5 38 \textbf{b}3 \textbf{c}6 39 \textbf{a}3 \textbf{e}4! 0-1

White resigns, as all versions of the coming pawn ending are lost for him. After 40 \textbf{c}3 (40 \textbf{b}1 \textbf{f}3 wins at once) Black plays 40...\textbf{f}3!! and then:

a) 41 \textbf{b}3 \textbf{x}b3 42 \textbf{c}xb3 \textbf{c}5 43 \textbf{a}4 (43 \textbf{e}3 \textbf{c}4 44 \textbf{b}xc4+ \textbf{x}c4 45 \textbf{e}xe4 \textbf{b}3 is similar) 43...\textbf{b}xa4 44 \textbf{b}xa4 \textbf{c}4 and in both lines Black gets a winning outside passed pawn.

b) 41 \textbf{d}2 \textbf{x}c3 42 \textbf{x}c3 \textbf{g}5 43 \textbf{b}3 (or 43 \textbf{d}2 \textbf{d}4 44 \textbf{e}2 \textbf{c}3 45 \textbf{d}1 \textbf{b}2 46 \textbf{d}2 \textbf{xa}3 wins) \textbf{e}3 44 \textbf{c}3 \textbf{e}4 and this time it’s the e-pawn that wins.

c) 41 \textbf{x}f3 \textbf{xf}3+ 42 \textbf{x}f3 \textbf{c}4 43 \textbf{f}4 (or 43 \textbf{e}2 \textbf{c}3 44 \textbf{d}1 \textbf{b}2 and White’s split queenside pawns, a legacy of the opening, are fatal – Black wins the a-pawn and will soon create a winning outside passed pawn) 43...\textbf{c}3 44 \textbf{e}5 \textbf{c}5 and Black wins both races. The long race goes as follows: 45 \textbf{e}6 \textbf{xc}2 46 \textbf{g}5 \textbf{g}6 47 \textbf{f}7 \textbf{b}3 48 \textbf{g}7 \textbf{c}4 49 \textbf{h}7 \textbf{c}3 50 \textbf{x}g6 \textbf{c}2 51 \textbf{h}4 \textbf{c}1\textbf{c} 52 \textbf{h}5 \textbf{xa}3 53 \textbf{h}6 \textbf{b}4 54 \textbf{h}7 \textbf{c}3 55 \textbf{f}7 \textbf{b}3 56 \textbf{g}6 \textbf{b}2 57 \textbf{g}7 \textbf{b}1\textbf{c} 58 \textbf{g}8\textbf{c} \textbf{f}5+ 59 \textbf{e}7 \textbf{c}7+ 60 \textbf{e}8 \textbf{fc}8 mate! The short race is no better for White: 45 \textbf{d}6 \textbf{c}4 46 \textbf{c}5 \textbf{xc}2 47 \textbf{xb}5 \textbf{b}3 and Black has time to queen and stop White’s a-pawn.
In general, as far as the Open Games go, non-threatening lines like the Vienna are easily met by Black. The Alekhine player should study these lines (rather than trying to make 2...d5 work) and will then be able to face the popular but not so dangerous 2 \( \text{Qc3} \) with confidence.

We now proceed to the even more miserable (for White) 2 d3, which is far more popular than its objective merits would indicate.

\[ \text{Game 72} \]

\[ \text{M.Todorcevic-M.Tal} \]

\[ \text{Marseilles 1989} \]

1 e4 \( \text{Qf6} \)

The fearless Tal boldly essays Alekhine’s Defence, willing to let his knight be attacked in the hope of eventual counter-attack – and then...

2 d3

Blah.

“A very tame continuation, which does not offer prospects of any opening advantage” – Alekhine.

2...e5

Naturally other moves are possible; Alekhine himself not only played the text here, but also 2...c5, transposing to the Sicilian (and won against Sir George Thomas) – but that is a bit outside of our repertoire. While almost anything could be played against White’s pitifully passive move, I recommend the text as simplest and best.

3 \( \text{Qf3} \)

“There is not even a semblance of an advantage for White” – Alekhine.

For the “only logical continuation” 3 f4 (Alekhine again) see the next game.

From a modern perspective, I should point out that White’s second move is often a prelude to what might be called “extreme defensive chess” which is very popular among young players and on the internet. For example, a recent blitz game of mine continued 3 c3 d5 4 \( \text{wc2} \) (defence) 4...\( \text{Qc6} \) 5 \( \text{Qe2} \) g6 6 \( \text{Qg3} \) (more defence) 6...\( \text{Qg7} \) and Black is clearly better, though it took until move 47 to register the 0-1, NN-Taylor, Internet (blitz) 2009.

Of course playing like this is nonsense from any point of view where White tries to obtain the advantage in the opening (indeed White is evidently worse in this sample by move 6), but if the White player is aiming for a draw he may sometimes reach a successful outcome, as the solid defensive structure can be hard to break down.

I would advise playing like Tal
against such lines and resist trying to win in under 10 moves – as we will see in the main game, the wizard from Riga builds up carefully and waits to smash his opponent until move 18!

3...c6 4 e2

White plays for the reversed Hanham Philidor – hardly terrifying.

Another possibility is a reversed Pirc with 4 g3 d5 (also good, and shorter, was 4...g6 5 c2 g7 6 0-0 0-0 7 c3 d5 8 c2 h6 9 b4 a6 10 b3 e6 ½-½ J.Seret-B.Finegold, Cappelle la Grande 1991 – an easy success for White) 5 bd2 c5 6 g2 dxe4 7 dxe4 0-0 8 0-0 a5 ...d6 25 d3 g7 (Black is a little better due to the his superior bishop and queenside play, though as we'll see, White's "relentless defence" manages to hold the draw) 26 fe3 xe3 27 xe3 b6 28 f1 a5 29 h4 c4 30 e2 a5 31 b4 c4 32 c2 b5 33 e2 c6 34 d3 xd3 35 xd3 xd3 36 xd3 c4 37 f3 f5 38 f2 f6 39 g4 h6 40 e2 fxg4 41 f6 g4 e6 42 c5+ d6 43 d3 b6 44 g5 hxg5 45 hxg5 d7 46 e1 c5 47 e6 e6 48 f3 f4 49 d2 h3 50 e3 c5 51 e2 c4 52 e3 f4 53 e1 e7 54 d2 d7 55 e3 d6 56 d2 h3 57 f3 f2 58 e3 d3 59 d2 d6 60 e1 f2 61 e3 h3 62 f3 f4 63 d2 d6 64 e1 e6 65 f3 c5 66 e3 d3 67 d2 c5 ½-½ M.Lazic-J.Petronic, Ulcinj 1997 – a difficult success for White!

4...d5 5 bd2

(obviously Black has no problems; Fritz even gives the second player a 0.22 advantage, which admittedly is not too much, but shows that Black is at least equal without doing anything but making simple, logical moves) 9 h3 a4 10 a3 e7 11 c3 d8 12 h4 g6 13 f3 a5 14 e1 e8 15 b1 e6 16 f1 b3 17 e3 xe3 18 xe3 d6 19 f3 c4 20 e2 f6 21 e1 d1 22 d1 d8 23 xd8+ xd8 24 e1

5...g6

This is good and solid, but there's nothing wrong with accepting White's invitation to a main line reversed Philidor with 5...c5: an extra tempo in this slow defence doesn't mean very much.
What is very interesting in the following game is that Black is GM Christian Bauer, author of *The Philidor Files* in which he advocates this defence for Black – yet here he takes the “White” side and demolishes his favourite opening while having a tempo less! 5...c5 6 0-0 0-0 7 c3 a5 8 a4 e8 9 h3 a7 10 e1 h6 11 f1 e6 12 b3 d7 13 b2 ad8 (Black has calmly developed and stands better – soon the French GM starts a vicious attack) 14 b1 h5 15 b4 dxe4 16 dxe4 f4 17 b5 xh3!! 18 gxh3 xh3+ 19 h2 (if 19 xh3 xhx3 20 bxc6 e6 mates) 19...f4 20 bxc6 g4 21 e3 e6 22 d4 h4+ 23 g1 edx4 24 cxd4 g6+ 25 g3 xg3+ 26 fxg3 xg3+ 27 h1 h4+ 28 g1 edx4! 0-1 T.Haab-C. Bauer, Vandoeuvre 2004.

6 0-0 g7 7 c3 a5 8 a4 0-0 9 e1 e8 10 f1 b6

![Chess diagram](attachment:image_url)

As usual, Black is already slightly better with his greater central control, plus the white weakness at d3 which Tal’s last move targeted.

11 edx5 d5 12 b3 f4 13 e4 e6 14 c2 d5 15 g3 h6 16 g2 d7 17 ed2 ad8 18 c4

Now Tal decides he has waited long enough!

18...db4!!

A stunning Tal combination, based on several tactical motifs: The white rooks are at a forking distance; the white knight on c4 is insecure; the white queen is the only good defender of the queenside and, once gone, Black has numerous attacking chances on that (for White) undeveloped side of the board; and finally, the weakness at d3 is crucial to the whole thing.

The combination reminds me of a similar Alekhine demolition: 1 e4 e5 2 df3 c6 3 b5 a6 4 a4 d6 5 0-0 d7 6 c3 g6 7 d4 g7 8 dxe5 dxe5 9 e3 f6 10 bd2 e7 11 b4 b6 12 h3 0-0 13 b3 a5 14 b5 d8 15 a4 b7 16 g5 dc5 17 d5 ad8 18 dc4 h6 19 xf6 xf6 20 wc1 g7 21 we3 xa4! (“The decisive combination, quite in Alekhine’s style: a seemingly solid position is quickly broken up,” writes Imre Konig in *Chess From Morphy to Botvinnik*) 22
Alekhine Alert!

\[ \text{Hxa4 Hxb5 23 Haa1 Hxd5 24 exd5 Hxc4 25 Hfd1 Hd8 26 We4 Hb3 27 Hd2 Hc5 28 Hxe5 Hxc3 0-1 E.Sergeant-A.Alekhine, Margate 1938. Poor Sergeant! Alekhine hammered him in Game 3 too!} \]

And now back to Tal’s combative fury.

19 cxb4 Hxb4 20 Wc3 Hxd3!

To exchange queens after sacrificing a piece is rare, but Tal sees the essence of the position: White’s queenside is defenceless without his queen.

21 Ha3 e4

With every piece attacking, Black is winning, despite the material deficit.

22 Wxd3 Hxd3 23 Hxe4 Hxc1 24 Hxc1 Hxb2

The crucial tactical point is revealed.

25 Hxc7 Hd1+ 26 Hf1 Hxe1+ 27 Hxe1 Hxa3

Winning with an extra pawn and the two bishops is not exactly a strain for Tal.

28 Hd3 Hd8 29 Hf1 Hf5 30 Hc3 Hb4 31 Hb3

If 31 Hxb4 axb4 32 Hb3, 32...Hd4 followed by ...He6 wins.

\[ \text{31...Hd4 32 f3 Hd7 33 Hf2 Hxa4 34 Hb2 He7 35 He3 Hd6 36 He5 Hd1 37 Hc4 He1+ 38 He2 Hc5+ 39 Hd3 Hxe2 40 Hxe2 Hg7 41 Hxf7 He8 42 He5 Hd6 0-1} \]

White resigns in view of 43 f4 b5 44 Hd5 a4 and the pawns roll through.

It’s difficult for me to understand why White would play an opening (2 d3) where he is barely equal and often worse after any reasonable moves by Black, but as an Alekhine player you will get this, as I have myself (see the note to move 7 in the following game).

---

**Game 73**

**G.Maróczy-A. Alekhine**

**New York 1924**

1 e4

It occurred to me that, while the position after 1...Hf6 2 d3 is quite common (as people will make any kind of bad move to avoid the “dreaded” Alekhine’s Defence), I didn’t think anyone would play 1 e4 e5 2 d3 — so I
looked it up in the Mega. To my amazement, this too is quite a common move, and there is even a strong player, the Russian IM Vorotnikov, who plays this at every opportunity and reaches the key second move position from 1 e4 e5 2 d3 f6, as well as the Alekhine order 1 e4 f6 2 d3 e5 — and scores a perfectly reasonable 55% with it. Of course the great majority of his games are draws, but he wins now and then — he even beat Kengis! — some of his typical draws and the Kengis win are referenced in the notes.

1...f6 2 d3

There are 1778 games with this in the database! As you might guess, even with Vorotnikov’s help White scores only 48% overall with this move, but that’s close enough to fifty to encourage the legion of “please let me draw with White” players!

2...e5 3 f4

At least in this historical game Maróczy tries “the only logical continuation” (as Alekhine stated).

3...c6

Vorotnikov Draw #1: 3...d5?! 4 fxe5 g4 5 exd5 xe5 6 d4 b4 7 f3 g4 8 e2 wxd5 9 0-0 xc3 10 bxc3 xf3 11 xf3 xf3+ 12 xf3 looks slightly better for White, as the white bishop is stronger than the black knight and the open files for the rooks outweigh the doubled pawns. In fact this is a typical Vorotnikov position, where he either wins or draws. Note that Black starts bravely with the Alekhine’s, continues boldly with the gambit 3...d5 — and then, after all that, must defend a plus equals position and hope to draw! So I don’t recommend this line for Black, but rather Alekhine’s main line, 3...c6.

Going back to the referenced game, Black toughed it out and made his draw after 12...xf3 13 xf3 0-0 14 xf4 d7 15 e1 xe1 16 xe1+ xe8 17 xc7 c8 18 d6 xc3 19 xe3 xf6 20 e2 b5 21 b4 c8 22 c3 d5 23 e5 xb4 24 cxb4 a6 25 a4 bxa4 26 a5 ef8 27 xa6 c3 28 xa4 1/2-1/2 V.Vorotnikov-S.Galdunts, Würzburg 1992.

4 f3

White has two important alternatives here, 4 fxe5 and 4 c3 — let’s take them in turn:

a) 4 fxe5 leads to an amusing analytical argument across many years. In his famous tournament book, New York 1924, Alekhine comments, “White evidently gets nothing from 4 fxe5 xe5 5 d4 g6 6 e5 e4 followed by ...d7-d5”; while exactly 80 years later, John Cox
wrote in his _Starting Out: Alekhine's Defence_ that, after 5 d4

"Retreating must be bad" (so much for Alekhine's 5...\(\mathcal{Q}g6!\)) and gives the piece sac 5...\(\mathcal{Q}xe4\) 6 \(\mathcal{W}e2\) (not 6 dxe5 \(\mathcal{W}h4+\) 7 g3 \(\mathcal{Q}xg3\) 8 \(\mathcal{Q}f3\) \(\mathcal{W}e4+\) and Black wins) 6...d5 7 dxe5 \(\mathcal{W}h4+\) 8 g3 \(\mathcal{Q}xg3\) 9 \(\mathcal{Q}f3\) (9 hxg3 is worth considering) 9...\(\mathcal{Q}xe2+\) (if 9...\(\mathcal{W}h5\), 10 hxg3! is strong, now that White has the knight development tempo: after 10...\(\mathcal{W}xh1\) 11 \(\mathcal{Q}g5\) White is better with two active pieces for the rook) 10 \(\mathcal{Q}xh4\) \(\mathcal{Q}xc1\).

Cox stops here, with the evaluation that Black has compensation with three pawns for the piece, but after the plausible follow-up 11 \(\mathcal{Q}d2\) g5 12 \(\mathcal{Q}g2\) \(\mathcal{Q}g7\) 13 \(\mathcal{Q}xc1\) \(\mathcal{Q}xe5\) 14 c3 I prefer White, as I see some good blockading knights and only one passed pawn for Black – in other words, it looks like more of a middlegame position to me, in which the piece should outweigh the three pawns.

I'm going to have to go with the World Champion on this one! Returning to our first variation, Alekhine's idea was tested in the following game: 4 fxe5 \(\mathcal{Q}xe5\) 5 d4 (for 5 \(\mathcal{Q}c3\), see below) 5...\(\mathcal{Q}g6\) 6 e5 (not 6 \(\mathcal{Q}d3\) \(\mathcal{Q}xe4!\), based on the check at h4) 6...\(\mathcal{Q}e4\) 7 \(\mathcal{Q}d3\)

7...d5 (or 7...\(\mathcal{W}h4+!\)? 8 g3 \(\mathcal{Q}xg3\) 9 \(\mathcal{Q}f3\) \(\mathcal{W}h3\) 10 \(\mathcal{Q}g1\) \(\mathcal{Q}h5\), when White's best is 11 \(\mathcal{Q}f1\) \(\mathcal{W}f5\) 12 \(\mathcal{Q}d3\) \(\mathcal{W}h3\) with a draw according to Fritz) 8 \(\mathcal{Q}f3\) \(\mathcal{Q}e7\) 9 c4 \(\mathcal{Q}g4\) 10 0-0 0-0 11 \(\mathcal{Q}c3\) \(\mathcal{Q}xc3\) 12 bxc3 c5 13 \(\mathcal{B}b1\) b6 14 \(\mathcal{Q}e3\) \(\mathcal{B}c8\) 15 \(\mathcal{W}a4\) \(\mathcal{B}c7\) 16 \(\mathcal{B}b1\) \(\mathcal{B}d7\) 17 \(\mathcal{W}d1\)? (White blunders; 17 \(\mathcal{W}b3\) with equality is correct) 17...\(\mathcal{X}xd4\) 18 \(\mathcal{O}xd4\) \(\mathcal{X}xc4\) (Black picks off a pawn) 19 \(\mathcal{B}b1\) \(\mathcal{B}h4\) 20 g3 \(\mathcal{Q}e7\) 21 \(\mathcal{H}h5\) \(\mathcal{H}c5\) 22 \(\mathcal{Q}f3\) \(\mathcal{A}a5\) 23 \(\mathcal{G}g5\) \(\mathcal{B}c5+\) 24 \(\mathcal{E}e3\) \(\mathcal{E}e7\) 25 \(\mathcal{Q}g5\) f6 26 \(\mathcal{O}xf6\) \(\mathcal{O}xf6\) 27 \(\mathcal{D}d1\)? \(\mathcal{X}g5\) 0-1 M.Schwamberger-S.Maus, German Team Cup 1991. White can only resign, as 28 \(\mathcal{Q}xe5\) \(\mathcal{Q}xf1+\) 29 \(\mathcal{Q}xf1\) \(\mathcal{X}g5\) 30 \(\mathcal{X}xd7\) \(\mathcal{W}f6+\) wins the queen.

It seems that one can follow Alekhine with confidence, and aim to outplay the opponent in the middlegame, rather than forcing the play in the opening.

Instead of the contentious 5 d4, White can simply develop with 5 \(\mathcal{Q}c3\),
as played by Madame de Rémusat vs. Napoleon, which can lead to interesting developments. I have a rather naughty postcard that presents a view of the lovely and quite naked Madame playing Napoleon, the latter in full uniform – in such a situation I would have been rather distracted, and the great general himself apparently was affected: 5...\(\text{\textcopyright}f4\) (Napoleon commits his cavalry too early – 5...d5 was correct, transposing to variation 'b' below) 6 d4 \(\text{\textcopyright}h4+\) 7 g3 \(\text{\textcopyright}f6\) 8 \(\text{\textcopyright}h3\) (Madame herself appears quite flustered; she could win a piece here with 8 \(\text{\textcopyright}f3!\) 8...\(\text{\textcopyright}f3+\) 9 \(\text{\textcopyright}e2\) \(\text{\textcopyright}xd4+\) 10 \(\text{\textcopyright}d3\) \(\text{\textcopyright}e5+\) 11 \(\text{\textcopyright}xd4\) \(\text{\textcopyright}c5+\) (having gained the initiative, Napoleon strikes boldly) 12 \(\text{\textcopyright}xc5\) \(\text{\textcopyright}b6+\) 13 \(\text{\textcopyright}d5\) \(\text{\textcopyright}d6\) and mate occurred in Madame de Rémusat-Napoleon, Paris 1802.

b) 4 \(\text{\textcopyright}c3\) d5 (Black strikes back in the centre; note that Vorotnikov’s favourite move order to reach this position is 1 e4 e5 2 d3 \(\text{\textcopyright}c6\) 3 \(\text{\textcopyright}c3\) \(\text{\textcopyright}f6\) 4 f4 d5) 5 fxe5 \(\text{\textcopyright}xe5\) and now we have a further two branches:

b1) 6 d4 is Vorotnikov Draw #2: 6...\(\text{\textcopyright}c6\) 7 e5 \(\text{\textcopyright}e4\) (once again we see this typical Alekhine manoeuvre) 8 \(\text{\textcopyright}xe4\) dxe4 9 \(\text{\textcopyright}e3\) \(\text{\textcopyright}e7\) 10 \(\text{\textcopyright}e2\) \(\text{\textcopyright}g4\) (Black is quickly better in view of his lead in development, but accuracy is required) 11 c3 0-0 12 \(\text{\textcopyright}c2\) \(\text{\textcopyright}h4+\) 13 g3 \(\text{\textcopyright}f3\) 14 \(\text{\textcopyright}g1\) \(\text{\textcopyright}g5\) 15 \(\text{\textcopyright}f4\) \(\text{\textcopyright}a5?\) (too slow! – 15....\(\text{\textcopyright}xf4\) is correct, immediately starting the attack: since 16 \(\text{\textcopyright}xf4?!\) \(\text{\textcopyright}xd4!\) 17 cxd4 \(\text{\textcopyright}xd4\) gives Black a tremendous position, White has to expose his king with 16 gxf4 and after 17...\(\text{\textcopyright}h4+\) 17 \(\text{\textcopyright}g3\) \(\text{\textcopyright}e7!\) Black is better with the threat of ...\(\text{\textcopyright}f5\) – but not 17...\(\text{\textcopyright}h2?\) 18 \(\text{\textcopyright}h3\), trapping the queen) 16 \(\text{\textcopyright}a4\) \(\text{\textcopyright}xe2\) 17 \(\text{\textcopyright}xe2\) \(\text{\textcopyright}c6\) 18 \(\text{\textcopyright}h3\) \(\text{\textcopyright}xf4\) 19 gxf4 \(\text{\textcopyright}h4\) 20 \(\text{\textcopyright}g3\) \(\text{\textcopyright}xf4\) 21 \(\text{\textcopyright}f1\) (Vorotnikov alertly completes his development and finds counterplay) 21...\(\text{\textcopyright}h4\) 22 \(\text{\textcopyright}b3\) g6 23 e6 fxe6 24 \(\text{\textcopyright}xe6+\) \(\text{\textcopyright}g7\) 25 \(\text{\textcopyright}d7+\) \(\text{\textcopyright}e7\) 26 \(\text{\textcopyright}e3\) \(\text{\textcopyright}ae8\) 27 \(\text{\textcopyright}xf8\) \(\text{\textcopyright}xf8\) 28 \(\text{\textcopyright}xe7+\) \(\text{\textcopyright}xe7\) 29 \(\text{\textcopyright}g2\) \(\text{\textcopyright}g7\) 30 \(\text{\textcopyright}xe4\) \(\text{\textcopyright}xe4+\) 31 \(\text{\textcopyright}xe4\) \(\text{\textcopyright}d8\) ½–½ V.Vorotnikov-S.Gavritenkov, Tula 1995. Notice that the final position is actually plus equals – with a modern time control, sans draw offer, you would have to defend this is in sudden death, which would not be at all easy!

So this shows that, while the opening was far from threatening, and Black should have come out on top (see the note to move 15), a bit of carelessness and imprecise timing could leave you with a tough ending to hold.

b2) 6 exd5 is Vorotnikov Draw #3: 6...\(\text{\textcopyright}b4\) 7 \(\text{\textcopyright}f4\) \(\text{\textcopyright}g6\) 8 \(\text{\textcopyright}e2+\) \(\text{\textcopyright}d7!!\)
An amazing move by a world-class player; suddenly White is in difficulties, though he hangs on and makes his draw. When Kengis had this position as Black (Würzburg 1994) he failed to venture the wild king move, played the “safe” 8...\textit{e}7, and eventually lost to Vorotnikov! One sees that Kengis (recall his similar loss to Jonny Hector mentioned in a note to Game 69) was uncomfortable in these Alekhine Declined positions. But you have to face them! It’s very important that the player about to take up Alekhine’s Defence be as prepared for 2...\textit{c}3 and 2 d3 as for 2...\textit{e}5.

Now back to the game after Black’s 8...\textit{d}7: 9 \textit{f}3 \textit{xf}4 10 \textit{xf}4 \textit{xd}5! 11 \textit{d}4 (if 11 \textit{xf}7+ \textit{e}7+ 12 \textit{xe}7+ \textit{xe}7 and Black’s lead in development gives him more than enough for the pawn) 11...\textit{g}5 12 \textit{f}3 \textit{e}3+ 13 \textit{xe}3 \textit{xe}3 14 \textit{d}2 \textit{xf}1+ 15 \textit{hx}f1 \textit{f}6 16 a3 \textit{d}6 17 \textit{e}4 \textit{f}4+ 18 \textit{c}3 \textit{b}6 19 g3 ½-½ V.Vorotnikov-W.Unzicker, Moscow 1991. Black’s two bishops might look like a significant advantage, but the white knights are well placed in the centre – still, I would play on with Black.

4...\textit{d}5!

“This bold pawn sacrifice assures Black at least an even game” – Alekhine.

5 \textit{exd}5

5...\textit{fxe}5 is worse, as Alekhine pointed out, but the fearless Vorotnikov nonetheless made Draw #4 on the white side of this! 5...\textit{dxe}4 6 \textit{exf}6 \textit{exf}3 7 \textit{xf}3 \textit{d}4+ 8 \textit{e}4+ \textit{e}6

Alekhine leaves off here, stating that White’s game is “clearly unfavourable”. Vorotnikov calmly continues
9 \( \text{d}1 \) (instead, 9 fxg7 develops Black:
9...\( \text{x}xg7 \) 10 \( \text{d}3 \) 0-0 11 \( \text{e}3 \) \( \text{f}5 \) 12
\( \text{c}5 \) \( \text{xb}2 \) 13 \( \text{b}1 \) \( \text{e}8 \) 14 \( \text{e}2 \) \( \text{c}3+ \) 15
\( \text{d}1 \) \( \text{g}5 \) 16 \( \text{w}4 \) \( \text{x}xg4 \) 17 \( \text{x}xg4 \) \( \text{e}3+! \)
18 \( \text{c}1 \) \( \text{x}xg4 \) 19 \( \text{b}3 \) \( \text{g}7 \) 20 \( \text{b}5 \) \( \text{d}5 \)
0-1 M.Kraft-E.Leimeister, Griesheim 2002, was a quick and savage crush)
9...\( \text{w}xf6 \) 10 \( \text{f}4 \) 0-0-0 11 \( \text{e}5 \) \( \text{w}f2 \) 12
\( \text{d}2 \) \( \text{c}5 \) 13 \( \text{g}3 \) \( \text{w}f6 \) 14 \( \text{c}3 \) \( \text{f}5 \) 15 \( \text{d}4 \)
\( \text{g}3 \) 16 \( \text{hx}g3 \) \( \text{x}d4! \) 17 \( \text{d}3 \) (if 17
\( \text{cxd}4 \) \( \text{x}d4 \) and Black will double rooks with a winning attack) 17...\( \text{b}6?! \) (a
little more boldness would have won the game; the bishop should keep
sac'ing itself! – after 17...\( \text{xc}3! \) 18 \( \text{bxc}3 \)
\( \text{w}x\text{c}3 \) 19 \( \text{b}1 \) \( \text{c}6 \) 20 \( \text{e}2 \) \( \text{h}e8 \) Black has a
decisive attack) 18 \( \text{c}2 \) \( \text{x}d3 \) 19
\( \text{w}x\text{d}3 \) \( \text{f}5 \) 20 \( \text{e}4 \) \( \text{g}6? \) (this blocks the
g-pawn, a key element in the attack; even now Black wins with
20...\( \text{w}e6 \) 21 \( \text{a}1 \) \( \text{e}8 \) 22 \( \text{h}4 \) \( \text{g}5 \) etc) 21
\( \text{a}1 \) \( \text{e}8 \) 22 \( \text{h}4 \) (the rook cannot be attacked!) 22...\( \text{w}e6 \) 23 \( \text{f}4 \) \( \text{b}8 \) 24 \( \text{g}4 \)
\( \text{g}6 \) 25 \( \text{e}2 \) \( \text{c}6 \) 26 \( \text{w}f3 \) \( \text{c}7 \) 27 \( \text{f}5 \) ½-½
Vorotnikov gets his draw again, even
though Black should still play on with
27...\( \text{w}xa2 \).

It's almost impossible to believe the
way Vorotnikov draws these worse or,
as in the game above, dead lost posi-
tions – but as mentioned at the begin-
ning of the main game, he even makes
a plus score with his opening, and he
did beat Kengis! I think the key element
is that 2 \( \text{d}3 \) is his "home ground", and
even when his position is at its worst,
he still feels comfortable. And one
should note, when Black fails to put
him away, Voro often reaches superior
e endings.

5...\( \text{x}d5 \) 6 \( \text{f}xe5 \)

Weaker is 6 \( \text{dxe}5 \) \( \text{dxe}5 \) 7 \( \text{f}xe5 \) \( \text{c}5 \)
8 \( \text{w}f3 \) (the variation 8 \( \text{c}3 \) 0-0 9 \( \text{d}4 \)
\( \text{w}h4! \) with a winning attack shows why
White should not have exchanged his
king-protecting knight!) 8...0-0 9 \( \text{c}3 \) \( \text{f}6 \)
10 \( \text{e}6 \) \( \text{xe}6 \) 11 \( \text{d}4 \) \( \text{b}6 \) (11...\( \text{e}8 \) looks
even stronger) 12 \( \text{d}3 \) \( \text{f}5 \) 13 0-0 \( \text{c}5 \) 14
\( \text{c}4 \) \( \text{b}4 \) 15 \( \text{d}5 \) \( \text{x}d5! \) (a clever combina-
tion) 16 \( \text{cxd}5 \) \( \text{x}d3 \) (Black picks up a
pawn, as the knight is immune due to
...\( \text{c}4+ \)) 17 \( \text{c}3 \) \( \text{c}4+ \) and Black went on to
win in E.Messina-R.Visintin, Asiao
1995.

6...\( \text{g}4 \)

7 \( \text{e}2 \)

Besides this natural defence to the
pin, it's worth taking a look at a couple of
alternatives:

a) 7 \( \text{c}3 \) might pass for a plausible
development move, except for one
slight hitch: it loses by force! I had this
position in a rapid game, and without
really thinking (not realizing I was al-

265
ready winning!} played 7...\textit{b4?}, and after 8 \textit{d2} the momentary tactic was gone and the game was eventually drawn in M.Sokolovsky-T.Taylor, Los Angeles (rapid) 2005.

Instead, Black wins at once with 7...\textit{xf3}! 8 \textit{xf3} (of course not 8 \textit{gx} 9 \textit{h4+} 9 \textit{d2} \textit{b4} 10 \textit{e1} \textit{d4} and Black wins major material; 10 a3 \textit{d4}! is the same debacle) 8...\textit{db4} and White perishes due to his exposed king and the weakness of c2. As 9 \textit{db} 1 \textit{xc2+} allows Black to recover his pawn with a winning attack, while 9 \textit{d1} and 9 \textit{d2} both lose to 9...\textit{xc2+}! with a devastating fork in prospect, White can only protect the c-pawn with the queen. But after 9 \textit{d1} (9 \textit{f2} \textit{d4} is about the same, minus a flight square for the white king) 9...\textit{d4} Black crashes through; e.g. 10 \textit{f2} \textit{xc2} 11 \textit{b} 1 \textit{d4+} 12 \textit{g} 3 h 5 and Black will collect material soon, as he continues to harass the white king.

If you play Alekhine’s sharp counter-attack with 4...d5, you must be mentally ready to attack at once, as you could have a winning position by move 7! And if you do, don’t miss it like I did!

b) 7 \textit{c3} is analyzed by Alekhine, though not quite correctly according to the silicon serpent. Alekhine gives 7...\textit{xe} 5 8 \textit{e} 2 \textit{d} 6 9 \textit{d} 4 \textit{xf3} 10 \textit{xf3} \textit{h4+} 11 \textit{d1} 0-0-0 12 \textit{dxe} 5 \textit{e} 8 “with a penetrating attack”, but \textit{Fritz} refutes this with 13 \textit{g} 2! threatening both \textit{h} 3+ and \textit{g} 5. Correct is 7...\textit{d7!} 8 \textit{d} 4 0-0-0 9 \textit{e} 2 \textit{f} 6 and Black has more than enough for the pawn, as he breaks up White’s centre and opens the game to exploit his big lead in development. 7...\textit{xf3} 8 \textit{xf3} \textit{h4+}

9 \textit{f1}!!

“Neglecting to castle is a blunder with serious consequences” – Alekhine. Maybe the world champion overstates the case a bit; White is still alive, even if his game is practically very difficult (see the note to move 11).

Nonetheless, 9 \textit{g} 3 is certainly better. Although Black players, generally following Alekhine’s analysis, have done well (as the practical examples show), I think I have found the best (but very rare) continuation for White, which shows this line is playable for the first player, when a double-edged queenless middlegame can result. The critical point comes after 9...\textit{d4} 10 \textit{e} 2 0-0-0 11 \textit{c3} \textit{xe} 5 which is, so far, Alekhine’s analysis. He now gives 12 0-0 \textit{xe} 2 13 \textit{xe} 2 \textit{e} 7 intending ...\textit{f6} (Black plans to mousetrap a white rook if it takes on \textit{f7}) and writes, “with practically an even game.” Both sides have alterna-
tives around this point – let’s take a look:

![Chess diagram](image)

a) 12 0-0 \(\text{wxe2} 13 \text{exe2} f6\) (simpler than Alekhine’s recommendation, for after 13...\(\text{exe}7 14 \text{xf7} \text{xf6}\), it’s true the white rook is trapped, but it’s also not clear how Black captures it, as White has counterplay with 15 \(\text{e}f4\) 14 \(\text{d}d2\) (14 \(\text{e}f3\) is better) 14...g6 15 \(\text{c}c4\) b5 16 \(\text{e}e3\) \(\text{c}c5\) 17 d4 \(\text{xd}4!\) 18 cxd4 \(\text{x}d4\) and Black recovered his material with interest and eventually won the endgame in I.Novak-M.Konopka, Slovakian Ch., Topolcianky 1993.

b) 12 \(\text{wxe}5\) \(\text{exe}5\) 13 \(\text{e}e2\) \(\text{c}5\) restrained White’s centre and Black stood well in T.Civin-P.Freisler, Czech Ch., Olomouc 1995, though the game ended in a draw.

c) 12 d4! (in my opinion this is White’s best move, immediately activating his centre pawn) 12...\(\text{wxe}2+\) 13 \(\text{x}e2\) g6! (weaker is 13...\(\text{exe}8\) 14 \(\text{f}2\) \(\text{d}6\) 15 \(\text{f}3\) \(\text{f}6\) 16 \(\text{d}2\) \(\text{d}7\) 17 \(\text{c}4\) \(\text{e}4+\) 18 \(\text{g}2\) f5 19 \(\text{x}d6\) \(\text{x}d6\) 20 \(\text{f}4\) h6 21 h4, when White certainly has some advantage in view of his two bishops, and Black soon blundered and lost in H.Dutschak-D.Krenz, Würzburg 1997 – the only game in the database where 12 d4 was played) 14 0-0 \(\text{f}5\) 15 \(\text{f}3\) \(\text{g}7\) gives rise to a double-edged position where the black knights balance the white centre with Chigorin-style restraint. There is too much pressure on d4 for White to advance with c3-c4; meanwhile Black has consolidated and can look for counterplay with his kingside pawn majority. This line might represent best play for both sides, but is untried in practice.

9...0-0-0 10 \(\text{c}3\) \(\text{c}5\)

Black ignores the threat to his knight, in view of a slightly larger one on f2!

11 \(\text{e}4\)

White’s last chance is 11 g3 \(\text{h}3+\) 12 \(\text{g}2\) \(\text{h}5+\) 13 \(\text{f}3\), when – as hard as this is to believe – I can’t find any advantage for Black. The best I see is 13...\(\text{xf}3+\) 14 \(\text{xf}3\) \(\text{db}4\) 15 \(\text{d}1\) \(\text{xe}5\) with equality.

11...\(\text{e}3+\) 12 \(\text{xe}3\) \(\text{xe}3\)

Now the “overpowering bishop”, as
Alekhine comments, gives Black a significant advantage despite the pawn less. One should note again that opposite-coloured bishops aid the attacker.

13 \textbf{We1 Wh6!}

Black can avoid the exchange of queens as he is unconcerned with regaining his pawn, but rather focused on mating the white king!

14 \textbf{Gg3 Dd4!}

Winning a piece, as after 20 \textbf{Wb4 a5! 21 Wxa5 Dxf3 the knight can’t be recaptured, and the “overpowering bishop” defends the check at b6!}

20 \textbf{Gh5 bxa4 21 Dxf4 Dxf4 22 c3 Dxf3}

23 Dxf3 Dxe5 24 Dxf7 Df8 0-1

“Decisive” says Alekhine, and this author and even the evil Fritz concur. White’s rooks are not playing (especially the king’s rook), while Black’s minor pieces are probably twice as active as their white counterparts. Alekhine easily brushes off White’s following desperate counter-attack, though passive defences would also fail; e.g. 15 \textbf{Wd1 He8 16 c3 Dxf3 17 Wxf3} (or 17 \textbf{gxh3 Dxe5 with a winning attack, since the white king position is even weaker than before) 17...Dxd3 18 Wf5+ Dd7 19 Dd1 Wa6+ 20 De2 We6 21 Wxe6 Dxe6 “with a winning ending” — Alekhine.

15 \textbf{Wb4 c6 16 Wa4 Db8 17 De1 He8 18 h4 Wf4 19 Dh3 b5!}

In this variation (essentially a reversed Philidor Counter-Gambit) Black gets tremendous attacking chances right out of the opening (note that I was objectively winning by move 7 and Alekhine had a decisive advantage by move 14). Vorotnikov loves this line for White, but in almost every game he has to come back from worse or dead – and yet, one has to admit that the line is playable! In the crucial note ‘c’ to the 9th move, I show that White can in fact equalize, which is quite a success in this variation!

Although the Alekhine player cannot play an Alekhine after 2 d3, one should not be unhappy, as you will get an easy game in the opening and might even win like Tal or Alekhine himself!
cover that this had actually happened, though by a different move order: note that White gets not a reversed Latvian (which would be a King’s Gambit) but rather a pure Latvian with White playing Black! This is achieved by the tempo loss given in the note above (f2-f3-f4) and was achieved in the actual game via 1 e3 e5 2 e4 ∆f6 3 f4 ∆xe4 4 ∆f3 reaching a critical Latvian position.

Nunn’s solution (for 1 e4 players facing the Latvian) is 1 e4 e5 2 ∆f3 f5 3 ∆xe5 ∆f6 (the same position with blindingly different colours) 4 ∆c4 fxe4 5 ∆c3! with the advantage, as detailed in his book *Secrets of Practical Chess*.

In the reversed variation (with the same tempo count), Black should play 4...∆c5 5 fxe5 ∆c6! with the advantage à la Nunn – but the stunned second player did not find this: 4...d5 5 d3 ∆c5 6 fxe5 ∆e6 7 c3 c5 8 ∆e2 ∆c6 9 ∆g3 ∆d7 10 ∆f3 ∆e7 11 ∆a3 a6 12 0-0 g5 13 ∆f2 0-0 14 ∆c2 ∆g7 15 d4 ∆f5 16 ∆e3 ∆g6 17 ∆g4 ∆e6 18 dxe5 h5 19 ∆f6+ ∆xf6 20 exf6 ∆xf6 21 ∆xg5! (White makes use of the Latvian f-file to land this sud-
den tactical blow, after which he has a clear advantage) 21...\textit{\textsuperscript{xf2+}} 22 \textit{\textsuperscript{xxf2}} \textit{\textsuperscript{xxc5}} 23 \textit{\textsuperscript{xe3}} \textit{\textsuperscript{de6}} 24 \textit{\textsuperscript{xf3}} \textit{\textsuperscript{Rad8}} 25 \textit{\textsuperscript{exe6}} fxe6 26 \textit{\textsuperscript{aaf1}} \textit{\textsuperscript{g7}} 27 \textit{\textsuperscript{b6}} \textit{\textsuperscript{d7}} 28 \textit{\textsuperscript{dd2}} \textit{\textsuperscript{de5}}? 29 \textit{\textsuperscript{d4}} \textit{\textsuperscript{ff5}} 30 \textit{\textsuperscript{xe1}} 1-0 S.Patzer-D.Emde, Willingen 2007. The wonderfully named Patzer scores the full point, as after 30...\textit{\textsuperscript{xf6}} 31 \textit{\textsuperscript{exe5}} \textit{\textsuperscript{exe5}} 32 \textit{\textsuperscript{exe2}} \textit{\textsuperscript{exe4}} 33 \textit{\textsuperscript{exe4}} \textit{\textsuperscript{exe4}} 34 \textit{\textsuperscript{exe4}} \textit{\textsuperscript{exe4}} 35 \textit{\textsuperscript{exe5}} \textit{\textsuperscript{exe5}} 36 \textit{\textsuperscript{exe5}} \textit{\textsuperscript{exe5}} 37 \textit{\textsuperscript{exe5}} \textit{\textsuperscript{exe5}} 38 \textit{\textsuperscript{exe5}} White easily wins the pawn ending.

But of course a little familiarity with Nunn’s analysis could go a long way, in the unlikely event that you will face a Latvian Gambit with Black!

Returning to the less entertaining dregs at the bottom of the barrel, beginner’s moves like 2 \textit{\textsuperscript{we2}} and 2 \textit{\textsuperscript{wef3}} have also been played, but they have no theoretical value. Black can always answer 2...e5 with a good game.

In fact, even after 2 \textit{\textsuperscript{c4}} Black can answer 2...e5, transposing to the Bishop’s Opening.

Bisguier played this way against the top Soviet GM Alexander Zaitsev at Tallinn 1971. After 1 e4 \textit{\textsuperscript{f6}} 2 \textit{\textsuperscript{c4}} e5 the comment was made that Zaitsev did not want any “Wild West” play in the opening that could result from 2...\textit{\textsuperscript{exe4}} 3 \textit{\textsuperscript{xex7+}}.

Unfortunately for Zaitsev, the result of his caution was that he quickly obtained a lost position, and only made a draw when Bisguier missed the win on move 20: 3 d3 c6 4 \textit{\textsuperscript{we2}} \textit{\textsuperscript{c5}} 5 \textit{\textsuperscript{c3}} b5 6 \textit{\textsuperscript{b3}} a5 7 a3 d6 8 f4 a4 9 \textit{\textsuperscript{a2}} \textit{\textsuperscript{wa5}} 10 fxe5 dxe5 11 \textit{\textsuperscript{d2}} \textit{\textsuperscript{g4}} 12 \textit{\textsuperscript{f3}} \textit{\textsuperscript{bd7}} 13 \textit{\textsuperscript{d5}} \textit{\textsuperscript{wa7}} 14 \textit{\textsuperscript{de3}} \textit{\textsuperscript{xe6}} 15 \textit{\textsuperscript{exe6}} fxe6 16 \textit{\textsuperscript{g5}} \textit{\textsuperscript{f8}} 17 \textit{\textsuperscript{g4}} h6 18 \textit{\textsuperscript{xf6+}} gxf6 19 \textit{\textsuperscript{wh5+}} \textit{\textsuperscript{d7}} 20 \textit{\textsuperscript{f3}} (20 \textit{\textsuperscript{xf7!}} should win for White) 20...\textit{\textsuperscript{d8}} 21 \textit{\textsuperscript{we2}} \textit{\textsuperscript{c8}} 22 \textit{\textsuperscript{ac1}} \textit{\textsuperscript{wg7}} 23 g3 \textit{\textsuperscript{g6}} 24 c4 \textit{\textsuperscript{wf7}} 25 \textit{\textsuperscript{wh3}} \textit{\textsuperscript{wd7}} 26 \textit{\textsuperscript{de1}} bxc4 27 \textit{\textsuperscript{xc4}} \textit{\textsuperscript{a7}} 28 \textit{\textsuperscript{a5}} \textit{\textsuperscript{df8}} 29 \textit{\textsuperscript{df3}} f5 30 \textit{\textsuperscript{d2}} fxe4 31 \textit{\textsuperscript{exe4}} \textit{\textsuperscript{f3}} 32 \textit{\textsuperscript{xc6+}} \textit{\textsuperscript{wb8}} 33 \textit{\textsuperscript{dd6}} \textit{\textsuperscript{exe3+}} 34 \textit{\textsuperscript{d2}} \textit{\textsuperscript{wb5}} 35 \textit{\textsuperscript{xc3}} \textit{\textsuperscript{df4}} 36 \textit{\textsuperscript{wf1}} \textit{\textsuperscript{xe2+}} 37 \textit{\textsuperscript{exe2}} \textit{\textsuperscript{exe2}} 38 \textit{\textsuperscript{exe2}} \textit{\textsuperscript{exe4}} 39 \textit{\textsuperscript{ff1}} ½-½.

2...\textit{\textsuperscript{exe4}}

I remember a long ago note in \textit{\textsuperscript{Chess Life}}: the American Grandmaster Arthur

Our hero Varga fearlessly takes on the Wild West!
This is the principled response: just take the centre pawn! Despite a ton of
games with this in the database, White
can only manage 45% after this simple
move. White must struggle to get his
pawn back, in the process giving up his
only developed piece while losing a
bunch of tempi with his queen.
3 \( \texttt{xf7}+ \texttt{xf7} \) 4 \( \texttt{wh5}+ \texttt{g6} \)

The attempt to keep the piece is ob-
viously suicidal: 4...
\( \texttt{ae6} \) 5 \( \texttt{wg4+ \texttt{d5} 6 \texttt{c4+ \texttt{d4} 7 \texttt{ae2+ \texttt{d3 8 \texttt{a3 \texttt{ac6} 9 \texttt{wf3}}}} \)
mate. But 4...
\( \texttt{g8} \) 5 \( \texttt{wd5+ \texttt{e6} 6 \texttt{xe4 d5}} \)
is also good; e.g. 7 \( \texttt{we2 c5 8 f4 \texttt{d6 9 d3 \texttt{h6 10 \texttt{xf3 \texttt{h7 11 0-0 \texttt{xf8 12 \texttt{e5 \texttt{d7} 13 c3 \texttt{xe5 14 fxe5 \texttt{xf1+ 15 \texttt{xf1 \texttt{e7}}}} \)}}}
(Black is already clearly better with a
good French structure, the two bishops,
and the safer king) 16 \( \texttt{g1 \texttt{d7 17 \texttt{d2 \texttt{we8 18 d4 cxd4 19 cxd4 \texttt{wg6 20 \texttt{xf1 \texttt{ac8 21 \texttt{wd1 \texttt{b5 22 \texttt{e3 \texttt{c2 23 \texttt{d2 \texttt{wd3 24 \texttt{xf1 \texttt{xd1 25 \texttt{xd1 \texttt{xb2 26 \texttt{d2 \texttt{b1 27 \texttt{f2 h5 28 g3 \texttt{g6 29 \texttt{g2 \texttt{xf1+ 30 \texttt{xf1 \texttt{xf1 31 \texttt{xf1 \texttt{g5 32 \texttt{f2 \texttt{f5 33 \texttt{e2 \texttt{e4 0-1 B.Vuckovic-}}}}}}}

\( 5 \texttt{wd5+ \texttt{e6 6 \texttt{xe4 d5}} \)

White had no reasonable alternative
lines against Black's simple play,
but the result is that Black is already
somewhat better in view of his central
control and two bishops.
7 \( \texttt{wf4+ \texttt{g8 8 \texttt{f3 \texttt{d6 9 \texttt{wh6}}}} \)

Self pinning with 9 \( \texttt{e5} \) doesn't
work so well: 9...
\( \texttt{we7 (9...\texttt{xe5 10 \texttt{xe5 \texttt{ac6 11 \texttt{we3 e5} is also good) 10 d4 \texttt{c6} 11 0-0 \texttt{d7 12 \texttt{d2 \texttt{f8 13 \texttt{we3 \texttt{xe5} 14 dxe5 \texttt{c5 15 \texttt{wd3 \texttt{f5} and a pawn falls.}}}}}}}
9...
\( \texttt{xf8 10 d4 \texttt{c6 11 c3 \texttt{d7 12 \texttt{xf8+ \texttt{xf8 13 b4 h6}}}} \)

14 0-0

If 14 \( \texttt{b5 \texttt{a5 15 \texttt{a3 \texttt{f5}} and Black
stands better with play on both sides of
the board.
14...\( \texttt{g5 15 \texttt{e1 \texttt{f5 16 \texttt{bd2 \texttt{h7 17 \texttt{f1 g4 18 \texttt{h4 \texttt{f7 19 g3 \texttt{hf8}}}}}} \)
Black methodically improves his posi-
tion.
20 \( \texttt{e2!} \texttt{e5?} \)

20...
\( \texttt{e8} \) might be stronger; e.g. 21
\( \texttt{e3 e5 22 \texttt{xd5 e6 with a clear plus.}} \)
21 \( \texttt{b5 \texttt{a5 22 \texttt{b1}} \)
22 dxe5 is White's best try, as after
Alekhine Alert!

22...\textbf{\textit{\texttt{x}}x\texttt{b}}5 23 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{b}}}2 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{x}}}f1 24 exd6 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{d}}}3 25 dxc7 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{x}}}c7 26 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{f}}}4! \textbf{\textit{\texttt{c}}}4 (26...\textbf{\textit{\texttt{x}}}c3 27 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{d}}}2 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{c}}}5 28 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{x}}}a5 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{x}}}a5 29 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{x}}}b7+ equalizing is White's point) 27 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{b}}}5 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{d}}}7 Black only has a small advantage.

22...\textbf{\textit{\texttt{c}}}4

32 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{b}}}5 gives White a slight edge, who has recovered his pawn and has two passed pawns.

\textbf{\textit{\texttt{d}}}3 33 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{e}}}2

Here 33 f5 is better, with some counterplay - this looks like time trouble.

33...d4! 0-1

Now Black has the ...e6-e5 break in for free and stands clearly better.

\textbf{\textit{\texttt{e}}}3 exd4 24 cxd4 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{e}}}8 25 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{b}}}3 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{e}}}4 26 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{g}}}2 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{x}}}d4 27 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{c}}}2 b6 28 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{b}}}1 h5 29 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{b}}}3 c6 30 bxc6

Black is a pawn up and has no reason to seek complications - so why does he sacrifice here?

30...\textbf{\textit{\texttt{e}}}6?

The natural 30...\textbf{\textit{\texttt{x}}}c6 is correct; e.g. 31 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{e}}}f5 (if 31 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{h}}}f5 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{x}}}e3+ 32 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{x}}}xe3 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{c}}}4 33 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{x}}}d6 d4+ 34 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{f}}}1 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{x}}}c2 35 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{x}}}d4 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{f}}}3 36 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{x}}}b1 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{d}}}7 or 35 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{f}}}7 dxe3 36 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{e}}}3 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{a}}}2 wins) 31...\textbf{\textit{\texttt{d}}}1 32 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{x}}}d6 d4+ 33 f3 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{x}}}xf3+ 34 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{x}}}f3 gxf3+ 35 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{x}}}f3 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{x}}}d6 36 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{x}}}xf7+ \textbf{\textit{\texttt{x}}}xf7 and Black has maintained his extra pawn into the ending.

31 f4! \textbf{\textit{\texttt{a}}}5

Not 31...gxf3+? 32 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{x}}}f3 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{e}}}4 33 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{g}}}5+ and White wins.

32 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{b}}}1

Now Black is winning again, as the strong passed pawn advances and the white pawn on c6 drops; e.g. 34 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{f}}}1 (it is too late for 34 f5 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{x}}}a2 35 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{x}}}a2 dxe3 36 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{e}}}2 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{c}}}5 37 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{a}}}1 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{x}}}c6 and three passed pawns to one tell the story) 34...\textbf{\textit{\texttt{d}}}5+ 35 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{f}}}2 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{x}}}c6 and Black is a pawn up with the better position.

Not seeing any saves, White resigned.

Varga played strong, simple chess here (except for the bobble on move 30) and shows that Black can obtain the advantage with natural moves. It's clear from this game that 2 \textbf{\textit{\texttt{c}}}4 is a pointless "non-variation" - unless Black is afraid of some cowboy American!
Note again that with over a hundred games in the database (a good statistical sample) White can only score 45% after 2...\textit{\&}xe4 – Black can chop with confidence!

The most entertaining of these barrel scrapers is of course 1 e4 f6 2 f3 e5 3 f4??! with an albino Latvian – said gambit seems to be clearly unsound but has claimed many victims who are unfamiliar with it, and the Alekhine player (especially if you also play 1 e4 as White) should take a look at the mad Latvian sometime!

\textbf{Summary}
This chapter, which contains nothing to remind us of the true Alekhine with 1 e4 f6 2 e5, may nonetheless be the most important in this book.

Nowadays the trend is to play to draw with White, while trying at any cost to get “your” opening (even with a worse position) as opposed to “playing your opponent’s game”. Actually trying to get the advantage with White by playing the best moves seems to have disappeared along with the spirit of Bobby Fischer!

While objectively there is no dangerous move against the Alekhine except for 2 e5, in practice you should bone up on your Vienna, Four Knights and Latvian!
Now you brave Alekhine players have something against every variation that White can throw at you!

You have to watch out for that Modern! Fight to the death like Bagirov, Kengis and Carlsen!

Beat the Exchange like a gong à la Larsen!
Fracture the Four Pawns like Sergeev!
Counter-Attack the Chase like Korchnoi!
And bust everything else up like Vaganian, Varga – and this IM, whose writing has, I hope, entertained and instructed you as you prepare to go to war against 1 e4 with Alekhine’s bold 1...f6!.

The End
Index of Variations

Chapter Two: Modern Variation I
1 e4 əf6 2 e5 əd5 3 d4 d6 4 əf3

4...dxе5
  4...g6 5 c4 Əb6 6 b3 – 21
     5 əc4 – 37
  4...g4 5 əe2
     5...c6 6 0-0 dxе5 – 18
        6...xf3 – 36
     5...e6 6 0-0 əe7 7 c4 Əb6
        8 h3 – 27
        8 əc3 – 38
Alekhine Alert!

5 dxe5 g4! 6 h3
   6 c4 – 42
   6 c4 – 44
6...xf3
   6...h5 7 e6! – 45
7 xf3 e6
   8 e4 and other moves – 47
8 g3 – 49

Chapter Three: Modern Variation II
1 e4 f6 2 e5 d5 3 d4 d6 4 f3 dxe5 5 xe5 g6

6 c4
   6...e6 – 54
6...c6 7 0-0 g7 8 e1 0-0 9 b3
   9...e6 – 57
   9...d7 – 61
   9...a5 – 63

6 f3 – 65
6 h4 – 67
6 c4 – 69
6 d2 – 74
6 e2 – 76
6 g3 – 79

Chapter Four: Modern Variation III
1 e4 f6 2 e5 d5 3 d4 d6 4 f3 dxe5 5 xe5 c6

6 d2 – 101
6 g3 – 103
6 d3 d7
   7 xd7 – 13
   7 0-0 – 92
6 c4
   6...c7 – 94
6...b4! – 98
6 c4 d7 7 f3
7...d7b6 – 86
7...d7f6 8 h3 d7f5 9 0-0 e6
   10 d7g5 – 89
   10 d7b3 – 90
6 d7e2 d7f5
   7 g4 – 110
   7 0-0 d7d7
   8 d7f3 – 106
   8 d7g4 – 114

Chapter Five: Exchange Variation
1 e4 d7f6 2 e5 d7d5 3 d4 d6 4 c4 d7b6

5 exd6

5...exd6!
5...cxd6
   6 d7e3 g6 7 d5 – 32
   6 d7c3 g6 7 d7e3 d7g7 8 d7c1 0-0 9 b3 – 119
6 d7c3
   6 d7d3 – 124
   6 d7f3 – 144
   6 a4 – 146
6...d7c6
   6...d7e7 – 127
7 d7f3 – 132
7 d7e2 – 137
7 d5 – 141
Chapter Six: Four Pawns Attack
1 e4 f6 2 e5 d5 3 d4 d6 4 c4 b6 5 f4

5...g6 (cf Game 47) 5...dxe5 and other moves – 154
6 c3
   6 f3 g7 7 c3 0-0 8 e3 e6 – 161
   6 e2 g7 7 f3 0-0 8 e3 dxe5
   9 fxe5 – 166
   9 xxe5 – 168
6...g7 7 e3 e6!
   8 b3 – 174
   8 d5 – 178

Chapter Seven: Chase Variation
1 e4 f6 2 e5 d5 3 c4 b6 4 c5 d5

5 c4
   5 d4 d6 – 183
   5 c3 e6 6 d4 – 200
5...e6 6 c3
   6 d4 – 204
6 xc3 7 dxc3
   7 bxc3 – 186
7 c6 8 f4 xc5 9 g4 g5! 10 xg5 g8
   11 h3 – 190
   11 h4 – 195
   11 xd8 – 198

278
Chapter Eight: Fourth or Fifth Move Sidelines

1 e4 c6 2 e5 d5 3 d4 d6

4 c4 b6 5 b3
5...dxe5 – 210
5...d5! – 211
4 e2 dxe5 5 dxe5 c6 – 215
4 f4 dxe5 5 fxe5 c5
6 c4? b4 – 25
6 f3 – 218
4 c4 b6 5 f3 dxe5! – 221

Chapter Nine: Third Move Sidelines

1 e4 d5 2 e5 c6

3 g3 – 235
3 c4 b6 4 b3
Alekhine Alert!

4...c5 – 17
4...d5 – 235
3  d3 e6
3...xc3 4 dxc3
4...d5 – 16
4...d6 – 23
4...xc6 – 29

4  xd5
4 d4 xc3 5 bxc3 d5 – 230
4...exd5 5 d4 d6
6  f3 – 226
6  f4 – 227

Chapter Ten: Alekhine Declined

1 e4  f6

2  c4 – 269
2 d3 e5
3  f3 – 257
3 f4 – 261

2  c3
2...d5?! 3 e5! – 240
2...e5!
3  f3 – 246
3 g3 – 253
3  c4 – 253
3 f4 – 253
Index of Complete Games

Games Indexed by black player

Campora.D-Abreu Suarez.I, Las Palmas 1993 .............................................. 69
Short.N-Alburt.I, Foxborough (3rd matchgame) 1985 ................................. 36
Sämiscz.F-Alekhine.A, Budapest 1921 ......................................................... 225
Sergeant.E-Alekhine.A, Hastings 1925/26 .................................................... 17
Prasca Sosa.R-Baburin.A, Turin Olympiad 2006 .......................................... 141
Chandler.P-Bagirov.V, Giessen 1994 ............................................................ 40
Bakulin.N-Bronstein.D, Moscow 1961 ....................................................... 21
Yates.F-Capablanca.J.R, Moscow 1925 ....................................................... 15
Quinones.O-Darga.K, Amsterdam Interzonal 1964 .................................... 164
Bialas.W-Dietrich.N, Detmold 1964 ......................................................... 45
Thomas.G.A-Euwne.M, Nottingham 1936 .........................................................18
Andersen.Sti-Gajic.M, Borup 2009 ..................................................................103
Acs.P-Horvath.C, Hungarian Championship, Balatonlelle 2002 .......................76
Ostojic.P-Kengis.E, German League 1992 ......................................................57
Vasiukov.E-Korchnoi.V, Minsk 1953 .................................................................190
Shirov.A-Kramnik.V, Monte Carlo (blindfold rapid) 2005 ...............................252
Denda.R-Kripp.W, Bad Bertrich 2005 ...............................................................144
Borge.N-Larsen.B, Danish Championship, Aarhus 1999 ..................................74
Boleslavsky.I-Mikenas.V, USSR Championship, Moscow 1940 .....................49
Everet.A-Patuzzo.F, Switzerland vs. Italy match 1994 ....................................44
Bauer.J-Sergeev.V, Sala 1993 .......................................................................161
Petr.M-Sergeev.V, Usti nad Orlici 2006 .........................................................178
Sveshnikov.V-Shabalov.A, Liepaya (rapid) 2004 ...........................................200
Basman.M-Smyslov.V, Lugano Olympiad 1968 ..............................................23
Leonenko.A-Sorochan.O, Ukrainian Junior Championship, Kiev 2000 ...........146
Nezhmetdinov.R-Spassky.B, USSR Championship, Tbilisi 1959 ........................................... 29
Grischuk.A-Svidler.P, Odessa (rapid) 2009 ........................................................................... 152
Casella.M-Taylor.T, Los Angeles 2004 ................................................................................ 84
Furdzik.R-Taylor.T, Minneapolis 2005 ................................................................................. 94
Popova.E-Taylor.T, Los Angeles (rapid) 2009 .................................................................... 137
Tiviakov.S-Van der Werf.M, Dutch Championship, Leeuwarden 2001 ............................ 101
Adams.M-Zhao Xue, Edmonton 2009 .............................................................................. 114

Games Indexed by White Player

Acs.P-Horvath.C, Hungarian Championship, Balatonlelle 2002 ........................................... 76
Adams.M-Zhao Xue, Edmonton 2009 ................................................................................. 114
Andersen.Sti-Gajic.M, Borup 2009 .................................................................................... 103
Bakulin.N-Bronstein.D, Moscow 1961 .............................................................................. 21
Basman.M-Smyslov.V, Lugano Olympiad 1968 .................................................................. 23
Bauer.J-Sergeev.V, Sala 1993 ............................................................................................ 161
Bialas.W-Dietrich.N, Detmold 1964 ................................................................................... 45
Boleslavsky.I-Mikenas.V, USSR Championship, Moscow 1940 ...................................... 49
Borge.N-Larsen.B, Danish Championship, Aarhus 1999 ............................................... 74
Campora.D-Abreu Suarez.I, Las Palmas 1993 .................................................................... 69
Casella.M-Taylor.T, Los Angeles 2004 .............................................................................. 84
Chandler.P-Bagirov.V, Giessen 1994 .................................................................................. 40
Denda.R-Kripp.W, Bad Bertrich 2005 ................................................................................ 144
Everet.A-Patuzzo.F, Switzerland vs. Italy match 1994 .................................................... 44
Furthik.R-Taylor.T, Minneapolis 2005 .................................................................. 94
Grischuk.A-Svidler.P, Odessa (rapid) 2009 ......................................................... 152
Hector J-Konopka.M, German League 1996 ....................................................... 239
Kleiman J-Ramirez.A, Chicago 2007 ................................................................. 92
Kote D-Sergeev.V, Czech League 1997 ............................................................. 172
Leonenko A-Sorochan.O, Ukrainian Junior Championship, Kiev 2000 .......... 146
Maróczy G-Alekhine.A, New York 1924 .......................................................... 260
Mason D-Menadue.J, British Championship, Swansea 1995 ....................... 197
Matikozian A-Taylor.T, Las Vegas 2005 ........................................................... 245
Meekins K-Taylor.T, Ohio 2008 ....................................................................... 230
Messa R-Vaganian.R, Reggio Emilia 1981/82 ................................................. 211
Nevednichy V-Grunberg.M, Paks 2007 ............................................................... 65
Nezhmetdinov R-Spassky.B, USSR Championship, Tbilisi 1959 .................. 29
Nurkic S-Sergeev.V, Pula 1991 ....................................................................... 186
Ostojic P-Kengis E, German League 1992 ....................................................... 57
Pelikan J-Milos.G, Sao Paulo 2004 ................................................................. 218
Petro M-Sergeev.V, Usti nad Orlici 2006 ......................................................... 178
Popova E-Taylor T, Los Angeles (rapid) 2009 ................................................. 137
Prasca Sosa R-Baburin A, Turin Olympiad 2006 ............................................ 141
Quinones O-Darga K, Amsterdam Interzonal 1964 ...................................... 164
Romanishin O-Palatnik S, Kislovodsk 1982 ...................................................... 215
Sämisch F-Alekhine A, Budapest 1921 ............................................................. 225
Sergeant E-Alekhine A, Hastings 1925/26 ......................................................... 17
Shirov A-Carlsen M, World Blitz Championship, Moscow 2007 ............. 88
Shirov A-Kramnik V, Monte Carlo (blindfold rapid) 2005 ......................... 252
Short N-Agdestein S, Isle of Lewis 1995 ............................................................ 63
Short.N-Alburt.L, Foxborough (3rd matchgame) 1985 ........................................ 36
Sveshnikov.V-Shabalov.A, Liepaya (rapid) 2004 ................................................. 200
Thomas.G.A-Euwe.M, Nottingham 1936 ......................................................... 18
Tiviakov.S-Van der Werf.M, Dutch Championship, Leeuwarden 2001 ............. 101
Vasiukov.E-Korchnoi.V, Minsk 1953 ................................................................. 190
Yates.F-Capablanca.J.R, Moscow 1925 ............................................................. 15
Alekhine alert!

a repertoire for Black against 1 e4

Former US Open Champion Timothy Taylor takes a modern look at one of Black’s most ambitious counters to 1 e4, the Alekhine Defence. This is a sharp opening in which Black counterattacks from move one, luring White’s central pawns forward to create the prospect of undermining them later on. The Alekhine is a popular weapon for creative grandmasters, such as Nigel Short and Vassily Ivanchuk. It has also been used by Bobby Fischer and – more recently – by Magnus Carlsen, probably the best player in the world.

By studying deeply the most important games and also by drawing upon his own experience in the opening, Taylor is able to construct a practical repertoire for Black – ideal for the modern player. The key ideas for both sides are covered, there are recommendations on lines to play and lines to avoid, and crucial move-order nuances are highlighted. This book provides everything you need to know to play the Alekhine with confidence.

- A dynamic repertoire for Black
- Provides answers to all of White’s possibilities
- Packed with new ideas, analysis and advice

International Master Timothy Taylor is an experienced tournament player who has enjoyed several notable successes. He is a very popular chess writer who is renowned for his entertaining and thought-provoking style.